

made by Mansy

صلى ع النبي وإدعيلى دعوة حلوة

#دفعة المنوفية 2022

#قناة تالتة ثانوى 2022

2022

NEW MY Friend

كتاب الشرح والتدريبات Book 1



3 First Term
Sec.

الصف الثالث الثانوي
عام - أزهرى

Units
(1-6)



Unit (1)



Read all about it!

اقرأ كل شيء عن الموضوع!

Objectives

Reading

Compare different newspaper styles.

Writing

A persuasive essay.

Listening

Understand the key points in a lecture.

Speaking

Report an event.

Language

Review past simple, past continuous and present perfect tenses.

Life skills

Identify bias and exaggeration.

Unit 1: Read all about it!

اقرأ كل شيء عن الموضوع!

Part 1: Lessons (1-2)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
a cheat (n)	قرصان / غشاش	someone who behaves in a dishonest way in order to get something.
demand	يطالب	to ask for something in a very strict and serious way.
piracy	نسخ غير قانوني سرقة الحقوق	when someone illegally copies and sells someone's work.
ruin	يفسد	to completely ruin something.
shocked	مصدوم	an extreme adjective meaning very surprised and upset.
wait with bated breath	ينتظر بفارغ الصبر	a phrase meaning waiting with a lot of nervousness and excitement.
occur	يحدث	to happen or exist in a particular place or situation.
claim	يزعم - يدعي	to say something is true, although it has not been proved.
tabloid	صحيفة شعبية صحيفة صغيرة	a newspaper that has small pages, a lot of photographs, and stories mainly about famous people rather than serious news.
broadsheet	صحيفة كبيرة رسمية	a newspaper printed on large sheets of paper, especially a serious newspaper.
incident	حدث	an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent.
spin - spun	يحرك / يدير	to make something turn around and around quickly.
block	يحجب / يسد	to stop something from moving or flowing through a pipe, a passage, a road, etc. by putting something in it or across it.
announce	يعلن	to tell people something officially, especially about a decision, plans, etc.
investigate	يبحث / يتحرى	to carefully examine the facts of a situation, an event, a crime, etc. to find out the truth about it or how it happened.

Unit 1: Read all about it!

casualty

الشخص المصاب

a person who is killed or injured in war or in an accident.

compensate

يعوض (خسارة)

to provide something good to balance or reduce the bad effects of damage, loss, etc.

Vocabulary

Listening

reporter	صحفي	interview	حوار / يحاور	trainee	تدرب
journalist	صحفي	interviewer	مدير الحوار	quotes	قitasات
journalism	الصحافة	interviewee	ضيف الحوار	celebrities	مشاهير
grumpy	متأفف / نكد	annoying	مزعج	a celebrity	حد المشاهير
well-known	معروف جيداً	annoyed	منزعج	celebrity	شهرة
obviously	بوضوح	nosy	فضولي / متطفل	celebrated	شهور (صفة)
break	يكسر / يحطم	voluntary (adj.)	تطوعي	paid	دفع الأجر
broken	مكسور	volunteer	متطوع / يتطوع	naturally	شكل طبيعي

Reading and Critical Thinking

print	يطبع	role	دور	tabloid	صحيفة صغيرة
printed	مطبوع	newspapers / papers	جرائد	broadsheet	صحيفة كبيرة
digital	إلكتروني	society	مجتمع	headlines	عناوين الصحف
version	نسخة / إصدار	include	يشمل	formal	بسمي
funny	مضحك	including	شاملاً / متضمناً	informal	غير رسمي
rhymes	قوافي	international news	أخبار عالمية	articles	قالات
jokes	نكات	summarise	يلخص	factual	نقيقي / واقعي
guess	يخمن	online	على النت / متصل بالنت	facts	حقائق
contents	محتويات	offline	بغير إنترنت / منفصل عن النت	publish	ينشر (كتاب)
keep a secret	يحفظ كسر	website / site	موقع إلكتروني	publisher	ناشر / دار نشر
warning	تحذير	remove	يزيل / يحذف	publication	النشر
claim	يزعم / يدعي	type up	ينسخ بشكل غير قانوني	feelings	مشاعر
although	على الرغم من أن	copy	ينسخ / نسخة	share	يشارك على النت
despite	على الرغم من	textbooks	كتب نصية	occur	يحدث
security	أمان	text	نص	booksellers	بائعي الكتب

media	وسائل الإعلام	incident	حدث	pirate	ينسخ بشكل غير قانوني
social media	مواقع التواصل	accident	حادثة / حادث	pirated	منسوخ بشكل غير قانوني
cheat	يغش / يسرق جهد غيره	common	شائع / منتشر	piracy	نسخ غير قانوني
a cheat	سارق للجهد / قرصان	ruin	يفسد	ruins	أطلال / بقايا / آثار
final book	الكتاب النهائي	readers	قراء	character	شخصية خيالية
the whole book	الكتاب كاملاً	several	عديد	ending	نهاية
demand	يطالب بـ / طلب	show - showed - shown	يعرض	legal / illegal	قانوني / غير قانوني
fortunately / luckily	لحسن الحظ	likely	محتمل	illegally	بشكل غير قانوني
shocked by	مصدوم من	fans of	مشجعين لـ	appear	يظهر
shock	صدمة / صدم	terrible for	فظيع لـ / سيء لـ	lawyer	محامي
dishonest	غير أمين	emotional	عاطفي	by law	بالقانون / قانوناً
strict	صارم	put in place	يقوم بالتنفيذ	prove / proof	يبرهن / يبرهان
serious	جاد	upset	مضطرب / غاضب	exist	يتواجد
free	مجاني	nervousness	عصبية	encourage	يشجع
cost - cost - cost	يتكلف / يكلف	excitement	إثارة	pay - paid - paid	يدفع
afford	يتحمل نفقات	author	مؤلف كتاب	crime	جريمة
highlight	يبرز / يبين	authorities	السلطات / المسؤولون	criminal	مجرم / إجرامي
former	سابق	punish ... for	يعاقب ... بسبب	criminal lawyer	محامي جنائي
state	يصرح / يعلن	convict	الشخص المدان (المتهم)	crime court	محكمة جنائية
violate	يخالف	own	يمتلك	obtain	يحصل على
copyright law	قانون حقوق النشر	rights	حقوق	sum	مبلغ من (مال)

Grammar and Communication Skills

weigh	يزن	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	captain	قبطان السفينة
spin - spun - spun	يدور / يحرك	front and back	المقدمة والمؤخرة	hit - hit - hit	يضرب
sides	جوانب	block	يسد / حجب	rescue	ينقذ / إنقاذ
ship companies	شركات ملاحية	Suez Canal	قناة السويس	rescuers	منقذين
route	طريق / مسار / مسلك	traffic	المرور	rescue boats	قوارب الإنقاذ
move	يحرك / ينقل	businesses	شركات تجارية	announce	يعلن
investigate	يتحرى / يحقق	experts	خبراء	casualties	المصابين
strong wind	رياح قوية	finance	يمول / تمويل	carefully	بعناية
permission	إذن / تصريح	financial	مالي / مادي	compensate	يعوض
cause	يسبب / يجعل	financially	مالياً	products	منتجات

read about	يقرأ عن	type of	نوع من	find out	يكتشف
go (travel) through	يسافر خلال	ask for	يطلب	find out about	يعرف عن
pass through	يمر خلال	go around	يسافر حول	happen to	يحدث لـ
travel past	يسافر بمحاذاة	add ... to ...	يضيف ... إلى ...	by air	جوا
open for	متاح (مفتوح) لـ	cause of	سبب لـ	by ship	بالسفينة
move from	يتحرك من	wait for	ينتظر كذا	each of	كل من
move to	ينقل إلى	refer to	يحول إلى	good at	جيد في
give up	يستسلم	interested in	مهتم بـ	apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة

Important Collocations & Expressions

easy to explain	يسهل تفسيرها	with large pages	ذات صفحات كبيرة
on the internet	على الإنترنت	due to be published	على وشك أن يتم نشره
take photographs of	يلتقط صوراً لـ	receive warnings from	يتلقى تحذيرات من
show photographs of	يعرض صوراً لـ	on social media	على مواقع التواصل
become much more common	ينتشر بصورة كبيرة	ruin the surprise	يفسد المفاجأة
wait with bated breath	ينتظر بفارغ الصبر	online book piracy	قرصنة الكتب على النت
the long-awaited ending	النهاية المنتظرة طويلاً	are likely to + مصدر	من المحتمل أن يقوموا بـ
on other websites	على مواقع إنترنت أخرى	be put in prison	يوضع بالسجن
have an emotional effect on	له تأثير عاطفي على	in a dishonest way	بطريقة غير أمينة
make a lot of money from	يكسب مال وفير من	own the rights to	يملك حقوق الشيء
lose a lot of money	يخسر الكثير من المال	the result was that ...	كانت النتيجة أن
for nearly a week	لمدة أسبوع تقريباً	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
were finally able to	استطاعوا في النهاية أن	around the world	حول العالم
do an amazing job	يقوم بعمل عظيم	in the middle of the canal	في منتصف القناة
return to normal	يعود للوضع الطبيعي	block traffic	يمنع المرور
a twenty-year-old student	طالبة عدها عشرون سنة	work on a boat	يعمل على قارب
pirated digital copies	منسوخات إلكترونية غير قانونية	in recent news	في آخر الأخبار
receive punishment for	يتلقى العقاب بسبب	violate copyright law	يخالف قانون حقوق النشر
give a reason why + جملة	يقم سبب لـ	at a lower price	بسرعة منخفض
for that reason	لهذا السبب	it was made clear that	قد تم التوضيح بأن
e-books (electronic books)	كتب إلكترونية	be punished by law	يتلقى عقاب قانوني

is required to	مطلوب منه أن ...	pay a large sum of money	يدفع مبلغ كبير من المال
referred to the international Crime Court			حولت إلى المحكمة الدولية الجنائية
get into journalism	يلتحق بمهنة الصحافة	on a local newspaper	في جريدة محلية
a three-year apprenticeship	تدريب لمدة 3 سنوات	do an interview	يقوم بإجراء حوار
anyone famous	أي شخص مشهور	quite a few	عدد قليل إلى حد ما
a naturally nosy person	شخص فضولي بالفطرة	get some experience	يحصل على بعض الخبرة
give a chance	يعطي فرصة	keep trying	يستمر في المحاولة
do a voluntary job	يقوم بوظيفة تطوعية	get a paid job	يحصل على وظيفة براتب

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	synonyms	Antonyms
factual	حقيقي / واقعي	true / accurate / credible	biased / incorrect / false
highlight	يبرز	feature / illuminate / spotlight	belittle / minimize
common	شائع	normal / regular / constant	unnatural / uncommon
cheat	يفش / يسرق	trick / deceive / fool / con	keep / preserve
a cheat	غشاش / قرصان	scammer / fraud / cheater	an honest man
occur	يحدث	happen / exist / arise / take place	disappear / stop
claim	يزعم / يدعي	allege / believe / pretend	deny / disbelieve / disclaim
piracy	قرصنة	copying / hijacking / stealing	honesty / preservation
ruin	يفسد	devastate / destroy / spoil	assist / mend / heal / protect
demand	يطالب	request / require / urge	offer / present / grant
shocked	مصدوم	amazed / astonished / stunned	relaxed / encouraged
spin	يحرك / يدير	turn / twist / whirl / twirl	straighten / stand
block	يسد / يحجب / يمنع	close / bar / hinder / prevent	facilitate / permit / liberate
announce	يعلن / يصرح	state / declare / release / report	conceal / hide / refrain / repress
investigate	يتحرى / يحقق	interrogate / inspect / examine	ignore / neglect / overlook
casualty	مصاب	victim / prey / sufferer	survivor
compensate	يعوض ماليا	make up for / repay / refund	penalize / deprive / fine
deny	ينكر	contradict / disprove / dispute	adopt / affirm / confirm
grumpy	متأفف / نكد	bad-tempered / irritable / cross	satisfied / cheerful / pleasant

Listening Texts

1. A student reporter is interviewing a journalist

S. Reporter: How did you get into journalism?

Journalist : I started as a trainee *on a local newspaper* and after two weeks was chosen for a three-year apprenticeship.

S. Reporter: What advice can you give a student reporter like me?

Journalist : When you're doing an interview don't ask too many questions, let the person talk and always listen very carefully, give both sides of the story and make sure any facts or quotes are accurate. If you're writing a news story try to be objective and not to show your own feelings or opinions.

S. Reporter: Have you ever interviewed anyone famous?

Journalist : I've interviewed lots of celebrities *including* Amr Diab, Carmen Sulaiman and Sandy.

S. Reporter: Who was the most annoying person you've interviewed?

Journalist : There have been quite a few; one was a very grumpy *well-known* actor.

S. Reporter: Is it a hard job?

Journalist : It can be sometimes but journalists usually love what they do.

S. Reporter: What kind of person does a good journalist have to be?

Journalist : You obviously have to be good at writing, but you also have to be a naturally nosy person and you really need to be interested in people.

S. Reporter: What advice would you give to young people listening who want to become journalists?

Journalist : Get some experience *on the school newspaper* or work for a local newspaper for free and don't give up, keep trying until someone gives you a chance. I did many voluntary jobs while I was at university and I applied for 18 jobs before I got my first paid job 12 years later. I'm still here.

2. A Conversation

Manal: Mom, Soha has broken the computer; it's not working.

Soha: I didn't break it, Manal.

Manal: But you used it last.

Soha: Yes, but it was already broken when I tried to use it.
Mom: Sorry girls, I forgot to say that it broke yesterday.
Dad: That computer is always breaking; we need a new one.

Reading Texts

1. Two different kinds of newspapers

A tabloid newspaper has small pages and large photos. It has short stories which are easy to explain. It uses simple language and large headlines, which often include funny rhymes or jokes.

A broadsheet newspaper is a more formal newspaper with large pages. It has more international news. Articles are more factual and use longer sentences and paragraphs. They have fewer photos than tabloid newspapers.

2. New Harry Potter book shown online

Photographs of all 784 pages of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows have appeared on the internet, four days before J. K. Rowling's final book is due to be published.

It is not known who took photographs of the book, whose content have been kept a secret before the book is published at 12.01 am on Saturday. Some websites have removed the photos after receiving warnings from the publisher's lawyers, but photos of the book can still be read on other sites. It is also claimed that some people were typing up copies of the book from the photos to share on social media.

This all occurred despite the careful security which has been put in place before the book is published. This included asking booksellers not to tell the media when or if they had copies of the book. The incident highlights the problems of online book piracy, which is becoming much more common.

3. Internet cheats ruins Potter surprise

Just four days before J. K. Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is published, an internet cheat has shared every page of the book online. This has ruined the surprise for millions of readers, who have been waiting with bated breath to find out what happens to the famous character.

Several websites show photographs of every page of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows, which means that you can read the whole book online, including the long-awaited ending. Lawyers have demanded that the websites stop showing the illegal

photos and, fortunately, some websites have agreed. However, other people have typed up the text from the photos and are likely to share the story on other websites.

Fans of Harry Potter were shocked by the news. "It's terrible," says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to buy the new book for her children. "The person who has done this should be put in prison."

4. Ever Given blocks Suez Canal

Rescuers have finally moved a huge ship which was blocking traffic going through the Suez Canal. The ship, called Ever Given, is 400 metres long and weighs 200,000 tonnes. It is one of the largest of this type of ship in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal on 23 March when there was a sand storm. The ship's captain said that a strong wind spun the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal. The result was that no ships could travel past the canal for nearly a week.

Yesterday, more than 380 ships were waiting to pass through the canal. Many ship companies wanted to know if there was another route. A few of the ship's captains decided to go around the South of Africa instead, but this added about eight days to their journeys. At the same time, some countries announced that they would send products by air, but this is about *three times more expensive* as sending it by ship.

The accident was terrible for businesses around the world. That is because around 12% of the world's business products pass through the canal each day so the accident cost both Egypt and other countries millions of dollars.

Luckily, smaller Egyptian boats were finally able to move the Ever Given yesterday. They did an amazing job. They moved around 30,000 square metres of sand under the ship before they took the ship to the Great Bitter Lake, in the middle of the canal. The canal authorities told us that they won't know the true cause of the accident until they investigate.

Although the canal is open for ships again today, traffic through the canal won't return to normal for many days. Experts are investigating the possible casualties for all sides. They are also studying the accident carefully to see how Egypt can be compensated financially.

5. Punished for stealing books!

An International Crime Court in Denmark punished a twenty-year-old student for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks. The student said she was only trying to help others buy cheaper books. The student was punished and required to pay a large sum of money for her crime. Her crime was referred to the country's International Crime Court.

6. Piracy is a Crime!

In recent news a former Danish student in her late 20s was punished for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks. The criminal lawyer made it clear that copying e-books without the permission of the author is a crime. The criminal lawyer stated that the convict has now received a punishment for violating copyright law. He also said that it is important to understand that even though it is easy to do so, it is a crime to copy e-books without the permission of the author. When asked to give a reason why she sold books that she doesn't own the rights to, the student said she was helping students obtain books at a lower price. It was made clear to her that copying e-books that she does not own the rights to is illegal. In addition to being punished by law, she is also required to pay a large sum of money for piracy.

Language Notes

1. Using numbers as adjectives for nouns

استخدام الأرقام كصفات للأسماء حسب الإسم الذي هو صفة:

اسم مذكر + عدد + *a/an*
 اسم جمع + اسم مذكر كصفة + عدد +
 اسم لا يحد + 's' + اسم مذكر كصفة +
 اسم لا يحد + 's' + اسم جمع كصفة + عدد أكبر من الواحد

* The astronaut did a two-hour space walk. * The astronaut usually do two-hour space walks.

* I spent a (one) year's time recuperating after that accident.

* She spent four months' time recuperating after that accident.

* I usually have a ten-minute break between my study sessions.

* a three-day conference / three day conferences / a two-hour drive / ten years' time.

* يتمثل التعليل مع اسم ما امرؤ على أنه يحد وعمره على أنه لا يحد

* We went on a three-year mission in space. * We went on three years' mission in space.

2. at + adj. + speed / price / cost / height / width / distance / rate:

- The rocket will fly at a great height. - You can buy goods at reasonable prices.

3. Ordinary and Extreme Adjectives:

ordinary	extreme	ordinary	extreme
hot	boiling	pleased	delighted
cold	freezing	dirty	filthy
tasty	delicious	terrified	frightened
amazing	shocking	terrifying	frightening
large	huge	funny	hilarious

Unit 1: Read all about it!

angry	furious	amazed	shocked
clean	spotless	bad	awful
tired	exhausted	interesting	fascinating
adverbs before ordinary adjectives	very / really / quite / fairly / incredibly		
adverbs before strong adjectives	really / absolutely / extremely / completely / totally		
الصفة الندية (strong adjective) = very + an ordinary adjective			
- A strong adjective was freezing (very cold).			
Correct	The weather was freezing (very cold).		
Incorrect	The weather was very freezing.		

4. Using the gerund and the past participle as adjectives:

* Her attitude was puzzling. * My work is very tiring. * Reading books is interesting.

* Her attitude made me puzzled. * I'm very tired today. * I'm interested in reading books.

* He looked frightening in this face mask. * She is fascinating to everyone for being pretty.

5. by / with:

By Ali / by me / a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.

by + V-ing (طريق): In football, teams win by scoring goals.

by + وسم (طريق): By bus / by sea / by air.

with + أداة أو وسيلة (مع): With a hammer / with a pen / with an axe.

with + جزء الجسم (مع): With my hand / with my finger / with my leg.

with + صفة الجسم (مع): A girl with green eyes / the woman with the handbag.

6. although / despite:

although / despite + صفة (على الرغم من): She had a bad cold but she went to school.

although / despite + فعل (على الرغم من): Although she had a bad cold, she went to school.

despite / in spite of + with all / regardless of + V-ing (مع): Despite having a bad cold (her bad cold), she went to school.

despite / in spite of + صفة (على الرغم من): On the contrary, I like it.

despite / in spite of + فعل (على الرغم من): You think I don't approve of your idea. On the contrary, I like it.

despite / in spite of + صفة (على الرغم من): Beautiful as she is, she isn't married.

despite / in spite of + فعل (على الرغم من): Tired as he was, he went out for a walk.

despite / in spite of + صفة (على الرغم من): I sent him three letters. He didn't reply, though.

despite / in spite of + فعل (على الرغم من): I sent him three letters. He didn't reply, though.

despite / in spite of + صفة (على الرغم من): I sent him three letters. He didn't reply, though.

despite / in spite of + فعل (على الرغم من): I sent him three letters. He didn't reply, though.

despite / in spite of + صفة (على الرغم من): I sent him three letters. He didn't reply, though.

despite / in spite of + فعل (على الرغم من): I sent him three letters. He didn't reply, though.

despite / in spite of + صفة (على الرغم من): I sent him three letters. He didn't reply, though.

My new Friend

7. whole (الكل): الاسم + صفة ملحقه / all + كل (صفة تسمى الاسم): You can read the whole book (all the book) online.

8. The Subjunctive (infinitive): المنع من الفعل: I suggest (that) he should apply (the applies) for this job online.

9. prison / the prison: السجن: He killed a child and was sent to prison for life.

10. instead / instead of: بدلاً من: He didn't use his real name, instead he used a pen name.

11. Adverbs of frequency: ظروف التكرار: always / usually / never / often / sometimes / regularly / still / finally.

12. go to the school: الذهاب إلى المدرسة: He went to the school to visit a prisoner.

13. suggest (that) he should apply (the applies) for this job online.

14. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

15. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

16. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

17. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

18. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

19. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

20. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

21. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

22. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

23. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

24. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

25. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

26. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

27. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

28. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

29. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

30. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

31. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

32. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

33. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

34. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

35. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

36. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

37. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

38. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

39. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

40. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

41. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

42. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

43. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

44. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

45. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

46. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

47. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

48. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

49. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

50. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

51. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

52. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

53. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

54. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

55. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

56. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

57. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

58. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

59. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

60. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

61. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

62. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

63. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

64. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

65. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

66. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

67. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

68. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

69. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

70. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

71. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

72. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

73. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

74. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

75. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

76. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

77. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

78. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

79. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

80. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

81. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

82. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

83. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

84. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

85. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

86. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

87. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

88. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

89. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

90. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

91. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

92. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

93. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

94. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

95. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

96. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

97. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

98. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

99. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

100. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

101. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

102. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

103. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

104. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

105. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

106. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

107. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

108. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

109. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

110. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

111. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

112. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

113. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

114. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

115. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

116. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

117. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

118. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

119. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

120. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

121. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

122. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

123. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

124. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

125. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

126. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

127. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

128. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

129. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

130. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

131. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

132. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

133. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

134. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

135. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

136. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

137. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

138. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

139. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

140. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

141. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

142. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

143. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

144. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

145. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

146. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

147. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

148. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

149. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

150. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

151. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

152. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

153. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

154. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

155. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

156. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

157. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

158. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

159. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

160. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

161. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

162. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

163. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

164. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

165. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

166. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

167. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

168. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

169. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

170. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

171. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

172. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

173. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

174. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

175. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

176. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

177. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

178. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

179. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

180. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

181. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

182. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

183. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

184. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

185. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

186. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

187. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

188. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

189. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

190. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

191. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

192. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

193. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

194. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

195. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

196. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

197. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

198. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

199. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

200. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

201. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

202. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

203. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

204. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

205. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

206. He still is thought of as the father of the modern short story.

نستخدم في أزمنة أخرى كالمضارع التام والماضى التام والمستقبل البسيط لتوضيح بعد الفعل المساعد:

- I've always loved eating ice cream.

- She will always live with us.

12. cause / reason:

* Do you know what causes volcanoes to happen?
- cause - مصدر + to + مفعول - (سبب):

* A cigarette end caused the fire in the factory.

* What was the cause of the fire?
- the cause of + V.ing / اسم - (سبب):

* I reasoned with him for hours, but he didn't agree.
- reason with - يتجادل مع - (سبب):

* Can you give the reason for leaving so early?
- the reason for + V.ing / اسم - (سبب):

* Do you know the reason why (for which) he can't come to school today?

* Do you know the reason why (for which) he can't come to school today?

13. as well as / in addition to / besides + V.ing / اسم

(تعني: بالإضافة إلى ذلك) جملة + in addition to / moreover / furthermore + جملة

* As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arabic culture.

* My mother made a meal for dinner. In addition, she prepared some juice.

* My mother made a meal for dinner in addition to preparing some juice.

14. pay / cost / spend / afford:

- pay for + شيء - (يدفع على / يدفع سعر):

* He paid for the publication of the book himself. * How much did you pay for this car?

- pay + (ب)دفع أجر لشخص / شخص - (يدفع أجر لشخص): * The mechanic won't do any repairs to the car till you pay him.

- pay for + شخص - (يدفع بدلاً من): * Don't pay for me. I'll pay for myself.

- pay in (by) cash - (يدفع نقداً): * He paid for the shirt in cash.

- pay by = وسيلة دفع / أداة / صفة ملكية = pay with: وسيلة دفع

* Can I pay by credit card, please? * Can I pay with a (my/the) credit card, please?

- pay (make) a visit to - (يقوم بزيارة إلى): * Last week, we paid a visit to my uncle's farm.

- cost - تكلف / تكلف / يتكلف: * This car cost me two hundred thousand pounds.

* How much does the car cost? * This car cost me two hundred thousand pounds.

- spend - ينفق - (V.ing) + وقت / مال / جهد + spend + فاعل:

* We will spend some time working outside.

* He spent a lot of effort (money) doing this project.

- on + V.ing / اسم + مال + spend + فاعل:

* Governments should spend more money on scientific research.

- afford + to + مصدر / afford + اسم - (الديه من المال ما يمكنه من شراء):

* I can't afford to buy a new computer.

* I wish I could afford a new computer.

15. More Notes:

either or	لا ولا	neither nor	لا ولا
consist of	يتكون من	contain	يحتوي على
include	يشمل	enclose	يحيط به
title	عنوان كتاب	headline	عنوان في جريدة

rhyme	قافية	rhyme with	يتناغم صوتياً مع
due to + V.ing/N	بسبب	due to + مصدر	على وشك أن يحدث له كذا
about / around	حوالي / تقريباً / عن	about to + مصدر	على وشك أن
publish	ينشر (مطبوعات)	spread	ينشر (شيء معنوي)
publish	ينشر كتاب مثلاً	issue	يصدر رسمياً (جريدة / عملة / جواز سفر)
event	حدث (تاريخي) هام	happening	حدث عابر
accident (crash)	حادث (تصادم)	incident	حدث في قصة أو رواية
plan to + مصدر	يخطط أن	plan for + V.ing / N	يخطط لـ
go to prison	يذهب للسجن كعقاب	go to the prison	يذهب للسجن للزيارة
road	طريق رئيسي معروف	route	خط سير / طريق مختصر
canal	قناة مائية / مجرى مائي / ترعة	channel	قناة إذاعية / تلفزيونية / ممر مائي
another + اسم مفرد	آخر	other = اسم جمع + others	آخرون
all of + جمع	كل	each of + اسم جمع	كل واحد من
every (each) day	نظراً بمعنى (كل يوم)	everyday	صفة بمعنى (يومي)
require	يتطلب	acquire	يكتسب
open to (for)	متاح لـ	available for	متاح لـ
be right	يكون على صواب	have the right to	لديه الحق في



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Newspapers have small pages and short articles about famous people.

- a. Tablet ~~b. Tabloid~~ c. Broadsheet d. Broadcast

2. A newspaper that is printed on a large size of paper is known as

- a. broadsheet ~~b. broadcast~~ c. broaden d. tabloid

3. Newspapers are either digital or versions.

- a. current ~~b. print~~ c. paint d. electronic

4. "News play an important role in society nowadays." A synonym for "role" is

- a. part b. chart c. crisp d. curse

5. What of newspapers do you have in your country?

- ~~a. types~~ b. fames c. fumes d. fungi

6. This kind of entertainment is expensive

- a. produce ~~b. to produce~~ c. produced d. to producing

7. My hobbies reading and painting.

- a. consist b. contain ~~c. include~~ d. attitude

8. His brother was killed in a shooting last year.

- a. incident b. event ~~c. occurrence~~ d. appearance

9. The media is full of shock-horror about under-age crime.
a. addresses b. titles c. covers ~~d. headlines~~
10. I'm sure he did it, but he insists on that.
a. admitting b. owning up c. confessing d. denying
11. There are two of the game, a long one and a short one.
a. versions b. physics c. visuals d. voices
12. The bank the company from bankruptcy.
a. served b. rescued c. motioned d. mentioned
13. There were confrontations between residents and the police.
a. local b. level c. location d. nonsense
14. We all tried to find the bus service, with varying degrees of success.
a. down on b. out about c. up to d. out of
15. My five-..... old daughter loves drawing so much.
a. years' b. year c. a year d. years
16. She was amazed her poor neighbour in such a luxurious hotel.
a. in seeing b. at see c. at being seen d. to see
17. All on the plane were killed, the pilot.
a. included b. includes c. include d. including
18. Schools may extra money by renting out their premises.
a. win b. earn c. beat d. gain
19. When a proud man hears man praised, he thinks himself injured.
a. another b. other c. other's d. others'
20. We will crack down on people who try to the system.
a. create b. follow c. cheat d. chat
21. Don't trust him. He is a liar and a
a. cheat b. chat c. creator d. discoverer
22. Protesters the resignation of the prime minister.
a. remained b. mended c. reminded d. demanded
23. With the expansion of the Internet, has grown more widespread.
a. piracy b. pirated c. pirate d. private
24. The court punished him because he sold textbooks online.
a. protected b. deprived c. pirated d. printed
25. His reputation was by insinuation and rumour.
a. ruined b. protected c. kept d. preserved
26. The local community was by the murders.
a. pleased b. delighted c. happy d. shocked
27. The fans of the author are waiting with breath for his new book to come.
a. patted b. batted c. bathed d. bated

28. The incident when it was dark and raining heavily.
a. played b. placed c. occurred d. positioned
29. He that his parents had abandoned him. It was then proved he was lying.
a. suggested b. claimed c. proved d. demanded
30. He the revolving door round and round.
a. spun b. stunned c. tuned d. conned
31. They will have to up the entrance to the tunnel to do some repairs.
a. type b. book c. block d. clock
32. He officially his intention to resign at today's press conference.
a. anchored b. integrated c. amounted d. announced
33. Detectives are currently possible links between the murders.
a. occurring b. investigating c. blocking d. degrading
34. The aim of the road repairs made here is to reduce road
a. casualties b. casualties' c. cause d. occasions
35. Nothing can for the loss of a loved one.
a. consist b. compensate c. revolve d. indicate
36. You'd better give us as much evidence as possible.
a. factor b. fiction c. factory d. factual
37. The police emptied her bag and examined the
a. contains b. contents c. includes d. encloses
38. Click on this link to visit our bookstore.
a. alley b. online c. line d. decline
39. The magazine has just its six thousandth edition.
a. scattered b. harbored c. spread d. published
40. The has the copyright on all his books.
a. publisher b. furniture c. polisher d. nurture
41. The book is scheduled for in the autumn.
a. donation b. community c. publication d. instruction
42. This plan must be kept a; you mustn't tell anyone about it.
a. statement b. sentence c. secret d. secretary
43. The minister gave a that if war broke out, it would be catastrophic.
a. warming b. worming c. warring d. warning
44. You can these stains by soaking in a mild solution of bleach.
a. remove b. announce c. recommend d. attain
45. Has that report been up yet?
a. cried b. shouted c. screamed d. typed
46. We make of our computer disks as a safeguard against accidents.
a. comics b. copies c. cones d. jokes

47. He is dishonest. He has my personal secrets online.
a. cared b. shared c. cheered d. chanted
48. The two countries agreed to work together to strengthen border
a. safely b. occurrence c. currency d. security
49. Social are changing the way people communicate, work, and shop.
a. media b. mania c. trail d. trial
50. The school is keen to involve the community in this project.
a. whole b. each c. every d. all
51. Their story had a happy; they got married before they travelled.
a. ending b. demand c. fund d. refund
52. It is for anyone under 18 to possess fireworks in a public place.
a. immortal b. illegible c. illiterate d. illegal
53. Crowds of football filled the streets before the match.
a. fins b. fungus c. fans d. revolvers
54. Take your coat with you. It's to rain today.
a. impossible b. lucky c. likely d. grumpy
55. The representing the accused man said he was very satisfied with the verdict.
a. lawyer b. doctor c. oculist d. engineer
56. Parents are obliged to send their children to school.
a. lawful b. legal c. by law d. illegally
57. New measures have been put to fight digital piracy.
a. place b. in place c. replace d. take place
58. No ordinary families can to hire servants.
a. offend b. afford c. fraud d. proof
59. Justice has prevailed; the guilty man has been
a. set free b. released c. punished d. nourished
60. The police are still looking for the escaped
a. convict b. convert c. proverb d. adverb
61. The film is based on a novel written by a female
a. author b. creature c. donor d. loser
62. Those who the copyright law must be put in prison.
a. follow b. respect c. violate d. imitate
63. Everyone can knowledge through practice.
a. detain b. obtain c. aspect d. detail
64. protects your work from being commercially exploited by someone else.
a. Photocopying b. Copyright c. Enterprise d. Interest
65. Local have to learn to allocate resources efficiently.
a. authorities b. dimensions c. intentions d. communications

66. The punishment should be proportional to the
a. crime b. cream c. scream d. skip
67. The policeman ordered the to drop his weapon.
a. visual b. visible c. local d. criminal
68. The divorcee awarded custody to the child's mother.
a. chart b. court c. smart d. cart
69. Nowadays almost everyone a computer; they are available everywhere.
a. owes b. moans c. means d. owns
70. The convict had to pay a large of money to the family of the victim.
a. some b. summit c. consume d. sum
71. People mustn't pirate something they don't have the to.
a. corrects b. trues c. rights d. duties
72. The town was by a tornado last night.
a. wet b. hit c. come d. happened
73. The policeman showed me the quickest to the hospital on foot.
a. route b. root c. ritual d. rate
74. He can't get married until he gets from his parents.
a. permission b. preposition c. condition d. ambition
75. Small businesses have suffered during the recession.
a. fruitfully b. financially c. traditionally d. conventionally
76. His tiredness him to make a regrettable error.
a. reasoned b. commented c. caused d. mocked
77. Dairy may provoke allergic reactions in some people.
a. products b. prospects c. protects d. protests
78. The lake water passes a filter before it is piped to our homes.
a. though b. through c. thorough d. throw
79. The transportation of goods air costs a lot.
a. in b. on c. at d. by
80. The book is to be published next week.
a. owing b. thanks c. due d. because
81. The supporters are waiting with bated for their favourite player to enter the game.
a. breath b. break c. brake d. stake
82. The fans were unhappy that the pirate ruined the long-..... ending of the book.
a. waiter b. awaited c. awaken d. woken
83. Criminals are usually put in prison.
a. the b. an c. no word d. all
84. They sell goods here a lower price.
a. in b. on c. at d. to

Past simple and Past Continuous

1. The Past Simple Tense

A. The active voice

Affirmative Statements	التصريف الثاني للفعل	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	مصدر الفعل + didn't	الجملة المنفية
Questions	مصدر الفعل + الفاعل + did	السؤال

* A famous writer wrote this book a year ago.

* I didn't enjoy last night's film.

* Where did you go for your last holiday?

يمكن استخدام (could + inf./ would + inf) للتعبير عن الماضي البسيط.

* Akram could speak French at the age of seven.

* I couldn't swim because my arm was hurting me.

B. The passive voice

Affirmative Statements	الفاعل + was / were + P.P.	عمل المثبتة
Negative Statements	الفاعل + was / were + not + P.P.	عمل المنفية
Questions	Was / Were + الفاعل + P.P?	سؤال

* This book was written by a famous writer.

* My novel was changed six times.

* Was the meeting held last Thursday?

C. Tense Markers

1. yesterday / the other day / مدة + ago / once = once upon a time / ذات مرة / one day / يوم
last (night / week / month / year / winter / spring / summer) / the previous (week/month)
/ from الماضي / سنة في الماضي / سنة في الماضي (in 2009) /

in + شهر في الماضي (in July).

then / just now / in the past / in the ancient times / in the middle ages / في العصور الوسطى

in the old days / في العصور القديمة / how long ago = when متى /

at the age of (إذا كان في الماضي) / at the weekend (الماضي) / (إذا كان في الماضي) /

when I was young / when she was little / when he was seven.

ظروف التكرار التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط إذا جاء معها ما يدل على الماضي:

usually / always / sometimes / often / never / occasionally / every day / every week

* When I was in Alex, I went to the beach every day.

* I usually visited the zoo when I was young.

D. Usage

في حالات التي يستخدم فيها زمن الماضي البسيط:

* I had my hair cut yesterday.

* Alaa moved into a new flat last week.

here is a. common b. true c. dishonest d. incorrect

86. "Your resume should highlight your skills and achievements." A synonym for "highlight" is a. illuminate b. ignore c. minimize d. surprise

87. "He was a liar and a cheat." An antonym for "cheat" here is a. keeper b. scammer c. dishonest d. con

88. "He claimed that he hadn't done it." A synonym for "claim" here is a. allege b. deceive c. deny d. prepare

89. "Piracy of online books is a crime." A synonym for "piracy" is a. preservation b. conservation c. honesty d. hijacking

90. "The rain ruined the journey." A synonym for "ruined" is a. protected b. rejected c. spoilt d. recommended

91. To "deny" is the opposite of "to". a. omit b. admit c. compress d. suppress

92. "A huge rock blocked the way to the canal." An antonym for "blocked" is a. barred b. hindered c. closed d. facilitated

93. "She was shocked by the bad news" A synonym for "shocked" is a. suspected b. stunned c. relaxed d. relieved

94. "A strong wind spun the sip." A synonym for "spun" here is a. straightened b. whirled c. assisted d. helped

95. "We are happy to announce the engagement of our daughter." A synonym for "announce" here is a. conceal b. hide c. decline d. declare

96. "The victim demanded that he get a compensation." A synonym for "demanded" here is a. obliged b. requested c. inquired d. enquired

97. "The crime is presently being investigated by the police." "Investigated" means a. overlooked b. ignored c. examined d. neglected

98. "Nothing will ever compensate for his lost childhood." "Compensate" means a. own up to b. make up for c. fine d. penalize

99. "They announced their engagement." The opposite of "announced" is a. concealed b. stated c. declared d. pronounced

100. "The road was completely blocked by an overturned truck." A synonym for "blocked" here is a. closed b. facilitated c. opened d. ruined

- * When were you born?
- * Yehia Haqqi was born in a small district in Cairo.
- * Dr. Zewail was educated at Alexandria university.

إلى سرد أحداث قصة قد وقعت في الماضي

- * He heard them talking. He decided he had to get closer. Then he approached.
- * They were surprised. Finally, he caught them.

التعبير عن حدث جاء بعد حدث آخر في الماضي
(الحدث الثاني في أي حدثين متتابعين في الماضي دائما يكون في الماضي البسيط)

- * As soon as they (had) prepared the scenario, they started work.
- * When they (had) returned home, they knew the whole story.

Expressing habits

1. Past habits

- * used to + مصدر
- * didn't use to + مصدر
- * did + فاعل + use to + مصدر
- * used to be + P.P

اعتاد على شيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الآن
لم يعتاد على
هل اعتاد على
(في المبنى للمجهول)

- * I used to drive very slowly. I drive faster now.
- * He didn't use to need much sleep but now he does.
- * Did your father use to smoke during his boyhood?
- * My homework used to be done in a neat way.
- * I used to smoke five years ago, but now I don't.
- * Mona used to come to work late, but now she doesn't.
- * Salma used to be fat but now she isn't.

لاحظ (مصدر + would) للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي

- * When I was young, I used to play (would play) in the street.
- * He used to visit Holland last year. (Correct) * He used to visit Holland last year. (Incorrect)

هام جدا: لا تستخدم (مصدر + would) مع أفعال الماضي الدالة على الحالات (Stative Verbs).

- There used to be a lot of tourists. (NOT: There would be a lot of tourists.)
- When I was young, I used to love cycling. (Not: I would love cycling).

تستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن العادات في الماضي:

فاعل + was/ were + used to + V.ing
لم يعتاد على شيء ما في الماضي

اعتاد على شيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الآن
لم يعتاد على شيء ما في الماضي

- * When I was young, I was used to eating a lot of ice cream.
- * I wasn't used to doing any kind of sport during my boyhood.

2. Present habits

- فاعل + am/ is/ are (get/ gets) + used to + V.ing / اسم
- فاعل + am not/ isn't/ aren't (don't get/ doesn't get) + used to + V.ing / اسم
- * Ali is (gets) used to watching cartoons.
- * Mona is used to junk food. She loves it most.
- * He isn't (doesn't get) used to doing a lot of exercise.
- * I'm not used to such hard work.

Exercises on the past simple and (used to)

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Did you to get up early?
a. used b. using c. use d. used to
- This nice story by Taha Hussien.
a. is written b. writes c. wrote d. was written
- I to read short stories when I was seven.
a. was used b. used c. am used d. get used
- She study at night when she was young.
a. is used to b. used to c. was used to d. used
- My uncle used to drive a car he was twenty.
a. since b. when c. while d. ago
- A famous writer this book a year ago.
a. was written b. writes c. has written d. wrote
- She London in 2010.
a. visited b. visits c. was visited d. visiting
- I in Alexandria a month ago.
a. have been b. was c. were d. has been

2. The Past Continuous Tense

A. The active voice

Affirmative Statements	was/ were + V.ing.	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	was/ were + not + V.ing.	الجملة المنفية
Questions	Was/ Were + الفاعل + V.ing ...?	السؤال

- * I was doing my homework at 6 o'clock yesterday evening.
- * Shady wasn't working or writing when I came home.
- * What were you doing when I called? You sounded very busy.

B. The passive voice

Affirmative Statements	was/ were + being + P.P	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	was/ were + not + being + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	Was/ Were + الفاعل + being + P.P?	السؤال

- * Somebody phoned me while the dinner was being cooked.
- * I borrowed Ali's car while mine was being repaired at the garage.

C. Tense Markers

- * Yesterday evening / yesterday morning / yesterday afternoon / at 7 yesterday / at 10:00 last night / at 9 this morning / from five to seven yesterday / last year at this time / from morning to evening yesterday / at this time yesterday / last year at this time / throughout last night / all last night (week / month) / all morning (afternoon / evening) yesterday.

D. Usage

- * Salma was studying English all last night.
- * We were cleaning the flat when the police asked to search it.

زمن الماضي المستمر + when / as / just as + زمن الماضي المستمر
 زمن الماضي المستمر + while / as / just as + when + زمن الماضي المستمر

- * While he was reading the novel, I was watching TV.
- * Mona was cooking lunch while her husband was reading the paper.

زمن الماضي البسيط + when / as / just as + زمن الماضي البسيط
 زمن الماضي البسيط + while / as / just as + when + زمن الماضي البسيط

زمن الماضي المستمر + when + زمن الماضي البسيط
 زمن الماضي البسيط + when + زمن الماضي المستمر

- * As I was walking down the street, I met some old friends.
- * We were going back home when a beggar stopped us.

الفرق بين (While) و (During)

While + was / were + V-ing
 While + V-ing. (في حالة عدم وجود فاعل)
 During + noun

- * While he was staying in China, he learned about the Chinese culture.
- * While staying in China, he learned about the Chinese culture.
- * During his stay in China, he learned about the Chinese culture.

Note: Non-Action Verbs

* الأفعال الاتية لا تستخدم في أي زمن مستمر.
 * تستخدم هذه الأفعال في الماضي البسيط وليس المستمر حتى وإن كانت الجملة تستلزم وجود ماضي مستمر.

1. V. to be (يكون)

Correct	Mona was busy at seven p.m yesterday.
Incorrect	Mona was being busy at seven p.m yesterday.

2. Senses

hear	يسمع	look / sound / appear / seem	يبين	smell	ذو رائحة
see	يرى	taste	ذو مذاق	feel	ذات ملمس

Correct	She seemed ill when I visited her.
Incorrect	She was seeming ill when I visited her.

3. Mental activities

mean	يعني - يقصد	think / believe / suppose	يعتقد	know	يعرف
imagine	يتخيل	realise (realize)	يدرك	doubt / suspect	يشك أن
understand	يفهم	recognise	يتعرف على	remember	يتذكر
guess	يخمن	consider = regard	يعتبر	forget	ينسى

Correct	In the past people thought the earth was round.
Incorrect	In the past people were thinking the earth was round.

4. Communication

agree	يوافق	admit	يعترف	promise	يعد
disagree	يرفض	deny	ينكر	surprise	يدهش

Correct	The accused admitted killing the woman yesterday.
Incorrect	The accused was admitting killing the woman yesterday.

5. Attitudes (Emotional verbs)

love = like	يحب	want	يريد	desire	يأمل
hate = dislike	يكره	need	يحتاج	prefer	يفضل

Correct	When I was young I didn't like swimming very much.
Incorrect	When I was young I wasn't liking swimming very much.

6. Possession

possess = own = have = have got	يمتلك	belong to	ينتمي إلى - يخص
---------------------------------	-------	-----------	-----------------

Correct	I had many toys when I was a child.
Incorrect	I was having many toys when I was a child.

7. Other Verbs

cost	يتكلف	include	يشمل	intend	ينوي
owe to	يدين إلى	involve	يتضمن	remain	يبقى - يظل

Correct

Incorrect

After they had separated, they remained friends.

After they had separated, they were remaining friends.

لاحظ جيداً أن: يمكن أن تكون نفس الأفعال مؤقتة، وبالتالي تأتي في زمن المضارع المستمر، إذا حملت معانٍ أخرى غير العشاء إليها في الجداول السابقة ... تابع الشرح التالي:

* فمثلاً نحن نستطيع أن نقول:

Samy was seeing the dentist at ten P.M yesterday.

كان سامي يعرض نفسه علي طبيب الأسنان الساعة العاشرة مساءً بالأمس.

ذلك لأن الفعل (see) هنا لا يحمل معني (يري) لكن يحمل معني (يذهب لتدريب).

* كما يمكننا أن نقول:

She was thinking about something important when I interrupted her.

ذلك لأن الفعل (think) هنا يعني (يفكر في أمر ما) ولا يعني (يعتقد - يظن).

Ali was having dinner when I phoned him.

ذلك لأن الفعل (have) هنا لا يحمل معني (يمتلك) لكن يحمل معني (يتناول الطعام).

Exercises on Non-action verbs and the Past Continuous

7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This car to me three years ago.

- a. was belonging b. belongs c. has belonged d. belonged

2. I a noise while I was studying last night.

- a. hearing b. hear c. was hearing d. heard

3. She ill when i visited her.

- a. seemed b. has seemed c. was seeming d. seems

4. While I at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.

- a. was being b. had been c. was d. am being

5. Mona lunch when her friend phoned her, so she couldn't answer the phone.

- a. having b. had c. was having d. had had

6. When I was young, I swimming to playing tennis.

- a. was preferring b. have preferred c. preferred d. prefer

7. I a book when my friend arrived.

- a. am reading b. was reading c. reading d. have read

8. Tarek dinner at noon yesterday.

- a. has eaten b. was eaten c. eating d. was eating

9. I met a lot of friends while I in Canada.

- a. have been b. was c. were d. was being

10. While she her homework, my sister was listening to music.

- a. used to do b. was doing c. had done d. doing



Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

8

Previous Exams' Exercises

1. he was a student, he was writing short stories. (تجريبى 2019)
a. After b. As soon as c. While d. On
2. Yesterday at five past seven, I my application to the company website. (تجريبى 2020)
a. was uploading b. would upload c. upload d. have uploaded
3. I visit the pyramids every month when I was in Cairo. (أزهر 2011)
a. used b. used to c. used for d. am used to
4. Ali travelling by sea. (السودان 2011)
a. used to b. using to c. is used to d. uses to
5. I borrowed my brother's watch while mine (1994)
a. repaired b. is repaired c. has been repaired d. was being repaired
5. Noha phoned me while the dinner (2015 - دور أول)
a. was cooking b. cooked c. cooks d. was being cooked
7. Ahmed's car was hit by a driver who at mad speed. (2016 - دور أول)
a. was driving b. drive c. was driven d. drives

Longman Exercises

3. While Samir was very busy doing his homework, his sister to loud music; he wasn't able to concentrate.
a. had listened b. was listening c. is listening d. listened
9. I no longer play tennis as I
a. am used b. am used to c. used to d. used
10. What at 7 pm yesterday?
a. you were doing b. have you done c. were you doing d. did you do
11. Adel in Tanta in 2002.
a. is born b. bore c. was born d. had born
12. I lunch when my close friend arrived, so I warmly asked him to share the meal with me.
a. had b. am having c. was having d. had had
13. There are always economic crises wars.
a. while b. as c. when d. during

My new Friend Exercises

14. I couldn't open the door as I a shower.
a. had had b. was having c. had d. has had

15. When Sami was drawing, his sister a poem.
a. had been writing b. was writing c. had written d. wrote
16. When mum was climbing down the stairs, she her leg.
a. had broken b. was breaking c. broke d. has broken
17. When she saw the fire coming out of the factory, she
a. had screamed b. was screaming c. screamed d. will scream
18. I once the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.
a. reading b. used to read c. was reading d. had read
19. I to the museum in 2015.
a. have been b. went c. have gone d. was
20. In 2010, my parents in a small flat in the city centre.
a. lived b. living c. have lived d. had lived
21. While I in secondary school, I wrote many poems about nature.
a. was b. was being c. had been d. were being
22. I was having lunch when the telephone bell
a. was ringing b. rang c. ring d. had rung
23. What when I called you? You sounded very busy.
a. did you do b. were you doing c. have you been doing d. had you done
24. my own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it.
a. I have had b. I had c. I'd had d. I have
25. While she her homework, my sister was listening to music.
a. had done b. was doing c. does d. is doing
26. My mother made me a cake. It of lemon.
a. had been tasting b. tasted c. was tasting d. were tasting
27. It was dark when we reached the beach because the sun down.
a. had gone b. has gone c. went d. will go
28. What did you do after school yesterday?
a. had left b. you leave c. leaving d. left
29. What at eight o'clock yesterday evening?
a. you were doing b. you had done c. were you doing d. do you doing
30. I play football with my friends when I was young.
a. used to b. am used to c. had used d. was used to
31. Who to before the start of the lesson this morning?
a. were you speak b. did you speak c. have you spoken d. you spoke
32. I sat down and did my work when I had opened the windows. "when" means
a. after b. before c. while d. by the time
33. I returned home when mother was preparing lunch. "when" means
a. which b. while c. before d. after
34. I a book when you phoned me last night.
a. have read b. read c. reading d. was reading
35. She gave it to me while I the newspaper.
a. had read b. reading c. was reading d. read

36. I read any of his books before I read this one.
a. hadn't b. haven't c. don't d. wasn't
37. I didn't answer the phone because I
a. prayed b. was praying c. have prayed d. had prayed
38. I the police after I had seen the accident.
a. had telephoned b. telephoned c. have telephoned d. telephone
39. I just finished doing the exercise when my father returned home.
a. have b. would c. had d. has
40. The train left when I the station. I caught it.
a. had reached b. reached c. have reached d. reach
41. When someone on the door, I was reading a novel.
a. knocking b. knocks c. was knocked d. knocked
42. While over Cairo, the pyramids looked great.
a. I was travelling b. travelled c. travelling d. I was travelled
43. I always breakfast before I went to school.
a. eat b. ate c. have eaten d. was eating
44. While my mother was making the dinner, I after my baby sister.
a. was looking b. had looked c. look d. looked
45. She was going round a corner and suddenly she an accident.
a. has made b. was making c. had made d. made
46. Somebody phoned me while I the dinner.
a. had cooked b. cooking c. cooked d. was cooking

Advanced Exercises

47. He didn't remember that he had forgotten his passport he arrived at the airport.
a. till b. on c. while d. hardly
48. I'm to getting up early in the morning to go to work.
a. custom b. accustomed c. using d. customary
49. When she was cooking dinner, her brother TV.
a. has watched b. watched c. was watching d. had watched
50. Paris, I met many famous people.
a. While b. During c. While in d. During in
51. Which of the following sentences is *correct*?
a. Having doing the shopping, she returned home.
b. Having done the shopping, she returned home.
c. Having she done the shopping, she returned home.
d. Having had she done the shopping, she returned home.
52. Which of the following sentences is *wrong*?
a. While my stay in Paris, I met many famous people.
b. During my stay in Paris, I met many famous people.
c. While I was staying in Paris, I met many famous people.
d. While in Paris, I met many famous people.

Unit 1: Read all about it!

دفع	يشمل ... مع	careful about	دقيق بشأن
dig out	include with	on social media	في وسائل التواصل
plan for	look out over	at other times	في الأوقات الأخرى
rely on	angry about		يعتمد على

Important Collocations & Expressions

يدخل مواعيد	support one side	يلج جانب واحد
keep up-to-date with	present an opinion	يقدّم رأي
trust newspaper	use emotional language	يستخدم لغة عاطفية
give a lecture	believe a story	يصدق قصة
take a photo	share news stories	يشارك قصصخبارية
walk home	support your opinion of	يؤيد رأيك في
suggest an action (a solution)	become the main source of	يصبح المصدر الرئيسي لـ
20 cms of snow an hour	have a negative effect on	يؤثر تأثير سلبي على
have internet access	get regular updates	يحصل على تحديثات منتظمة
stop trusting	get anxious	يخاف / يتوتر
make people stressed	check the facts	يحقّق الحقائق
spread false information	have a social responsibility	له مسؤولية اجتماعية
avoid the negative effects	write reports on	يكتب تقارير عن
make every effort	open a new bus lane	يفتح مسار أتوبيسات جديد
make our traffic worse	reduce traffic	يقلل المرور
make the journey	give an opinion	يقدّم رأي
give work to	have a reason for writing	يملك سبب للكتابة
book a holiday	spread an inaccurate or misleading news	يشرّ أخبار غير دقيقة ومضلّة
give a balanced point of view	most (very) important	أهم جداً
put a spin on a story	completely different	مختلف تماماً
first of all	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
feel differently about		

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	synonyms	Antonyms
balanced	متوازن	stable / reasonable / harmonic	unbalanced / lumatic
bias	تحيز	favoritism / nepotism / tendency	objectivity / neutrality

My new Friend

غير دقيق	false / incorrect / untrue / misleading	accurate / correct / factual / true
يضلّ	deceive / misguide / misinform	reveal / unveil / undeceive
إغفال / حذف	deletion / skip / elimination	inclusion / boost / expansion
يؤدّر / دوران	daze / muddle / fog	alertness / levelheadedness
تقليدي	classical / conventional / customary	current / contemporary / modern / update
إيجابي	favourable / approving	negative / critical / adverse
يحبس	catch up / capture / seize	release / free / liberate
مضغوط	nervous / tense / upset / irritated / agitated / disturbed	relaxed / rested / unconcerned
حالي	current / modern / developed / evolved / advanced	primitive / old fashioned / antique
ثابت / مستمر	ceaseless / permanent / lasting	changeable / variable / occasional
منتظم	constant / frequent / habitual	occasional /
رئيسي	chief / leading / principal	minor / slight / trivial
تأثير	effect / influence / mark	helplessness / weakness
قلق	edgy / nervous / tense / nervy	calm / cool / relaxed
هدف	aim / goal / intention / target	

Listening Texts

1. A talk about media bias

So, moving on, what exactly is bias? First of all, let's look at bias by omission. This means leaving something out, for example, a fact or a quote which maybe doesn't support the writer's point of view.

Let's look at some examples; imagine Heba over here every morning checks the same website to read the news. She likes the way the articles are written and feels that she is getting good information, but one day her friend Marwa over here recommends a different news site. When Heba looks at this, she sees completely different news stories with a very different point of view. Let's say that on Heba's website there is a big story about how angry people are that a local factory is about to close. Marwa's website has the same story, but it doesn't mention that anyone is angry. The writer has omitted this information to make us feel differently about the story.

The second type of bias might be placement. On Heba's website the story is at the top of the page with a big photo and large text. This gives the impression that it is an important story, but on Marwa's website the story is very short on the third page and very low down on the page where people might not see it.

The third type of bias is spin. The writer tries to make the reader feel the same way they do about a topic and doesn't present a balanced point of view. They do this by choosing certain words, for example "argued the factory manager" instead of "agreed the factory manager". Secondly, they choose to include certain information and leave other information out. Thirdly, they give only one point of view. In our example, the journalist gives the reaction of the staff in the factory but not the managers. It misleads the reader into thinking it is a bad thing. On the other hand, in Marwa's story it is presented as a good thing. It mentions that there is a lot of pollution caused by the factory.

Reading Texts

1. Media Bias

- Bias by placement:

Position of the article on the page – the stories at the top of the page are the ones which the editor wants to show as most important.

- Bias by omission:

Leaving out certain stories.

Leaving out facts or certain information which does not agree with the writer's point of view.

- Bias by 'spin':

- Choosing examples or data which support one side.
- Presenting an opinion as a fact.
- Using emotional language to persuade the reader.

Spin

"Spin" is a type of media bias. Some journalists use words and phrases to support or oppose a service, product or even an idea.

A social media post

12 hours trapped in my car in Germany. Thousands of us are trapped in our cars after a record snow storm, about 20 cms of snow an hour. A few people with spades are trying to dig out their cars. Snow's now stopped, and some people are leaving their cars to try and walk home.

2. A Persuasive Essay

Social Media has a negative impact on news and society

Social media has become the main source of news. These days sixty-eight percent of people who have internet access get their news from social media. Although this means that we can find news easily and get regular updates on our phones, in my view I think that social media has a negative impact on news and society.

To begin with this constant cycle of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed and worried. A recent survey found that more than half of Americans say they get anxious and sleep badly because of the news.

Next, not everything we read or see on social media is true or legal. If we share it, before checking the facts, we might spread false information. In turn this means that the public stop trusting journalists. In addition, piracy is very common on social media. It is very easy to copy books, films and music and to share them, but this means that the people who wrote the books or made the film and music do not get any money for their work.

Lastly, social media starts to control what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become the 'managing editors'. They share news stories they like and agree with, so the news we see is not balanced or objective.

In summary, whilst it is a good thing that we have so much news available and it is easy to keep up-to-date with current affairs, we need to avoid the negative effects. It's important to be careful about where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have a social responsibility to make every effort not to spread inaccurate or misleading news and not to copy artistic content without permission.

3. Millions to be spent on project that will make our traffic worse!

Car drivers are angry about plans to open a new bus lane from the city centre. The plan, which will cost an enormous LE200 million, will stop all cars using Yellow Road, one of the most important roads into the city. "Traffic in the city is already terrible," says businesswoman Mrs Joan Bates. "If they close Yellow Road, it will be even worse." Another business person who uses South Road regularly, Mr Jason Shelley, says, "Why are they planning to close roads? With so many cars in the city, they need to build new ones. No one wants to take buses because they are too slow."

4. New route to serve university

There are plans for a new bus lane from the city centre to the university. The LE200-million project will mean closing Yellow Road to cars, but will make the journey by bus 30 minutes faster. The organisers believe the project will help attract students to

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
balanced	متوازن	giving equal attention to all sides or opinions.
bias	تحيز	an opinion about whether a person, group, or idea is good or bad that influences how you deal with it.
inaccurate	غير دقيق	not completely correct.
mislead	يضل	to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete.
omission	حذف / إغفال	when you do not include or do not do something.
point of view	وجهة نظر	a particular way of thinking about or judging a situation.
spin	تدوير حقائق	to describe a situation or information in a way that is intended to influence the way people think about it.

Vocabulary

Listening

slide	شريحة عرض	support	دعم	editor	محرر
media course	دورة إعلامية	side	جانب	certain	محدد / معين
a talk	حديث	present	يقدم	omit	يغفل
placement	وضع / تحديد مستوى	position	مكان / مكانة	omission	حذف / إغفال
artistic content	محتوى فني	move on	يستكمل / يستمر	exactly	بالضبط
leave ... out	يغفل	imagine	يتخيل	recommend	يوصي / يوصى به
mention	يذكر	argue	يجادل	reaction	رد فعل
manager	مدير	impression	إطباع	staff	الموظفين

Reading and Critical Thinking

social media	وسائل تواصل اجتماعي	impact on	تأثير على	anxious	موتر / قلق
likely	محتمل	main	رئيسي	true	حقيقي
traditional	تقليدي	percent	بالمائة	check	يُفحص
citizen journalism	صحافة مدنية	internet access	مدخل إلى النت	spread	يُشتر
positive	إيجابي	regular	منتظم	false information	معلومات زائفة

positively	إيجابية	regularly	بانتظام	the public	العمامة / الجمهور
negative	سلبية	updates	تحديثات / تجميعات	trust	يؤتي في
negatively	بشكل سلبي	constant	ثابت / مستمر	in general	بشكل عام
trip	رحلة / فوج	constantly	بشكل مستمر	control	يتحكم في / تحكم
record snowstorm	عاصفة ثلجية قوسية	cycle of news	دائرة من الأخبار	managing editors	محررين تحرير
spade	محرقة / جاروف	mostly	غالبًا	objective	موضوعي / عاقل
news stories	قصص إخبارية	stressed	مضغوط / متوتر	current affairs	شؤون جارية
make sure	يؤكد	recent	حديث / حالي	online news	أخبار على النت
social	اجتماعي	survey	استبيان	responsibility	مسؤولية
bus lane	ممر الأتوبيس	businesswomen	سيدات أعمال	electric buses	اتوبيسات كهربائية
city centre	وسط البلد	route	مسار / طريق	public transport	النقل العام
enormous	ضخم	long term plan	خطة طويلة المدى	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
cost	تكلفة / يكلف	short term plan	خطة قصيرة المدى	the reds	الريز (الفرق الاحمر)
nevertheless	ومع ذلك	negative spin	تدوير حقائق سلبي	replace	يستبدل
guidebooks	كتب إرشادية	accurate	دقيق	organizations	منظمات
Europeans	الأوروبيون	owners	ملاك / أصحاب	communities	مجتمعات
car hire company	شركة تأجير سيارات		شركة تأجير سيارات	matter (v)	يهم

My new friend

Essay vocabulary

consequently	نتيجة لذلك	whilst	بينما / في حين	topic sentence	جملته موضوعية
in my view	من وجهة نظري	personally	شخصيا	synonym	مرادف
to begin with	في البداية	in turn	بدوره	persuasive essay	مقال إقناعي
because of (due to)	بسبب	underline	يضع خط تحت	lastly / finally	أخيرا
in summary	باختصار	to conclude	وختاما	support	دعم
outline	ملخص / شكل تخطيطي	brainstorm	يعصف ذهنا	introduction	مقدمة
briefly	باختصار	clearly	بوضوح	sum up	يلخص
conclusion	خاتمة	supporting details	تفاصيل مدعمة	restate	يعد صياغة
contrast	تناقض	give a reason for	يعطي سبب لـ	introduce the result of	يقدم نتيجة

Prepositions

by placement	بتغيير المكان	on the page	في الصفحة	leave out	يترك / يستبعد
by spin	عن طريق التدقيق	at the top of	في قمة	agree with	يتفق مع
in the order	بالترتيب	by omission	عن طريق الإغفال	the same as	نفس الشيء مثل

the university and that the electric buses will also reduce pollution. The bus lane will also be used by bikes and taxis. The project is part of a long-term plan to persuade people to use public transport rather than driving, to help reduce traffic and air pollution.

5. Bias

Tarek loves a football team called the Greens. He writes reports on their matches, online, but the reports do not give a balanced point of view! He always puts the Greens' reports at the top of the page when they win, but not when they lose! This is bias by placement. He always puts a spin on his stories, too. For example, when the Greens lose, it is because they did not have their best players. However, he does not report the fact that the other team did not have their best players when the Greens win! This is bias by omission. Nevertheless, Tarek's reports are not inaccurate: he does not want to mislead you and the reports tell you what really happened in the match. After all, he cannot change the result!

6. Exciting plan for hotel

A new, modern hotel is planned for White Beach. There will be rooms for 200 people and most will look out over the beautiful beach. The project should give work to many local people and bring more tourists to a beach that few people know about. They will also open a new road to the hotel, to replace the old one which is difficult to drive down.

7. An essay about guidebooks

We still need guidebooks because we cannot rely on the opinion of people online.

With today's social media, it is possible to find online reviews of everything from a local park or café to a famous restaurant or museum. Before you book a holiday, you can read what other people think of a hotel or car hire company and what they recommend you do when you get there. Although this means you can get information very easily, in my view, this is not as useful information as you can get from a guidebook.

To begin with, we need to ask ourselves why people write reviews online. Whilst it is sometimes because people like writing their opinions, at other times they have a reason for writing it. Perhaps they know the owners of the café, or perhaps they are the owners of the café! That is why they give it a good review.

Secondly, who are the people writing the reviews? It is difficult to know this information. If they are 50-year-old Europeans, will they have the same opinion as you? It is very hard to know if you are going to like the same places that they like.

Lastly, we need to remember that guidebook writers are usually experts. You can trust them for accurate information and a balanced point of view. They also know who is

using their books, so if the book is intended to be for young people, they will recommend places that young people will like.

To conclude, online reviews are useful, but it's important to remember that they are just people's opinions. If you want to know what experts think, personally I think you should buy a guidebook.

Language Notes

1. like / unlike / as / alike / such as / for example / for instance:

- like + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* He works like a machine. * She ran like a mad dog. * Do you still write like this?
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- unlike + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* as + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* My father works as a doctor. * Do this experiment as I do it.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- train / work / act / as + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- alike + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* My cousin and I are alike. * The government builds new schools in cities and villages alike.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- look like + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* My brother and I look alike. * My brother and I look alike.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* Ali and Ahmed look so alike, = Ali looks like Ahmed.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- like + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- for example / for instance + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* Egypt exports many products to other countries. For example, we export cotton to the USA.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* Egypt exports many products to other countries. Cotton, for instance, is exported to the USA.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* Fruits such as apples and oranges give us vitamins.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

2. mean + V-ing + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* My new position means travelling a lot.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* They mean to finish their work by the end of this week.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

3. Writing Numbers:

- a = one + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* It costs a (one) hundred dollars. * I'll let you have it for a (one) thousand pounds.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- one + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- dozen / hundred / thousand / million ...etc. + اسم + of + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* She bought three dozen bottles. * He paid ten million pounds.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- dozens / hundreds / thousands / millions ...etc. + اسم + of + اسم / اسم + صفة / صفة + اسم / ضمير / ضمير + صفة / ضمير + صفة + ضمير
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* He's done it hundreds of times.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* She spent thousands of dollars on that.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

4. most / the most / almost / mostly:
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

- most = nearly all = almost all + اسم (مضارع) ... - most of (the / صفة ملكية / صفة ملكية) + اسم (مضارع)
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* Most research in this field has been carried out by the Russians.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

* Most of my friends are at university. * Most of what Hannah told me wasn't true.
- مثل: - تُحِبُّ عَن شَيْئَةٍ شَبِيهَةٍ لِحَقِيقَةٍ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلَهُ / لا تُحِبُّ مِثْلِي

أكثر من كثير (very much) / a lot / best / most .
 -most (best) (much) (very much) / much / a lot / best / most .
 -أقل من قليل (less) / less / a little / a few / a little bit / a few bit

* I love English most. * She adores music most. * I was most surprised to hear of your engagement.

* He plays tennis most every Friday.
عاده / غالباً / كثيراً / أسبوعاً

- mostly / often / frequently / most of the time

* At least he didn't lie to me

the most + أفضل من الآخر (.....) × the least + أقل من الآخر (.....)

the most intelligent student in class. * She's the least experienced teacher.

جاءت في استخدام الفنادق والمطاعم
- make the most (best) use of / يستغل / get the most out of
استغلوا

تقریباً = nearly = approximately :- almost = nearly = approximately

* Summar's almost ready

* Ola visits her son almost every day.

* What do you remember about your school days?

- **remember + شخص + of + شخص**: **تذكّر** **بك**
 - **remember + شخص + to + your family**: **تذكّر** **بأسرتك**
 * Your father reminds me of a famous actor.

-remind + عن + about + Y ing (تذكّر) * He reminded me of the time of the meeting
-remind + بـ + about + Y ing (تذكّر) * She reminded me about booking the tickets

* He reminded me to phone the police

* You should be careful with that ladder

* Be careful to press this button when the engine starts.

orb (go around)	پور حول غره	spin - spun - spun	پور حول نفسه
-----------------	-------------	--------------------	--------------

orbit (go around)	يُور حول غيره	spin - spun – spun	يُور حول نفسه
affect	يؤثر على	affected by	تأثر بـ
affect (influence)	يؤثر على	effect (impact / influence)	تأثير
examine	يُفحص بحثاً عن عيب أو مشكلة	check	يُفحص للمراجعة والتأكد من شيء
public	صفة / عام / للجميع	the public	العامه / الناس / الشعب
private	خاص (الملكيه)	public	عام (الملكيه)
special (particular)	خاص (من نوع خاص)	general	عام (شامل)
hire	يستأجر لفترة قصيرة	rent	يستأجر لفترة طويلة
hire out	يؤجر لفترة قصيرة	rent out	يؤجر لفترة طويلة
recommend	يرشح - يوصي (بشيء)	advise	ينصح (بشخص)
recommend + V.ing	يوصي بأن	recommend + فاعل + (should)	مصدر أن يوصي
dig	يحفر في العقب (يأخذ) أو يحفر (ناف)	drill	يُثقب / يحفر (لجهد بترول مثلاً)

My new Friend

1. Most of us need to lead more lives to be healthy and happy

2. I lost my and fell backwards ..

3. She the cup on her knee with a great skill.

4. Employers must consider all candidates impartially and without

5. The report suggests that television reporting is towards the government in power.

6. Statistical graphs may be and misleading

7. As a journalist you simply cannot tolerate

8. Don't let his friendly manner you into trusting him.

a. mislead b. miss c. lose d. please

9. Some of the information was dangerously; it was false.
a. misleading b. accurate c. punctual d. tolerant

10. I leave no doubt any details, however trivial they may seem.

a. omit b. meet c. comment d. oblige

a. involvement b. inclusion c. containing d. omission

- dot
- goal
- point
- stop

a. spin b. roll c. orbit d. revolve

a. revolving b. orbiting c. rounding d. spinning

a. case b. curse c. crease d. course

a. slides b. sides c. souls d. slaves

a. replace b. placement c. processor d. please

o. Samples are in the company.

a. placed	b. presented	c. reverbed	d. prevented
-----------	--------------	-------------	--------------

9. She's the of a popular women's magazine.
a. edition b. addition c. additive d. editor

20. We were greatly encouraged by the we received.

Unit 1: Read all about it!

21. "Certain characteristics can be developed through selective breeding." A synonym for "certain" is
 a. general b. public c. specific d. unknown
22. Technology has had an irreversible on society.
 a. affect b. influential c. impact d. protect
23. Weaving and knitting are cottage industries.
 a. convention b. modern c. novel d. traditional
24. He was careful enough to up every detail.
 a. click b. check c. shake d. chess
25. The company provides cheap Internet; it makes shareware freely available.
 a. taxes b. assess c. access d. index
26. friends are worse than open enemies.
 a. Sincere b. Thoughtful c. Faithful d. False
27. Internet provides continuous to the world.
 a. updates b. dates c. dots d. dears
28. Betraying a is a very quick and painful way to terminate a friendship.
 a. thirst b. thrust c. trust d. treat
29. He annoys us by making complaint, so he gets little compassion.
 a. instant b. speedy c. quick d. constant
30. Two passengers are still in the wreck.
 a. tripped b. tracked c. trapped d. topped
31. I was really out before the exam. I was anxious.
 a. stressed b. relaxed c. fussed d. mixed
32. Maria is very interested in politics and current
 a. fears b. affairs c. fares d. fair
33. He always sure that any cuts were protected by sterile dressings.
 a. did b. took c. gave d. made
34. Management must take ultimate for the strike.
 a. responsible b. charger c. irresponsible d. responsibility
35. We don't want bus on motorways and we don't want traffic jams.
 a. lanes b. lens c. loners d. loves
36. The warns against walking alone at night.
 a. guidebook b. glider c. guides d. guards
37. The indiscriminate use of fertilizers can cause problems.
 a. long-term b. term-long c. long-terms d. terms long
38. We took a roundabout to avoid the accident.
 a. rate b. riot c. route d. root
39. We a magician to entertain the children.
 a. hired b. heard c. hilled d. haled
40. Nothing else to him apart from his job.
 a. beneficial b. matters c. important d. essential

41. Write today's date the top of the page.
a. to b. at c. for d. in
42. If you prefer mild flavours reduce or leave the chilli.
a. down b. out c. on d. into
43. The couple relied informal care from relatives.
a. in b. on c. by d. for
44. I'll buy the most version; I don't prefer old ones.
a. old-fashioned b. up-to-date c. traditional d. conventional
45. He is a professor. He regularly lectures on modern French literature.
a. mends b. gets c. takes d. gives
46. Charlie thinks money will all his problems.
a. slave b. solve c. dissolve d. sleeve
47. Responses will be on the Website tomorrow.
a. posted b. spent c. screwed d. spun
48. The teacher made great to quiet the students.
a. flirts b. tarts c. fortress d. efforts
49. To a room means to ask for it and pay for it in advance.
a. block b. book c. bake d. break
50. Her voice was quite her usual one.
a. alike b. likes c. dislike d. unlike
51. His new job means ten hours of work every day.
a. do b. doing c. to do d. done
52. The government spent ten dollars on the new project.
a. millions b. millions' c. million's d. million
53. Who knows speaks least.
a. mostly b. most c. most of d. almost
54. A man can succeed at anything for which he has unlimited enthusiasm.
a. near b. almost c. approximate d. the most
55. your brother to come earlier tomorrow morning.
a. Remember b. Remind c. Remember to d. Remind of
56. The for the disaster was engine failure, not human error.
a. result b. reason c. consequence d. effect
57. The reason, the problem results, has not been solved efficaciously.
a. for b. which c. for which d. of
58. Her judgments are based on hearsay evidence.
a. instead b. rather than c. other than d. than in
59. We need to eat. Which restaurant can you for us?
a. advice b. advise c. attend d. recommend
60. The book was as recently as last week.
a. come out b. spread c. published d. sprayed
61. "A government's revenue and expenditure should be balanced." "Balanced" means

Grammar

The Present Perfect زمن المضارع التام

A. The active voice يتكون الفعل في زمن المضارع التام في المبني للمعلوم

1. The Plural Subject الفاعل الجمع (I/ We/ You/ They)

Affirmative Statements	have + P.P	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	haven't + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	have + الفاعل + P.P?	السؤال

* Something is wrong with his car, so he has taken it to the garage.

* They haven't met before.

* Have you cooked the dinner, mum?

2. The Singular Subject الفاعل المفرد (He/ She/ It)

Affirmative Statements	has + P.P	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	hasn't + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	has + الفاعل + P.P?	السؤال

* My sister has been in university for two years.

* She hasn't finished ironing the suits yet.

* Has Ali had his lunch already?

B. The passive voice يتكون الفعل في زمن المضارع التام في المبني للمجهول

Affirmative Statements	have / has + been + P.P	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	haven't / hasn't + been + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	have / has + الفاعل + been + P.P?	السؤال

* Something is wrong with his car, so it has been taken to the garage.

* Our food hasn't been delivered yet.

* Have the exam results been announced?

C. Usage الحالات التي يتم فيها استخدام زمن المضارع التام

1. للتعبير عن حدث انتهى وما زال له تأثير في الحاضر.

* It has rained. The streets are wet.

* في هذه الحالة يتم ربط المضارع التام بالنتيجة التي أدى إليها باستخدام (so) أو (because).

* He has hurt his leg, so he can't play football today.

* They are happy because they have won the cup.

2. للتعبير عن أحداث انتهت حالا.

* Mother has just swept the floor.

* Soha and Samira have already done their homework.

3. أحداث تمت في الماضي ولا نعرف متى بالضبط.

* I have visited France twice before.

* Samy has been to England three times.

4. أحداث لم تحدث أبداً.

* She's never played tennis.

* I haven't travelled abroad before.

62. An antonym of the adjective "stressed" is
 a. harmonious b. lunatic c. impaired d. received
63. "They failed to carry out their objectives." A synonym for "objectives" is
 a. relaxed b. tensioned c. annoyed d. agitated
64. "I think it has positive effects on the work." A synonym for "positive" is
 a. aims b. objects c. subjects d. pronouns
65. Another word for "impact" is
 a. favourable b. negative c. critical d. adverse
66. To "trap" means to "....."
 a. let go of b. capture c. free d. leave out
67. "We need accurate information." An antonym for "accurate" is
 a. false b. factual c. actual d. correct
68. "He's the main character in the play." A synonym for "main" is
 a. trivial b. collective c. major d. minor
69. "He wouldn't try to mislead you - it's not his style." A synonym for "mislead" is
 a. reveal b. admit c. undeceive d. trick
70. A synonym for "bias" is
 a. neutrality b. favouritism c. fairness d. objectivity
71. I asked the journalist when he got journalism.
 a. out b. on c. into d. by
72. "Pay no attention to his moods—he's just a grumpy old man." "Grumpy" means
 a. content b. satisfied c. happy d. irritable
73. A is a person who is being taught how to do a particular job.
 a. coach b. manager c. trainee d. trainer
74. The journalist a passage from the president's speech.
 a. tortured b. quoted c. boated d. moaned
75. When writing a report, a journalist should be
 a. hesitated b. objective c. subjective d. biased
76. Being the type, he stopped to ask what we were doing.
 a. noise b. nosy c. respectful d. relevant
77. Keep trying towards your goal and never give
 a. down b. up c. away d. off
78. She did a job; she got no money for it.
 a. paid b. voluntary c. well-known d. confidential
79. Try and smile. You don't want to give people the wrong
 a. preposition b. supposition c. occupation d. impression
80. The antonym of "objective" is
 a. accurate b. biased c. negligent d. ignorant

- * - Have you enjoyed today? - Yes, I've had a great time.
 * I have read 20 English novels.

D. Tense markers الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع التام

1. على مر الزمن / over time / حتى الآن / until now = till now = up till now = up to now
 / عبر العصور / in the last week / over the years / على مر السنين / throughout (over) the ages
 / في أحد أيام الأسبوع (الشهر) (السنة) الماضية / in the last month / in the last year.
 / السنوات القليلة الماضية / the past few years / السنوات الأخيرة / the recent years
 تستخدم في السؤال عن المدة? how long

- * Mona has studied four lessons up till now.
 * How long have you been ill?
 * The past few years have witnessed a lot of changes.

ملحوظة: خلال شرح بقية كلمات زمن المضارع التام سوف يتم الإشارة إلى ما يلي:
 1. معنى الكلمة. 2. موقعها في الجملة. 3. نوع الجملة التي تستخدم فيها الكلمة (إثبات / نفي / سؤال).
 الكلمات أو العبارات التي تستخدم بالتبادل مع الكلمة المشروحة.

إثبات	بين have/ has والتصريّف الثالث للفعل	توأم - حالاً	just
إثبات	بين have/ has والتصريّف الثالث للفعل	بالفعل	already

- * Samia has just tidied the bedroom.
 * I have already corrected the mistakes in the composition.

ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (already) في نهاية السؤال المراد منه الإدهاش من حدوث شيء ما بالفعل.
 Have you finished the homework already? You are wonderful.

ملحوظة: كلمات مثل (just now/ a moment ago/ a minute ago/ a short time ago) تدل على زمن الماضي البسيط، لكنها تقترب في المعنى من كلمات (just / already). يمكن استخدام كل هذه الكلمات بالتبادل بشرط مراعاة الزمن المطلوب.

- * Mum has just finished cooking.
 Mum finished cooking a short time (a moment) ago.

إثبات / نفي	في نهاية الجملة	مؤخراً / حديثاً	recently
إثبات / نفي	في نهاية الجملة	مؤخراً / حديثاً	lately

- * Your brother has been unwell recently (lately).
 * We haven't received any news about them lately.

4.

سؤال	بين have/ has والتصريّف الثالث للفعل	من قبل / فيما سبق	ever
نفي	بين have/ has والتصريّف الثالث للفعل	أبداً	never

- * Have you ever visited the Egyptian Museum? - No, I have never visited it. / No, never.
 * Soha has never been to the Far East countries.

ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (ever) و (never) بالتبادل للتعبير عن الأفضلية لشخص ما أو شيء ما كما يلي:
 الشخص/الشيء + اسم + صفة + have (has) + never + P.P + such a (an) + فاعل
 الشخص/الشيء + (than) صفة مقارنة + اسم + have (has) + never + P.P + فاعل
 have (has) + ever + P.P. + فاعل + صفة تفضيل + is + the الشخص/الشيء

* لاحظ استخدام كل من (ever - never) في الأمثلة التالية.

- * I have never seen such an exciting film, Brave Heart.
 I have never seen a more exciting film than Brave Heart.
 Brave Heart is the most exciting film I have ever seen.

ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (ever) و (never) بالتبادل للتعبير عن المرة الأولى لحدث شيء ما يلي:
 have (has) + never + P.P (before). = فاعل
 It's the first time + have (has) + ever + P.P. + فاعل

- * I've never met such kind of people. =
 It's the first time I've ever met such kind of people.

5.

النفي / السؤال	في نهاية الجملة	بعد / حتى الآن	yet
نفي	بين have/ has والتصريّف الثالث للفعل	ليس بعد	not yet

- * Mona hasn't finished the work yet. * Have the servants prepared lunch yet?
 * Hanan has not yet woken up. * Haven't they come back yet?

لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام (yet) و (already) في السؤالين التاليين:

- * Have you finished your homework yet?
 * Have you finished your homework already? You're wonderful.

* نستخدم (yet) في السؤال المراد منه الإستفسار عن معلومة.
 * نستخدم (already) في السؤال المراد منه الإدهاش من شيء.

6.

إثبات / نفي	في نهاية الجملة	منذ	since
إثبات / نفي	في نهاية الجملة	لمدة	for

- * I have assisted my uncle in his work since 2008.
 * We haven't seen our friends for a long time.

الفرق بين (been) و (gone)

لاحظ استخدام (been) أو (gone) للتعبير عن الكينونة / الذهاب إلى الأماكن أو التواجد بها فيما يلي.

have / has been + اسم + صفة	(لقد كان)
have / has been to + مكان	(ذهب إلى المكان وعاد منه)
have / has been in / at + مكان	(ذهب إلى مكان ومازال هناك)
have / has gone to + مكان	(ذهب إلى مكان ومازال هناك)

- * He has been ill since last week. * She has gone to America. She hasn't come back yet.
- * Sami has been to Canada. He is already back here.
- * Ali has been in Paris for a month = Ali has gone to Paris for a month.

ملحوظة: في السؤال بمعنى (هل سبق أن ذهبت إلى؟) تُستخدم في الغالب (been) وليس (gone).

Have you ever been to the Cairo tower?

الزمن المضارع التام المستمر The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

* يتكون في المعلوم من (have/has + been + V.ing). * يتكون في المجهول من (have/has + been + P.P).

* يستخدم لوصف أحداث بدأت في الماضي ومازالت مستمرة حالياً ومن المحتمل أن تبقى مستمرة في المستقبل.

- * Mr. Ahmed has been teaching English for 10 years now.
- * He has been logging onto the web since he returned from school and still is.

* الكلمات الدالة عليه:

- * طوال فترة الصباح (النهار / الليل / الأسبوع)
- * all morning / all day / all night / all week
- * since / for + مدة + now / all / still / haven't finished yet.

- * I have been watching the Olympic Games all week.
- * The phone has been ringing all morning.
- * Rania has been walking to and fro since 2 o'clock and still is.
- * Mum has been sleeping for eight hours and hasn't woken up yet.

الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضي البسيط

1. المضارع التام قد تم في مده غير محددة في الماضي أما الماضي البسيط تم في مدة محددة في الماضي:

- * I have visited England before. (زرتها في وقت سابق لكنني لا أذكر متى حدث ذلك)
- * I visited England a year ago. (لم أحدد أي وقت أو فترة في هذا الصباح)
- * I have sent the e-mail this morning. (الحدث تم في الصباح الباكر)
- * I sent the e-mail earlier this morning.

for + (مع تحديد تلك المدة) مدة زمنية	(زمن الماضي البسيط)
for + (دون تحديد لتلك المدة) مدة زمنية	(زمن المضارع التام)
for + now / still + مدة زمنية	(زمن المضارع التام المستمر)

الصفات والعبارات التي تتبع (since) و (for)

- * o'clock/ Saturday/ Monday/ the first of July/ the third of March
- * February/ July/ 2005/ Summer/ Winter/ the 18th century.
- * yesterday/last week (month/year).
- * then / that time / منذ ذلك الحين / Christmas/ this morning/ the weekend/ the party.
- * the age of/ my birth/ her death/ his birthday/ my childhood.
- * (since the first time I saw him./since I was young.) * حدث في زمن الماضي البسيط

- * We haven't phoned Alisince his birthday party.
- * Olahas enjoyed reading(ever) since she was young.
- * تتبع (for) بمدة غير محددة أو مدة مفتوحة من الوقت أو مدة معدودة: أي أنها تتبع بما يلي.

- * minutes. + عدد
- * half an hour / an hour / one hour + hours. + عدد
- * a day / days + عدد / a week + weeks / a month + months. + عدد
- * a (one) year + years / decades / centuries قرون.
- * the last week (month / year / two years)
- * a long time (period) = long = ages = as long as I can remember وقت طويل
- * a short time / a short period وقت قصير
- * more than (over) + عدد + days (weeks / months / years). لأكتر من
- * a number of + days (weeks / months / years) عدد من

- * Ive lived herefor about five years.
- * Ive been herefor six months now.
- عندما تربط (since) (منذ) أو (since then) (منذ ذلك الحين) حدثين أحدهما في زمن المضارع التام (المضارع التام المستمر) والآخر في زمن الماضي البسيط

زمن المضارع التام (المضارع التام المستمر) ، زمن الماضي البسيط + since / ever since
زمن المضارع التام (المضارع التام المستمر) + since then + زمن الماضي البسيط

* يتكون المضارع التام المستمر من (have / has + been + V.ing).

- * I have enjoyed reading novels since I was a young child.
- * I haven't seen my uncle since he travelled to France.
- * Hossam went to live in Italy. Since then I haven't contacted him.
- * She has been working for this travel agency since she graduated.
- يمكن استخدام (since) مع مدة غير محددة من الوقت كما يلي.

جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + since + (مدة زمنية غير محددة) It is +
جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + How long is it since

- * It's nine years since I met my French teacher.
- * How long is it since you last had a day - off?

- * Mr. Smith lived in Egypt for ten years. From 2005 to 2015.
 * Mr. Smith has lived in Egypt for ten years.
 * Mr. Smith has been living in Egypt for ten years now.

الفرق بين المضارع التام (البسيط) والمضارع التام المستمر

فعل طريقة للمفاضلة بين الزمنين هي البحث عن المضي المقصود للفعل: وستعرف ذلك من سياق الجملة
 * إذا كان الحدث قد انتهى (لتوه) فإن الزمن يصبح (مضارع تام).
 * إذا كان الحدث ما زال مستمراً فإن الزمن يصبح (مضارع تام مستمر).

- * She has cooked for a long time. Now she is washing the clothes.
 * She has been cooking for a long time. She is very busy.
 هناك كلمات لا يمكن استخدامها مع المضارع التام المستمر لأنها لا تشير إلى أن الحدث مازال مستمراً:
 ever / never / yet / just / already. المضارع التام.

* She has never done Karate.

* I have already started reading.

عندما تأتي هذه الكلمات في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (since/ for) يفضل استخدام المضارع التام المستمر:

now / all / this / still / haven't finished yet.

* I have been reading for three hours now.

* Riham has been chatting with her mother on the phone for a long time and still is.

عندما تشير إلى (عدد مرات تكرار الحدث) أو (كمية شيء ما)، من الضروري استخدام زمن المضارع التام.

* Ali has read twenty pages in the new story until now.

* I have suffered two main financial crises since I started the project.

بعض الأفعال لا يمكن استخدامها في أي زمن مستمر (لأنها أفعال دائمة وليست مؤقتة).

تستخدم هذه الأفعال في المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر حتى وإن كانت الجملة تستلزم وجود مضارع تام مستمر.
 هذه الأفعال هي: (be) وأفعال الحواس وأفعال التفكير وأفعال التواصل وأفعال العاطفة وأفعال الملكية.

1. Correct I have known my friend Hosam for ten years now.

Incorrect I have been knowing my friend Hosam for ten years now.

2. Correct I have had this car for 15 years now!

Incorrect I have been having this car for 15 years now!



Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams' Exercises

1. It's been two weeks since I last Sara.
 a. phoned b. phone c. have phoned

d. had phoned (الجزبي - 2021)

My new Friend

(أزهر - البي - 2021)

2. I to the stadium for ages.
 a. haven't gone b. hadn't gone c. wasn't going d. haven't been
3. This is the best meal I
 a. had ever had b. have ever had c. ever have d. have never had
4. I my classmates for many years now.
 a. have been knowing b. have known c. had known d. had been knowing
5. She her friend since she left for London.
 a. hasn't seen b. didn't see c. won't see d. doesn't see
6. Tamer left for England in 1990, he hasn't come back his departure.
 a. still b. for c. since d. ago
7. Prices in the shops during the last few years.
 a. rose b. have risen c. raised d. have raised
8. I enjoyed the film as I saw many places I've never
 a. gone b. been to c. been d. arrived
9. I from him since he went abroad a year ago.
 a. am not hearing b. did not hear c. have not heard d. had not heard
10. Magy has been away from the office thirteen successive years.
 a. since b. from c. during d. for
11. I am a student in the third secondary grade. I English for eight years.
 a. learn b. learnt c. am learning d. have been learning
12. We our old friends for a year. They are too busy.
 a. hadn't met b. didn't meet c. haven't met d. haven't been met
13. They what to do for the holidays yet.
 a. hadn't decided b. haven't decided c. don't decide d. won't decide
14. It's more than 20 years I travelled abroad.
 a. while b. before c. when d. since
15. It's a month Hind last visited her uncle.
 a. for b. since c. of d. to
16. I my own car for three months now.
 a. had b. 'd had c. 've had d. has had
17. It's two months I saw him.
 a. for b. when c. while d. since
18. She is really a good friend and she to send me a letter each month.
 a. never failed b. never fails c. is never failing d. had never failed
19. Generally speaking, I film reviews because I like to be open-minded when I go to the cinema.
 a. am not reading b. don't read c. haven't read d. haven't been reading
20. I my books in the class. Could you go and fetch them for me?
 a. had left b. am leaving c. have left d. was leaving

21. I think you your energy by sweeping up those leaves, stop it! The wind will blow more down.
a. wasted b. waste c. are wasting d. were wasting (2019)
22. It is more than 20 years the writer wrote a short story.
a. on b. since c. for d. while (2019)
23. There has been a decrease in the number of applications since the report on environmental pollution in the newspaper.
a. was appeared b. has appeared c. appeared d. has been appeared (2019)
24. I have sent him an e-mail; I expect him to send me a cheque soon.
a. yet b. ever c. all ready d. recently (2019)
25. In the last two hours, I my lessons.
a. had revised b. have revised c. revise d. revised (2020)
26. So far, many schools in rural and urban areas.
a. will have been built b. are building c. have been built d. were built (2020)

Longman Exercises

27. I haven't met the minister It's the first time to meet him.
a. yet b. before c. already d. never
28. My friend a health problem since he started to smoke.
a. has had b. had had c. had d. has been
29. - Have you finished doing the research? - Not
a. ever b. never c. yet d. just
30. My uncle as a taxi driver for ten years. Now, he is a worker in a big clothes factory.
a. works b. was working c. has worked d. worked
31. Ali has lived in Giza for 5 years. This means that he
a. lived there for 5 years only b. started living there 5 years ago
c. hasn't lived there before d. no longer lives there
32. Marwa hasn't bought the new clothes
a. yet b. already c. ago d. since
33. A bad accident place on Cairo- Alex desert road.
a. took b. has taken c. has been taken d. had taken
34. My pen friend arrived at Cairo Airport a moment ago. This means that he
a. has just arrived b. just has arrived c. hasn't arrived d. will arrive
35. I haven't seen Mazen the last time we met in Alexandria.
a. while b. when c. for d. since
36. My cousin has lived abroad his childhood.
a. since b. for c. while d. when

37. It's two months since we our uncle in the village.
a. had visited b. visited c. have visited d. visit
38. Sorry for being late, Sir. Please, let me in. I to the library.
a. have been b. have gone c. was d. had
39. The government a lot of fly-over bridges recently.
a. has built b. had built c. was building d. build
40. Ali is very happy. He a medal for writing poetry.
a. is winning b. won c. has won d. had won
41. You needn't make food. I a good meal already.
a. was cooking b. have cooked c. cooked d. had cooked

My new Friend Exercises

42. - Have you ever been to England? - No,
a. ever b. never c. already d. just
43. Have you finished the washing up? You're amazingly fast!
a. yet b. just c. already d. never
44. We our friends since we were on holiday with them last month.
a. didn't see b. haven't seen c. don't see d. won't see
45. Tamer went to live in Australia. Since then I from him.
a. wasn't hearing b. didn't hear c. don't hear d. haven't heard
46. Mona to America. She hasn't come back yet.
a. has gone b. been c. gone d. has been
47. In the last twenty years, the state up many new projects.
a. will set b. sets c. has set d. is setting
48. Mona in France for ten years. From 2001 to 2011.
a. has been living b. has lived c. lived d. was lived
49. Our flat since we first moved into it.
a. hasn't been painted b. wasn't painted c. hasn't painted d. hasn't been painting
50. He has worked in his office the last three hours.
a. yet b. for c. ago d. since
51. It's more than twenty years since he a short story.
a. had been written b. wrote c. is writing d. writing
52. My brother a good job. He will start work next week.
a. have found b. has found c. found d. was found
53. That is the most exciting film I
a. have never watched b. had ever watched c. had never watched d. have ever watched
54. We haven't travelled by train years.
a. since b. for c. yet d. last

55. I have been to the zoo before.
a. never b. ever c. yet d. since
56. What sport did you use to do you were a child.
a. while b. when c. ago d. since
57. Sherif has lived in London his childhood.
a. since b. ago c. for d. when
58. Ahmed has practised swimming he was six years old.
a. ago b. when c. since d. for
59. I haven't been to Aswan years.
a. for b. since c. when d. while
60. Two weeks, my grandmother was seriously ill, but she is well now.
a. ago b. when c. for d. since

Advanced Exercises

61. Since he joined the army, he two medals.
a. has received b. has been received c. has been receiving d. received
62. The last time he came to Cairo was 1998.
a. in b. since c. for d. when
63. I stories for five years. From 2000 to 2005.
a. have written b. will write c. was written d. wrote
64. We in a "chain of hope" child for a weak last year. (بور أول 2009)
a. have taken b. are taking c. were taken d. took
65. - Have you ever been to Alex? - Yes. I there every summer.
a. went b. have been c. have gone d. go

Writing Skills (Lesson 4)

A persuasive Essay المقال الإقناعي

- The goal of the persuasive essay is to convince the reader to accept the writer's point of view or recommendation.
الهدف من المقال الإقناعي هو إقناع القارئ بقبول وجهة نظر الكاتب أو توصيته.
- The writer must build a case using facts and logic, as well as examples, expert opinion and sound reasoning.
يجب على الكاتب أن يبني قضية باستخدام الحقائق والمنطق، وكذلك الأمثلة، ورأي الخبراء، والاستدلال السليم.
- الروابط والعبارات التي يمكن استخدامها في كتابة المقال الإقناعي:

Expression	Function	الوظيفة
to begin with (firstly)	to introduce the topic	لكي نقدم الموضوع

My new Friend

due to (because of)	to give a reason for something	لكي نقدم تفسير لشيء ما
whilst (although)	to give contrasting information	لتقديم معلومات متناقضة
personally, (in my view)	to give an opinion	لتقديم رأي
consequently (In turn)	to introduce the result of something	للحديث عن نتيجة شيء ما
to conclude (In summary)	to introduce a summary of the main points	لتقديم ملخص للأفكار الرئيسية
secondly (Next)	to move from an idea to another	للاتنقل من فكرة لأخرى
Lastly/ Finally	to end ideas	لإنهاء مجموعة أفكار

Planning for a persuasive essay - كيفية التخطيط للمقال الإقناعي

1. Introduction

- Introduce topic
- Present both opinions briefly
- State your position clearly

2. Main body - give three reasons to support your opinion

- Paragraph 1:

- Topic sentence
- Example / supporting statement

- Paragraph 2:

- Topic sentence
- Example / supporting statement

- Paragraph 3:

- Topic sentence
- Example / supporting statement

3. Conclusion

- Sum up, re-stating your opinion in different words
- Suggest a solution or action.



Exercises on Writing Skills

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In a/an essay, a writer tries to persuade readers of something.
a. explanatory b. persuasive c. expository d. descriptive
- In a persuasive essay a writer expresses opinions that
a. contradict his ideas b. support his ideas
c. cancel his ideas d. disagree with his ideas
- When writing an essay, we use "whilst" to
a. give an opinion
b. give contrasting information
c. give a summary of the main points
d. introduce the topic

4. Transitions like "due to" and "because of" are used in order to
 a. introduce the result of something b. give a reason for something
 c. introduce a summary d. end the essay
5. We use "....." to introduce the topic.
 a. Consequently b. In summary c. To begin with d. Personally
6. "Personally" means
 a. In turn b. Lastly c. To conclude d. In my view
7. Which of the following do we use to end some ideas?
 a. Finally b. Whilst c. Due to d. Firstly
8. To move from the first idea to the second one, we use
 a. To conclude b. Next c. In my view d. Personally
9. In an essay, we use "....." to give an opinion.
 a. whilst b. personally c. consequently d. to conclude
10. What do we use to introduce a summary of the main points?
 a. To conclude b. In my view c. In turn d. Secondly
11. We use "consequently" to
 a. introduce an idea b. give a summary of the main points
 c. give a reason for something d. introduce the result of something
12. We use "To conclude" in order to
 a. introduce a summary of the main points b. give contrasting information
 c. give the reason for something d. give an opinion of something
13. Another word for "Finally" is
 a. Secondly b. Lastly c. Consequently d. Summary
14. To introduce the topic, we use
 a. Secondly b. Finally c. Firstly d. To conclude
15. Another word for "consequently" is
 a. To conclude b. In summary c. In turn d. Due to
16. We give a reason for something using words like "....."
 a. in summary b. next c. due to d. lastly
17. The first paragraph of an essay is called
 a. a conclusion b. body c. an introduction d. a summary
18. In the main body of an essay you write paragraphs to
 a. start the essay b. conclude the essay
 c. support your opinion d. introduce your topic
19. The middle paragraphs of an essay are called the
 a. body b. conclusion c. introduction d. summary
20. In a conclusion, we can use "....."
 a. Firstly b. To sum up c. In my view d. Personally

Test on Unit 1

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
1. I my speech with a prayer for the continued happiness of the newly married couple.
 a. concluded b. included c. contained d. consisted
2. "A man should keep his friendship in constant repair." An antonym for "constant" is
 a. permanent b. fixed c. changeable d. removable
3. "The play was shortened by the omission of a scene." A synonym for "omission" is
 a. detection b. addition c. placement d. deletion
4. This report gives the most balanced point of
 a. sight b. seeing c. view d. visible
5. Untrustworthy reports always put a negative on a story.
 a. spill b. spell c. split d. spin
6. No one wants to buses because they are so slow.
 a. make b. give c. take d. tend
7. While I was doing my homework, my sister my mother.
 a. was helping b. helped c. had helped d. helps
8. Maria better when the doctor came to see her.
 a. weren't seeming b. hasn't seemed c. wasn't seeming d. didn't seem
9. my visit to America, I saw many wonders.
 a. While b. Just as c. As d. During
10. While for the school bus, I met one of my old friends.
 a. being waited b. am waiting c. was waiting d. waiting
11. As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson We missed it.
 a. was beginning b. began c. had begun d. has begun
12. - Have you ever been to China? - Yes, I there last year.
 a. have b. have been c. went d. gone
13. What since you left university?
 a. are you doing b. were you doing c. will you be doing d. have you been doing
14. I for this company since I graduated.
 a. worked b. had worked c. have worked d. was working
15. We six computer lessons up till now.
 a. had taken b. taking c. were taking d. have taken
16. I don't want to see that film. I have seen it.
 a. still b. already c. yet d. ago

B: Reading Comprehension

2. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

(التجربي - 2021)

The Canadian Museum of History will host the spectacular exhibition "Queens of Egypt" which is tailor made to showcase ancient Egyptian queens who wielded power and influence in ancient Egypt. The exhibition will be presented from May, 19 to August, 29 at the Canadian Museum of History.

"Queens of Egypt" will contain more than 300 iconic objects including queen Nefertari's burial chamber. The burial chamber of this queen is one of the most beautiful known tombs of ancient Egypt. "Queens of Egypt" will be an immersive multisensory experience that sheds light on the important military, political, diplomatic and religious roles of seven legendary female figures of the New Kingdom, including Nefertari and Nefertiti.

The exhibition will feature outstanding pieces from the Museo Egizio of Turin (Italy), which houses the largest collection of Egyptian antiquities outside Egypt, and the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities, Cairo, home to the world's largest collection of ancient Egyptian artifacts. Among the objects from Cairo, presented for the first time in North America, visitors will come face to face with an immense statue representing Hatshepsut, one of the few women of that era to have become a pharaoh.

"Queens of Egypt will offer an unforgettable glimpse into one of history's most important civilizations from the perspective of women," said Jean-Marc Blais, Director General of the Canadian Museum of History.

The History exhibition experiences will be enhanced with an area dedicated to interactives, multiple events as well as an exclusive exhibition of contemporary works by female Egyptian artists, developed in collaboration with the Embassy of Egypt.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is ".....".
 - Ancient Egyptian queens at The Canadian Museum of History
 - Hatshepsut, the first woman pharaoh in ancient Egypt
 - Female Egyptian artists in the Egyptian embassy in Canada
 - Queens of Egypt on their first travel to North America
- The word "houses" in the third paragraph means
 - keeps something
 - deletes something
 - carries something
 - performs something
- The best summary of the last paragraph can be
 - "The role of the Embassy of Egypt,"
 - "Contemporary works in the Embassy of Egypt,"
 - "Developing the Embassy of Egypt,"
 - "The History exhibition in the Embassy of Egypt,"
- The Canadian Museum called the exhibition "Queens of Egypt" to show
 - The influence of the woman in ancient Egypt.
 - The names of the queens.
 - The ancient history.
 - Egypt was ruled only by queens.

- The great care the exhibition of "Queens of Egypt" has in the Canadian Museum proves
 - The strong relationship between Egypt and Canada
 - The tension between Egypt and Canada
 - The tension between ancient Egyptian queens
 - The bad effect the monuments left on the audience
- The success of "Queens of Egypt" exhibition may
 - encourage the government to give due care to exhibitions
 - prevent us from having any tourist events
 - invite other countries to hold exhibitions in Egypt
 - show how unfavourable image we have abroad
- The museums in Canada and Italy are located in different places, but they all share the of Egyptian antiquities.
 - eagerness
 - hatefulness
 - kindness
 - forgiveness
- Holding exhibitions for our monuments abroad will
 - encourage tourists to visit Egypt
 - harm Egyptian tourism greatly
 - increase the cost of living in Egypt
 - destroy tourism in Canada

3. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

(التجربي - 2021)

In a small village, there lived a little girl whose name was Sophia. Her uncle gave her a few of pennies to share with her twin brother John in their fifth birthday. She looked at the pieces and said, "What shall we do with them, Mother?" "You mustn't spend them foolishly," said their mother. The twins ran into the street. They wondered what they should buy. Should they buy candy? They hardly knew how it tasted. Should they buy a toy? If they had been the only children in the family, things might have been different. But there were three boys older than them and two little younger sisters.

They hadn't gone far when they met a larger boy who was blowing a flute. "I wish I had that flute," John said. The big boy looked at them and blew it again. Oh, what a pretty sound it made! Sophia showed the money to the boy. "You may have them if you will give us the flute." "All of them?" The boy asked. She looked at her brother then nodded. "Well, it's a deal," said the boy, and he gave the flute to the boy and took the pennies. Little John was very happy. They ran home quickly.

"You've paid a dear price for this thing. You might have bought half a dozen of such flutes with the money" said his mother. The twins saw what a mistake they had made. The flute did not please John anymore. He threw it upon the floor and began to cry. "Never mind", said the mother very kindly. "You are only very little, and you will learn a great deal as you grow bigger."

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The central idea of this passage can be
 - The older you grow, the wiser you will be.

- b. The more people you meet, the more money you will get.
 c. The more money you get, the fewer things you will buy.
 d. The more relatives you have, the more money you will earn.
2. liked to have the flute.
 a. John b. Sophia c. The boy d. The mother
3. Which of the following sentences can be a good paraphrasing for the last paragraph in the passage?
 a. The mother calmed down John telling him that they would gain more experience through life situations.
 b. The mother threatened John telling him that he had to get her other pennies instead of the lost ones.
 c. The mother punished John telling him that they would not have any nice flutes in their life.
 d. The mother warned John that he shouldn't buy flutes from boys in the street.
4. How were the twins deceived by the boy?
 a. The boy sold them his flute for more than it deserved.
 b. They decided to buy a flute to their mother.
 c. They had to buy a flute to play with brothers.
 d. The mother gave them money to buy a flute.
5. "They hardly knew how it tasted". This sentence shows that the twins
 a. live in poverty b. didn't like candy
 c. had to inform their mother d. preferred to taste it
6. After John's experience of buying the flute, he might learn to
 a. value things b. stop crying
 c. ask his father for money d. waste his money
7. Although the mother advised her children to spend money wisely, she didn't get when they didn't.
 a. upset b. happy c. delighted d. satisfied
8. According to the passage, the big boy took the advantage on the children and
 a. took all their money b. played the flute again
 c. gave them the flute for free d. tried to sell the flute

C: Writing

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
 1. When you conclude writing your essay, you should (التجريبي - 2021)
 a. summarize its content b. make the end open
 c. develop the main idea d. put a full stop
2. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? (التجريبي - 2021)
 a. Ayman said, Where did you spend your holiday, Ali?
 b. Ayman said, "Where did you spend your holiday, ali?"
 c. Ayman said, Where did you spend your holiday, Ali.
 d. Ayman said, "Where did you spend your holiday, All?"

3. In a formal email, you will conclude it with "....." (التجريبي - 2021)
 a. Bye b. Yours sincerely c. See you later d. See you soon.
4. When you write an essay or paragraph, you start with a/an sentence. (التجريبي - 2021)
 a. closing b. introduction c. conclusion d. ending

D: Translation

5. Choose the best Arabic Translation:

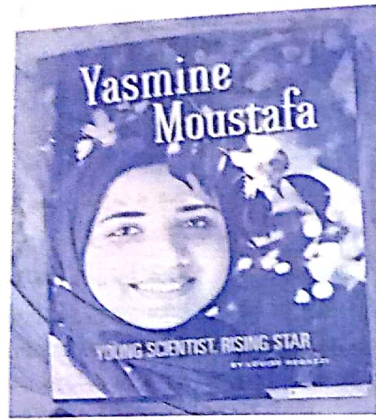
1. A goal is something you want to achieve. First, you must decide what your goal is. (التجريبي - 2021)
 أ. الهدف شيء ما تريد تحقيقه. أولاً يجب أن تقرر ما هو هدفك.
 ب. الهدف شيء ما تريد احرازه. أولاً قرر ما هو الهدف الذي تريد احرازه.
 ج. الهدف الذي تحرزه هو شيء ما، فاقولاً قرر أين تريد احرازه.
 د. الهدف ضمن أشياء تريد تحقيقها. أولاً قرر أين يكون هدفك.
2. The problem of housing forces many young people to remain unmarried.
 أ. مشكلة الإسكان الجبرية تجعل الكثير من الشباب علي أن يظلوا بلا زواج.
 ب. تُجبر مشكلة الإسكان الكثير من الشباب علي أن يظلوا بلا زواج.
 ج. قوة الإسكان جبرية للكثير من الشباب علي أن يظلوا بلا زواج.
 د. تُجبر الإسكان مشكلة الكثير من الشباب علي أن يظلوا بلا زواج.

6. Choose the best English Translation:

1. يجب أن نرشد استهلاكنا من المياه وإلا سنواجه مشكلات خطيرة في المستقبل القريب. (التجريبي - 2021)
 a. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
 b. We have to nationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
 c. We should rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face series problems in the near future.
 d. We have to rationalize our consumption of water, or we face dangerous problems in the near future.
2. يمكن استخدام العلاج بالموسيقى في علاج بعض الاضطرابات البدنية والذهنية لدى الناس.
 a. Music therapy can be used to treat some of people's physical and mental disorders.
 b. Music therapy can used to treat some of people's physical and mental disorders.
 c. Music therapy can be using to treat some of people's physical and mental disorders.
 d. Music therapy can be used to treat some of people's physical or mental disorders.



Unit (2)



Her Story

قصتها

Objectives

- Reading** Extract information from three texts.
- Writing** Write a report on the results of a survey.
- Listening** Listen to a podcast about girls in education.
- Speaking** Make a speech about equality.
- Language** Comparatives and Superlatives; Past perfect simple and past perfect continuous.
- Life skills** Critical thinking; Identifying inequality and challenging stereotypes.

Unit 2: Her Story

قصتها

Part 1: Lessons (1-2)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
award	جائزة	a prize or symbol given to recognize an achievement.
contribution	إسهام	something you do help make something successful.
lecturer	محاضر	a person who teaches at a university.
physicist	فيزيائي	an expert in physics.
prejudice	تعصب / حكم مسبق	an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you do not have enough knowledge.
qualify	يتأهل	successfully finish a course so you can do a job.
role model	نموذج يحتذى به	a person young people can look up to and try to be like them.
stereotype	صورة نمطية	a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like.
obstacle	عائق	a situation, an event, etc. that makes it difficult for you to do or achieve something.
defy	يتحدى / يواجه	to refuse to obey or show respect for somebody in authority, a law, a rule, etc.
determination	عزيمة / إصرار	the quality that makes you continue trying to do something even when this is difficult.
karate	رياضة الكاراتيه	a Japanese sport in which you must defeat a person using hits, kicks or throws.
pharmacist	صيدلي	a person whose job is to prepare medicines and sell or give them to the public in a shop or in a hospital.
overcome	يتغلب على	to succeed in dealing with or controlling a problem that has been preventing you from achieving something.
rank	يصنف شخص بمنحه رتبة	to give somebody/something a particular position on a scale according to quality, importance, success, etc.; to have a position of this kind.
round	جولة	a stage in a competition or sports event.

Listening

compete	report	تقارير	dream	حلم / جنم
youth team	graduate	فرق الشباب	successful	نجاح
point out	come true	يوضح / يبين	Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية

Reading and Critical Thinking

physics	manager	مدير	especially	خاصة
young people	college	كلية	sporting	رياضي (صفة)
training course	STEM school	مدارس الستيم	competition	سابقة
fixed idea	The CEO	الرئيس التنفيذي	first round	الجولة الأولى
symbol	medical treatment	علاج طبي	tournament	بطولة
recognize	instead	بدلاً من	court	محاكمة
reasonable	creative	إبداعي	clay	طين / تراب
unreasonable	unfair	غير عادل	opening game	بداية افتتاحية
planet	qualification	مؤهلات	amateur	هواة / غير محترف
celebrate	consider	يعتبر	professional	احترافي
remarkable	modern Egypt	مصر الحديثة	profile	صورة جانبية
demonstrate	mathematics	الرياضيات	male	ذكر
technical	treat	يعالج / يعالج	female	أنثى
overcome	secret	سر	formula	صيغة
determination	patience	الصبر	challenges	تحديات
education	private clinic	عيادة خاصة	major	رئيسي
scientists	defy	يتحدى / يرفض	beat	يغلب / يهزم
medical	alone	بمفرده	up until then	حتى ذلك الحين
bronze medal	winning invention	الاختراع الفاز	previously	سابقاً
silver medal	spark	بشاً / شرارة البدء	conditions	ظروف / أحوال
confidence	straw	القش	success	نجاح
innovate	natural fuel	وقود طبيعي	pharmacist	صيدلي
difficulties	sportswomen	نساء رياضيات	Morocco	المغرب
obstacles	attitudes	مواقف	decisions	قرارات

My new Friend

honest	أمين	little by little	شيئاً فشيئاً	powerlifting	رفع الأثقال
confident about	واثق من	equal amounts	كميات متساوية	assume	يفترض
health emergency	طوارئ صحية	volunteers	متطوعين	biography	سيرة ذاتية
face	يواجه	education	تعليم	opportunity	فرصة
degree	درجة علمية	suburb	ضاحية	engineering	الهندسة
heat	حرارة	subject	موضوع	realize	يدرك
earlier time	وقت مبكر	continuous activity	نشاط مستمر	refer back to	يشير مرة أخرى إلى
area	منطقة / مجال	minor	تحت السن القانوني / صغير	scholars	علماء
field	مجال	Congo	الكونغو	unique	فريد من نوعه
champion	بطل	scientific research	بحث علمي	achievement	الإنجاز
championships	بطولات	society	المنجوع	encourage	يشجع
rank	مرتبة / يصل لمرتبة / يتوج	to be honest	للأمانة	hits	ضربات
round	جولة / مستدير	event	حدث	kicks	ركلات
Austria	النمسا	Romania	رومانيا	throws	اللقاء على الأرض
department	قسم	wind tunnels	النفق الرياح	science clubs	نوادي علمية
defeat	يغزم	face	يواجه	Arab woman	سيدة عربية
career	حياة مهنية	prove	يثبت / يبرهن	chemistry	كيمياء
medal	ميدالية	proudly	بفخر	state	يصرح

Prepositions

name after	يسمى على اسم	look up to	يحترم	qualified as	تأهل كـ
suitable for	مناسب لـ	key to	مفتاح لـ	expert in / on	خبير في
encouraged by	يشجع بواسطة	the need for	الحاجة إلى	sparked by	نشأ بواسطة
impact on	تأثير على	apologise to	يعتذر لشخص	contribute to	يساهم في
lose to	يخسر	in the first round	في الجولة الأولى	in fact	في الحقيقة
in an interview	في حوار	proud of	فخور بـ	fight through	يحارب خلال
believe in	يؤمن بـ	work for	يعمل لـ	win against	يفوز ضد
prejudice against	تحيز ضد	grow up	ينمو / يكبر	at a time when	في وقت كان فيه
work as	يعمل كـ	in her honour	تتكرم لها	play for	يلعب لـ
return to	يعود إلى	move to	ينتقل إلى	bring up	يربي طفل
determined to	مصمم على	increase in	زيادة في	insist on	يصر على

get / win a scholarship	يفوز بمنحة دراسية	do a job	يُؤدّي وظيفة
receive a scholarship	يتلقّى منحة	give a prize or a symbol	يُعطي جائزة / رمز
win an award for	يفوز بجائزة في	recognize achievement (contribution)	يُعترف بالإنجاز
make history	يصنع التاريخ	break down stereotypes	يُطعن الصور النمطية
research ways to	يبحث عن طرق لـ	make a big contribution to	يُؤدّي مساهمة كبيرة لـ
receive an A in biology	يحصد درجة A في الأحياء	make medical treatment	يُمنع علاج طبي
become successful in	يصبح ناجحاً في	recognize your own	يُعترف بنفسك
honour ... with an award of	يكرم ... بجائزة في	defied stereotypes	نقض الصور النمطية
produce a natural fuel	يُنتج وقود طبيعي	give the confidence	يُعطي الثقة
generate (make/produce) electricity	تولد الكهرباء	do real research	يُؤدّي بحث حقيقي
change the world	يغير العالم	achieve "firsts"	يُحقّق المراكز الأولى
win a medal at	يفوز بميدالية في	receive a "unique" honour	يُمنح تكريم فريد
reach number	يصل لعدد	make a decision	يُتخذ قرار
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	play a professional match	يُعبّر مباراة احترافية
win a tournament	يفوز ببطولة	hit the ball	يُضرب الكرة
do (play) a sport	يُمارس رياضة	require strength	يُتطلب قوة
got top marks (grades)	يُحصل على أعلى الدرجات	get a degree	يُحصل على درجة علمية
hold a tournament	يُعقد بطولة	enter the first round	يُدخل الجولة الأولى
write a piece of music	يُكتب مقطوعة موسيقية	enter a team	يُدخل بالفريق
Intel Science and Engineering competition			سابقة إنتل للعلوم والهندسة
put Egypt on the world map of			نُقل مصر على خريطة العالم في
Grand Slams	بطولات التنس الأربعة الكبرى	sporting competition	نمسة رياضية
burning rice straw	قُطّن الأرز المحروق	repair a car engine	مُنح موتور السيارة
study medicine	يُدرس الطب	do well in Maths	يُؤدي جيداً في الرياضيات
top handball	كرة يد متقدمة المستوى	a two-year degree in	بداية لمدة عامين في
took a higher degree in	حصل على درجة أعلى في	a master's degree in	درجة الماجستير في
fight through the obstacles	يتغلب على العقبات	study abroad	يُدرس بالخارج
do some work for	يقوم ببعض الأعمال لـ	win (take) first place	فُوز بالمركز الأول
reach the WAT finals	الوصول إلى نهائيات	take medicine	تُخذ الدواء
take advice from	يأخذ النصيحة من	make history	يُصنع التاريخ
give the experience	يُعطي الخبرة	get a full time job	يُحصل على وظيفة بدوام كامل

program computers	يُبرمج الحاسبات	invent a new device	يُخترع جهازاً جديداً
solve real-life problems	يُحل مشاكل الحياة الواقعية	review space missions	تُراجع مهام فضائية
aerospace engineering	هندسة الطيران	test wind tunnels	يُختبر أنفاق الرياح
do a lot of volunteering	يُقوم بالكثير من التطوع	teach Islamic studies	يُعلم الدراسات الإسلامية
Tokyo Olympic games	أولمبياد طوكيو	Women's tennis association	اتحاد تنس السيدات
karate gold medal	الميدالية الذهبية للكاراتيه	Olympic gold medal	الميدالية الذهبية الأولمبية
National Aeronautics and Space Administration			المركز الوطني للملاحة الجوية وإدارة الفضاء
The Egyptian National Women's Volleyball team			المنتخب المصري للكرة الطائرة سيدات
an international Egyptian handball team			فريق كرة يد مصري دولي
on clay courts	على الملاعب الترابية	sports organizers	منظمو الرياضات
spend money on	يُنفق مال على	extremely well	يؤدي بشكل جيد للغاية

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
award	جائزة	honour / prize / premium	draw / halt / deadlock
prejudice	تحيز	bias / favouritism / prejudgment	neutrality / objectivity
qualify	يؤهل	authorize / prepare	disqualify / forbid
fixed	ثابت	certain / firm / frozen	adjustable / elastic / changeable
unreasonable	غير منطقي	illogical / irrational	logical / rational
unfair	غير عادل	illegal / nasty / shameful	ethical / moral / legal
remarkable	رائع	outstanding / impressive / spectacular	unremarkable / unnoticeable
demonstrate	يظهر	establish / prove / show	refute / disprove / confute
confidence	ثقة	certainty / trust / self-assurance	hesitancy / distrust
innovate	يبدع	create / devise / invent / fabricate	terminate / abolish
obstacles	عقبات	hindrances / barriers / burdens	boosts / incentives
honest	أمين	truthful / earnest / trustworthy	fallacious / false / dishonest
especially	بخاصة	particularly / individually	broadly / generally / widely
defy	يُحدي	rebel / combat / fight / withstand	submit / surrender / yield
spark	يُنشأ	sparkle / glow / activate	suppress / arrest
fascinating	مبهر	exciting / pleasant / tempting	boring / tedious / dull
professional	مُحترف	expert / specialist / technical	nonprofessional / inexperienced
major	رئيسي	bulky / colossal / gigantic / main	minor / slight

previously	سابقاً	earlier / formerly	afterwards
symbol	رمز	logo / icon / trademark	
amounts	كميات	quantities / volumes / portions	

Listening Texts

1. An interview with Mayar Sherif

Interviewer: How long had you been playing tennis when you played your first professional match?

Mayar : Let's think, I started when I was five so I had been playing for 15 years.

Interviewer: Had you ever competed on clay courts before you played at the French Open?

Mayar : No, it was the first time I had played on a clay court in a professional match.

Interviewer: Did you think you were going to win the match against Chloe?

Mayar : No, to be honest, before the match I hadn't been hitting the ball very well. The courts were fast and it was difficult. But little by little I had been playing better and by the time I played against her I felt confident.

2. A report about a handball player

What's her dream?

In 2021 Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma had been playing top handball for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma had already played for the Egyptian youth team, the under-eighteens and before she graduated she had played for ... the under-twenties. She became one of the best women handball players in the country. In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we spoke to Fatma she said that in the past the country had spent a lot of money on the men's handball team, which helped it to become very successful. She hoped that the sports organisation would spend money on a women's team in the future. She also pointed out that in the past women had been very successful in other sports such as Hedaya Malak and Samir Ahmed who won medals at the 2016 Olympics. She said there was no reason women handball players could not do extremely well too. Let's hope that soon her dream will come true and that there will be an international Egyptian handball team for women over twenty one. We are sure that they will be very successful.

Reading Texts

1. People who inspire

Firsts for Egyptian women

This week, we are celebrating two remarkable Egyptian women who broke down stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important and continues to grow.

Hilana Sedarous

1904–1998

Education: London Medical School

Hilana Sedarous was the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor in modern Egypt and scholars believe she was the first woman to be a doctor, too. She was born in Tanta and was sent to London in 1922 to study mathematics and medicine with five other Egyptian students. However, while she was there, she decided to study medicine instead. She was considered one of the first medical students to study in England. In 1930, after going through many obstacles, she qualified as a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened a private clinic for women. She was treating patients until she was 70 years old. After retiring, she started writing and translating stories for children.

Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa

Born: 1998

Awards: 1st place in the Intel Science and Engineering competition, NASA named a planet after her family (Moustafa 31910) recognizing her contribution to science.

Education: Maadi STEM School for Girls, Middle East Technical University

Yasmeen is a role model for other young Egyptians. Born in Damietta, she defied stereotypes, by moving to Cairo alone to attend the Maadi STEM school. The CEO of Intel Egypt said that Yasmeen has received a "unique" honour, adding that her success in the field of scientific research is considered an achievement for all of the Egyptian society; and for Intel which encourages youth to be creative.

Yasmeen's winning invention was sparked by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that burning rice straw gave clean water and also produced a natural fuel which can be used to generate electricity.

She says her school gave her the confidence to innovate and to defy prejudice: "I believe I can change the world" she proudly states.

2. 2021: A great year for Egyptian women athletes!

2021 was an amazing year for Egyptian female athletes. At the Tokyo Olympic Games, Ferial Abdelaziz became the first female Egyptian to win the karate gold medal. Ferial studied to become a pharmacist, and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a bronze medal at the World Championships in Spain and a silver medal at the 2019 Africa Games in Morocco.

However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympic Games. Giana Farouk won a bronze medal at the same event. Giana had also won a gold medal at the Africa Games in Congo in 2015 and three gold medals at the World Championships (two in Germany in 2014 and one in Austria in 2016).

Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became the first Egyptian woman to be ranked in the top 100 players of the Womens Tennis Association (WTA), reaching number 74 in September. This was after she reached the WTA finals in Romania, where she lost to Andrea Petkovic. Earlier in the year, she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open. Up until then, no Egyptian woman had won a match in a Grand Slam tournament.

These great women athletes and many others faced many obstacles and challenges. However, they were able to overcome them and proudly put Egypt on the world map in sports. The secret formula for their success was hard work, determination and a lot of patience.

3. The biography of Dr Tahani Amer

Dr Tahani Amer grew up in a suburb in Cairo. Her love of engineering started when she was watching her father repair a car engine when she was young, although she thought she would study medicine at university. She then married when she was 17 and moved to the USA in 1983.

Although she did not speak any English at that time, this did not stop her from doing well in maths and she got top grades in her exams. She took a two-year degree in science while she was bringing up two young children, and then took a higher degree in engineering. In 1992, she got a master's degree in aerospace engineering and another qualification in engineering after that. It is easy to understand why she believes that education is the key to opportunity!

After she moved to the USA, she was determined to work for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) and she did some work for them while

she was at college. This gave her the experience she needed to get a full-time job there. She became a manager at NASA in 2012. Since 2016, she has worked for NASA's technology department. During her time there, she was helping to program computers and test wind tunnels. She invented a new device and helped solve real-life problems. She now reviews NASA's space missions.

While living in the USA, Dr Tahani Amer also did a lot of volunteering for the community. She helps at after-school science clubs, teaches Arabic and Islamic studies to young children and also works hard to help other women become successful in their careers. Dr Tahani Amer's work has contributed to the increase in the number of women who work at NASA today, around 30% of people who work for NASA are female.

Language Notes

1. Grand Slam tournament competition البطولات الأربع الدولية للتنس:

The US Open	بطولة الولايات المتحدة المفتوحة	French Open	بطولة فرنسا المفتوحة
Wimbledon	بطولة ويمبلدون	the Australian Open	بطولة استراليا المفتوحة

2. energy / power / force / strength:

* energy أنواع الطاقة / طاقة العمل - الحركة - المعيشة

* People, animals and plants need energy to live. * Machines need energy to work.

* Nuclear energy is very dangerous. * Most of the energy we use today comes from the sun.

* power سلطة - نفوذ - نوع الطاقة - قوة محرك - قوة طبيعية طاقة التشغيل

* Energy is produced in power stations. * The power of nature is superior to man.

* Politics spoil when greed for power interferes. * Atomic power should be used well.

* force قوة منظمة (مجموعة) - قوة جبرية غاشمة

* The Armed forces protect us. * America has seized many lands by force.

* strength قوة البدن - قدرة البدن * I don't have enough strength to beat this man.

3. It + be + adjective + for OR of:

- It's + صفة + of + مفعول + مصدر: (لتحديث عن ما يمتلكه المفعول)

* It was kind of him to help me. * It is thoughtful of Ali to work for charities.

- It's + صفة + for + مفعول + مصدر: (لتحديث عن ما للمفعول)

* It's impossible for us to live without trees. * It's necessary for you to study hard.

4. historic / historical:

- historic (تاريخي - قديم - مهم تاريخياً - يمكن زيارته) (site - place - building - date - occasion - monument)

* Egypt is full of historic monuments.

- historical (تاريخي (يرتبط بدراسة التاريخ) (film - play - novel - book - research - character - events)

* I have just finished reading a historical novel.

5. sports / sporting / sporty صفات بمعنى رياضي

- sports (centre / club / man / woman / equipment / wear / festival / shop)
- sporting (spirit / event / competition)
- sporty (family / car)

6. فعل مناسب + be + the first / second / third / last / only + (اسم) + to مصدر

- Nabawiya Musa was the first Egyptian (woman) to go to high school.
- Nabawiya Musa was the first Egyptian (woman) who went to high school.

7. cause / make / force / let / allow / permit:

* Do you know what causes volcanoes to happen?

(يجعل) مصدر + to + مفعول + cause + فاعل

(يجعل) مصدر + be made + to + مفعول + make + فاعل

* The professor made the students do the experiment again.

* The students were made to do the experiment again.

(يجبر) مصدر + to + مفعول + force + فاعل

(يسمح - يدع) مصدر + مفعول + let + فاعل

(يسمح) مصدر + to + مفعول + allow/permit + فاعل

8. be used to + مصدر = be used for + V.ing / اسم / يُستخدم في:

* Wood is used to make paper. * Wood is used for making paper.

(عادة في المضارع) - am / is / are / get + used to (accustomed to) + V.ing / Noun / Pronoun

(عادة في الماضي) - was / were / got + used to (accustomed to) + V.ing / Noun / Pronoun

* Hany is used to getting high marks in tests. * She was used to sleeping in the afternoon.

* I am not used to junk food. * I wasn't used to him. * She isn't accustomed to reading plays.

9. be successful = be (achieve) a success يحقق نجاح

* His first three novels weren't successful (a success).

10. More Notes:

realize	يدرك (حقيقة / شيء)	recognize	يتعرف على شخص
currently	حاليا	previously	سابقا
repair (mend) (fix)	يصلح شيء	reform	يصلح نظام أو منظومة
biography	سيرة ذاتية لشخص عن آخر	autobiography	سيرة ذاتية لشخص عن نفسه
graduate as + وظيفة	يتخرج كـ (وظيفة) (كمحاكي)	graduate with + شهادة	يتخرج ويحصل على شهادة
graduate in + سنة	يتخرج في سنة ما	graduate in + مجال	يتخرج في مجال (كالطب)
a graduate of	خريج كذا	graduation	التخرج
win / get / receive	يتسلم جائزة	be awarded	يتم منحه جائزة
award	جائزة رسمية - يمنح جائزة	reward	مكافأة غير رسمية - يكافئ
abroad	في الخارج (خارج البلاد)	aboard (on board)	على متن سفينة أو طائرة
retire / retirement	يتقاعد / التقاعد	resign / resignation	يستقيل / استقالة
play (do) a part (role) in	يلعب دور في	take part in	يشترك في

play (do) a role in	يلعب دور في	have a role in	له دور في
impressive	مبهر	impressed by	منبهر بـ
qualified in	مؤهّل في كذا	qualified as + وظيفة	مؤهّل كـ
expert at + V.ing	خبير في	expert on (in) + اسم	خبير في
inquire / inquiry	يستفسر / تحقيق - تحري	enquire / enquiry	يستفسر / استفسار عن معلومات
require	يتطلب	acquire	يكتسب
research	يبحث علميا	search	يبحث (يفتش)
grade	تقدير في اختبار / صف دراسي	degree	درجة أو شهادة علمية
treat	يعالج	cure of	يعالج من
heal	تلتئم (الجروح والحروق)	a cure for	علاج لـ
grow	يزرع / يكبر / ينمو	grow up	يكبر
grow (up)	يكبر (ينمو)	bring up	يربي
instead + جملة	بدلا من ذلك	instead of + V.ing / Noun	بدلا من
late	متأخر / في وقت متأخر	lately	مؤخرا / حديثا
later	فيما بعد	the latter	الأخير بين اثنين
the last	الأخير	the latest	الأحدث
alone	بمفرده (دون مساعدة من أحد)	lonely	وحيد (شاعر بالوحدة) / منغل
insist on + V.ing / Noun	يصر على / يصمم على	persist in + V.ing / Noun	يصر على / يصمم على
hero	بطل أسطوري أو تاريخي أو شعبي	champion	بطل رياضي في مسابقة

Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He received an for bravery from the police service.
a. award b. present c. prize d. presentation
- Carlos was first prize in the essay competition.
a. won b. got c. received d. awarded
- The school him with a prize for excellence in his studies.
a. rewarded b. warded c. attended d. rewarded
- You will be promoted. You have made great to our firm.
a. contributions b. contaminations c. collections d. confrontations
- This heroine is a great for young female players in Egypt.
a. role-play b. role-model c. real-life d. stereotype
- Albert Einstein is perhaps the most famous the world has known.
a. physicist b. physical c. physics d. physically
- He worked very hard for many years and he has now as a doctor.
a. qualified b. quantified c. verified d. classified
- It is a to think that all women cannot work as hard as men.
a. sterilized b. stereotype c. star player d. starfish

Unit 2: Her story

- must be strictly enforced.
- d. prejudice
9. Laws against racial must be strictly enforced.
a. justice b. fairness c. equality d. made
10. The volunteers great contributions to make the park look so beautiful.
a. did b. gave c. took d. sight
11. She does into how children acquire language.
a. search b. research c. looking d. sporting
12. The college offers a wide range of activities and competitions.
a. sport b. sports c. sports' d. sporting
13. The company must reduce costs to effectively.
a. compare b. compete c. compete d. contaminate
14. The money has been invested for a period. It had been identified before that.
a. comment b. changeable c. movable d. flexible
15. Ali was knocked out of the tournament in the third
a. round b. around c. inward d. ground
16. United scored in the minutes of the game. It was very early.
a. opened b. opens c. open d. opening
17. The vase is decorated with religious like mosques and minarets.
a. legs b. symbols c. slices d. saucers
18. The drug is used in the of depression.
a. treatment b. medical c. carve d. crave
19. My sister is entering an international tennis next month.
a. tournament b. tourist c. tour d. attraction
20. I him as soon as he came in the room.
a. organized b. apologized c. recognized d. allocated
21. The players are good friends off and train together.
a. court b. courage c. coverage d. reportage
22. Be! We can't work late every night.
a. reasoning b. resigned c. reasonable d. global
23. We hope the authorities will move to end such practices.
a. unfair b. just c. well-behaved d. astonishing
24. Too many school-leavers lack basic in English and Maths.
a. omissions b. missions c. qualifications d. collections
25. After he won the amateur championship he turned
a. processed b. professional c. practitioner d. performer
26. The area is for its scenery. Let's visit it and enjoy ourselves.
a. insignificant b. remarkable c. tolerant d. fundamental
27. We first build up a detailed of our customers and their requirements.
a. while b. pile c. smile d. profile
28. New research convincingly that age-related memory loss is not inevitable.
a. demonstrates b. fabricates c. allocates d. deletes
29. She has written brilliant roles for strong characters that women can do.
a. male b. masculine c. female d. mare

My new friend

30. You shouldn't listen to other people's conversations.
a. public b. private c. general d. open
31. Hundreds of people today the ban on political gatherings. They are stubborn.
a. defended b. defied c. agreed d. approved of
32. He is a far better chess player than me. He always me at chess.
a. beats b. earns c. wins d. gains
33. Successful athletes are usually able to their problems.
a. come b. overlook c. look out d. overcome
34. When they came to visit us, I had visited them three days
a. previously b. former c. early d. after
35. The proposal would a storm of protest around the country.
a. shrink b. shrink c. smoke d. spark
36. She was suffering from physical and exhaustion.
a. bodily b. mental c. fertile d. tension
37. The company can once again its way out of tough economic times.
a. innovate b. inspect c. suspect d. aspect
38. is a Japanese sport in which you must defeat a person using hits, kicks or throws.
a. Boxing b. Tennis c. Karate d. Gymnastics
39. A is a person who knows which medicines you should take to make you better.
a. pharmacist b. chemical c. chemistry d. detergent
40. A lack of qualifications can be a major to finding a job.
a. advantage b. merit c. obstacle d. helper
41. If they can adopt that kind of, then the future looks very promising.
a. prejudice b. attitude c. promote d. prostitute
42. We need to ensure of opportunity in all areas of work.
a. quality b. quantity c. volume d. equality
43. People often Hong Kong as the most expensive city to live in the world.
a. shrink b. rank c. tank d. wrinkle
44. It is generally that stress is caused by too much work.
a. seemed b. appeared c. assumed d. consumed
45. This is a medical needing urgent treatment with antibiotics.
a. expectancy b. emergency c. fallacy d. fantasy
46. The book gives potted of all the major painters.
a. gravities b. graves c. biographical d. biographies
47. Taha Hussien wrote his own in (El-Ayyam).
a. biographical b. biography c. autobiography d. autobiographical
48. She got marks in maths and chemistry; she was honoured.
a. low b. bottom c. round d. top
49. My brother has a master's from Harvard University.
a. grade b. mark c. degree d. agreement
50. I think mountain are very brave people.
a. cravers b. carriers c. donors d. climbers
51. Your trip to Alaska sounds absolutely You must have enjoyed it a lot.
a. irritable b. fascinating c. ridiculous d. tremendous

52. You must place these events in their context.
a. history b. historical c. historian d. storied
53. I've got three days' holiday New Year's Day.
a. including b. containing c. consisting d. resisting
54. Hard work and are the keys to success.
a. patience b. tension c. stress d. stamina
55. This is used to calculate the area of a circle.
a. forum b. firm c. form d. formula
56. Destruction of the environment is one of the most serious we face.
a. chances b. opportunities c. occasions d. challenges
57. A/An is an area where people live that is outside the centre of a city.
a. suburb b. therapist c. syrup d. absorb
58. I would like to refer to the first of my three points.
a. pack b. packet c. pocket d. back
59. We took a cross-country route instead the motorway.
a. in b. on c. of d. from
60. He named his newly born girl his mother.
a. under b. below c. after d. within
61. To look someone means to respect them.
a. down to b. up to c. into d. after
62. He is qualified a complete man of letters.
a. in b. as c. like d. from
63. Cotton is for wear in summer.
a. responsible b. suitable c. recognized d. local
64. He was an expert ancient Chinese astronomical literature.
a. at b. from c. on d. to
65. The failure of this scheme to her eventual downfall.
a. repeated b. converted c. contributed d. reputed
66. You have to believe yourself. That's the secret of success.
a. in b. at c. from d. for
67. Many women have succeeded in breaking stereotype.
a. on b. into c. down d. up
68. They gave her an award in for her achievements.
a. omission b. recognition c. intention d. realization
69. He fitted perfectly the of the absent-minded professor.
a. stereotype b. stream c. scream d. slide
70. The wind turbines are used to electricity.
a. generate b. graduate c. qualify d. mention
71. This case is It is the first of its kind.
a. technique b. cheque c. unique d. quake
72. It was decided to a competition to find a suitable and generally agree
a. catch b. hold c. scold d. offend
73. Mona did all the washing No one helped her.
a. on herself b. by her own c. to herself d. lonely

74. Ahmed Zewail was the first Egyptian scientist the Nobel Prize for Chemistry.
a. get b. gets c. who get d. to get
75. At first, I couldn't withstand the heat but then I it.
a. got used to b. got used for c. was used for d. used to
76. I'm happy that your latest novel was a
a. success b. successful c. succeed d. successfully
77. My brother is a graduate Oxford University.
a. on b. in c. from d. of
78. My brother graduated Oxford University last year.
a. of b. from c. with d. in
79. My brother graduated law two years ago.
a. by b. in c. from d. at
80. Cutting the budget was an accomplishment.
a. impress b. impressive c. impressed d. impression
81. We were by the sheer size of the cathedral.
a. impression b. impress c. impressive d. impressed
82. Your condition is serious and surgery.
a. acquires b. inquires c. enquires d. requires
83. Now they are more likely to research on narrow topics like arms control.
a. give b. make c. do d. go
84. "He won the best actor award." A synonym for "award" is
a. dishonor b. prize c. treasure d. measure
85. "Prejudice is the reason of fools." An antonym for "prejudice" is
a. subjectivity b. neutrality c. causality d. monopoly
86. Another meaning for "prejudice" is
a. advancement b. achievement c. engagement d. favouritism
87. "Life seems so unfair sometimes." An antonym for "unfair" is
a. just b. pretty c. beautiful d. ugly
88. "How do you demonstrate that the earth is round?" A synonym for "demonstrate" is
a. prove b. improve c. develop d. attach
89. To "innovate" means to
a. omit b. cancel c. devise d. delete
90. "I defy anyone to disprove the defendant's statements." A synonym for "defy" is
a. submit b. surrender c. yield d. rebel
91. The electricity industry consumes large amounts of fossil fuels. "Amounts" means
a. qualifiers b. qualities c. quantities d. quakes
92. "I love Italy, especially in summer." An antonym for "especially" is
a. privately b. particularly c. critically d. generally
93. A synonym for "fascinating" is
a. unattractive b. tempting c. traditional d. relevant
94. "They are hopeful the project will succeed." An antonym for "hopeful" is
a. optimistic b. cheerful c. rosy d. cheerless

95. Another word for "symbol" is
 a. legal b. logo c. legging d. log
96. The of some Roman earthenware vessels were found during the dig.
 a. remains b. remembers c. stays d. reminds
97. "Love grows with obstacles." A synonym for "obstacles" is
 a. open ways b. solutions c. values d. hindrances
98. "Love is built on trust." Another word for "trust" is
 a. confidence b. assassination c. disagreement d. improvement
99. The football team was disciplined by a trainer.
 a. profession b. procession c. professional d. process
100. The court was slippery and he was unable to move freely.
 a. tray b. troy c. clay d. grey
101. To be, it was one of the worst books I've ever read.
 a. modest b. curious c. convict d. honest
102. She the ball so hard that her opponent couldn't establish any rhythm in her game.
 a. shit b. hit c. shut d. cut
103. At first she was anxious, but she became confident about herself.
 a. little by little b. day in day c. have in have d. done in done
104. The race are trying to attract sponsors.
 a. customers b. organizers c. sterilizers d. fertilizers
105. When I asked her why, she that she had been nervous.
 a. knocked out b. came out c. looked out d. pointed out
106. Her parents were delighted that she did in her exam.
 a. extreme good b. extreme well c. extremely well d. extremely good
107. I hope that one day all your dreams will true.
 a. make b. come c. do d. go
108. the fact that she is young, she can do any sum.
 a. Although b. Though c. Even though d. Despite
109. He was punished after he refused to the rules.
 a. follow b. respect c. violate d. conform
110. Women to live longer than men.
 a. pretend b. tend c. attend d. trend

Grammar

- Degrees of equality, comparative and superlative:

الجات التساوي والمقارنة والتفضيل:
 الدرجة الأولى (التساوي وعدم التساوي في صفة ما): في هذه الدرجة نستخدم الصفة الأصلية كما يلي.
 التعبير عن التساوي في صفة بين عنصرين:

فاعل آخر + as + صفة (قصيرة / طويلة) + as + فاعل
 فاعل آخر + as + اسم a (an) + صفة (قصيرة / طويلة) + as + فاعل
 فاعل آخر + as + اسم + (have) + the same + فاعل
 اسم + (have) + the same + فاعل آخر and فاعل

My new Friend

- * Mona is as tall (beautiful) as her mother (is). * Ali is as good a player as his brother.
 * Ali is (has) the same height as Alaa. = Ali and Alaa are (have) the same height.

2. للتعبير عن عدم التساوي في صفة بين عنصرين:

فاعل آخر + as + صفة (قصيرة / طويلة) + as + فاعل
 فاعل آخر + as + اسم + as + فاعل
 اسم + as + فاعل and فاعل آخر + as + اسم + as + فاعل

- * The film isn't as / so nice (interesting) as the book.
 * Mona isn't (doesn't have) the same weight as her mother.
 * Mona and her mother aren't (don't have) the same weight.

2. الدرجة الثانية (المقارنة) Comparative:

- في هذه الدرجة نستخدم درجة المقارنة من الصفة لنقوم بعمل مقارنة بين عنصرين كما يلي:

فاعل آخر + er + than + صفة قصيرة + be + فاعل
 فاعل آخر + than + صفة طويلة + more + be + فاعل (تعني أكثر من)
 فاعل آخر + than + صفة طويلة + less + be + فاعل (تعني أقل من)

- * Ali is stronger than his friends.
 * Mona is more intelligent than Soha.
 * Basketball is less interesting than football.

3. الدرجة الثالثة (التفضيل) Superlative:

- نستخدم درجة التفضيل من الصفة لنقوم بتفضيل عنصر علي بقية العناصر في مجموعة / مكان / زمان معين.

est + صفة قصيرة + the + be + فاعل
 صفة طويلة + the most + be + فاعل (تعني الأكثر)
 صفة طويلة + the least + be + فاعل (تعني الأقل)

- * Ali is the strongest student in class.
 * Mona is the most intelligent student of her classmates.
 * This novel is the least interesting one.

Important Notes

1. يمكن استخدام (less / least) في المقارنة والتفضيل مع كلاً من الصفات القصيرة والصفات الطويلة كما يلي.

فاعل آخر + than + صفة قصيرة / صفة طويلة + less + be + فاعل (أقل من)
 صفة قصيرة / صفة طويلة + the least + be + فاعل (الأقل)

- * Of all the team players, Ali is the least tall (skillful).

استخدام ظروف الدرجة (Adverbs of degree) قبل صفات المقارنة:
يتم وضع مجموعة من ظروف الدرجة قبل صيغ المقارنة (البيان درجة الاختلاف في المقارنة) ...

much / a lot / a little / a bit / far / slightly / even

- * Travelling by plane is much more comfortable than travelling by ship.

التعبير عن الزيادة المتوازنة (Parallel Increase):

يتم استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة في القاعدة التالية للتعبير عن فكرة (كلما كلما).

فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + the + فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + The

- The smaller the house is, the less it will cost you to heat.
- The harder you study, the more marks you will get.
- The harder you study, the higher marks you will get.

نرى نستخدم (the) قبل صفات المقارنة ومتى نستخدمها قبل صفات التفضيل:

نكتبها في المقارنة بين عنصرين أن نستخدم (صفة المقارنة + the). (عندما يكون عدد عناصر المقارنة اثنان)
نن لا نستخدم (the) مع صفات التفضيل (صفة تفضيل + the). (عندما يكون عدد العناصر أكثر من اثنان)

- * Of these two cars, the red one is the more expensive.

The red car is the most expensive of all the cars in the agency.

لاحظ أن هناك استخدامات أخرى للظرف (most):

(بمعنى جداً)
most (very) + ظرف / صفة
most / best / much / very much / a lot
most of all.
ظرف في نهاية الجملة بمعنى (كثيراً)
الأكثر من بين مجموعة

- * The film we watched last night was most (very) interesting.
- * I love listening to classical music most (very much).
- * I like all my school subjects, but I like English most of all.

استخدام حروف الجر (in / of / on) مع صفات التفضيل:

نستخدم صيغ التفضيل نستخدم حرف الجر (of) عند ذكر العناصر وحرف الجر (in) عند ذكر المكان
لأنه يمكننا استخدام (on earth)

- * The giraffe is the tallest of all animals.
- * The giraffe is the tallest animal in the world.
- * Everest is the highest mountain on earth.

التعبير عن أول أو ثاني أو آخر أو أكبر أو أصغر الخ من قام بشيء ما:

أولاً كيفية التعبير عن أول (ثاني / أصغر / أكبر الخ) من قام بفعل شيء ما بالطريقة التالية:

تصريف ثان + who / which / that + اسم + first / / last / youngest + اسم + be + the + فاعل
مصدر + to + اسم + first / second / last / youngest + اسم + be + the + فاعل

- * Dr. Zewail was the first Egyptian who won (to win) the Nobel Prize for Chemistry.

8. الصفات الشاذة في المقارنة والتفضيل: صفات شاذة لا تتبع الطريقة المعتادة في تكوين صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل..

الصفة	معناها	صيغة المقارنة	صيغة التفضيل
good	جيد	better than	the best
well	معافى / سليم	better than	the best
bad	سيء	worse than	the worst
old	كبير (في الأسرة)	elder	the eldest
old	كبير (عموماً) / قديم	older than	the oldest
many	كثير للعدد	more than	the most
much	كثير للكمية	more than	the most
little	قليل للكمية	less than	the least
little	صغير الحجم	smaller than	the smallest
late	متأخر	later than	the last الأخير
late	حديث	latter than	the latest الأحدث
far	بعيد	farther than	the farthest
far	بعيد (مسافات فقط)	further than	the furthest

- * Mona is better at science than Salma is.

- * This man is the worst criminal of all the gang.

9. تستطيع الاستغناء عن (than) مع صفات المقارنة إذا لم تذكر طرف المقارنة الآخر بعدها، كما يلي:

- * Compared to the Amazon, the Nile is longer.

- * She is getting fatter.

10. لاحظ في ما يلي كيفية استخدام (ever) أو (never) للتعبير عن التفضيل لعنصر ما على غيره:

الشخص/الشيء + اسم + صفة + (an) + such + never + P.P + have + فاعل
الشخص/الشيء + اسم + صفة + (a) + never + P.P + have + فاعل
الشخص/الشيء + (than) + صفة مقارنة + اسم + never + P.P + have + فاعل
..... صفة تفضيل + is + the + الشخص/الشيء + have + ever + P.P + فاعل

- * I have never seen such a beautiful city, Paris.

I have never seen a beautiful city like Paris.

I have never seen a more beautiful city than Paris.

Paris is the most beautiful city I have ever seen.

11. استخدام صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل مع ظروف الطريقة (Adverbs of manner):

- كما نستخدم صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل مع الصفات يمكننا أيضاً استخدامها مع الظروف

- نستطيع مقارنة وتفضيل الظروف (ظروف الطريقة) بنفس الشكل الذي نقارن به الصفات أو نفضلها.

- * Mona runs as fast as Ali. / Mona runs faster than Ali. / Mona runs the fastest.
- * Ali sings as sweetly as Salwa. / Ali sings more sweetly than Salwa.
- Ali sings the most sweetly.

أفضل من	أفضل من	أفضل من
superior to	أفضل من	أفضل من
farthest from	أفضل من	أفضل من
nearest to	أفضل من	أفضل من

* I won't meet you well again. You are not superior to me.
 * Of all the cities, Benha is the nearest to Cairo.

التي هي أقرب المدن إلى القاهرة
 من بين جميع المدن، بنها هي الأقرب إلى القاهرة.

* The place is getting darker and darker. * We became less and less interested in the match.

المكان أصبح أكثر قتامة وأكثر قتامة
 أصبحنا أقل وأقل اهتمامًا بالمباراة.

- She is older than me.

- He is the oldest of the three brothers.

- My elder brother loves swimming.

- My eldest brother adores cycling.

* Ali is just as naughty as he was five years ago.

أليس مستطعمًا مثلما كان عندما كان في الخامسة من العمر.

* Ahmed is by far the most punctual of his classmates.

* She is easily the most efficient in the factory.



Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Girls often get grades than boys in STEM subjects.

a. good b. best c. better d. the best

2. They are confident about their abilities than us.

a. most b. as c. more d. very

3. Do you think that girls are than boys?

a. kinder b. kind c. as kind d. kindest

4. At primary school, Maher was sometimes naughty, but Marwan was boy in the class.

a. the most naughty b. more naughty than c. as naughty as d. the more naughty

5. Hazem is always a bit grumpy, but he is even when his favourite football team lose.

a. grumpier b. most grumpy c. grumpiest d. as grumpy

6. Lama is girl in the class. She never gets angry!

a. as good-natured as b. more good-natured than c. the most good-natured d. good-natured than

7. Dalia is much in her new job than in the last one. She didn't like it.

a. cheerful b. as cheerful c. more cheerful d. cheerfulness

8. Your daughter is getting

a. tallest b. the taller c. taller than d. taller

9. This is chilli in the world.

a. the spiciest b. spicier c. spicier than d. the spicier

10. The meal was too salty, it was meal I've had at that restaurant.

a. the worse b. worst c. the worst d. worse than

11. Meals with meat are usually meals in restaurants.

a. more expensive b. as expensive c. most expensive d. the most expensive

12. In my opinion, fish tastes oysters.

a. much best b. a lot better than c. many better d. a lot of good

13. Everest is not as high that.

a. than b. as c. fifth d. so

14. The tree in the world is nearly 70,000 years old.

a. eldest b. oldest c. elder d. older

15. This reporter brought news today.

a. the least b. the fewest c. less than d. fewer than

16. There were people at the party than I expected.

a. fewer b. few c. many d. much

17. She ran than other runners so she won the race.

a. quicker b. as quickly c. as quick d. more quickly

18. When I arrived, he was angry but his mother was

a. angrier b. more angrily c. angry as d. angrily

19. Football is more popular than motor racing.

a. a lot of b. much c. very d. slight

20. Who is Mona or Soha?

a. younger than b. the youngest c. as young d. younger

21. I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is cook I've ever known.

a. cleverer b. clever c. less clever d. the cleverest

22. Cars are twice as as they were a few years ago.

a. more expensive b. most expensive c. expensive d. less expensive

23. Going by plane is more expensive than going by bus.

a. a lot b. a lot of c. lots of d. many much

24. The more effort you make, the marks you will get.

a. highest b. higher c. least d. less

25. Ali and Ahmed are smart, but Maged is

a. the smarter b. the smartest c. smartest d. smarter than

26. Everest is the world's mountain.

a. high b. higher c. highest d. the highest

Unit 2: Her story

27. Of the two sisters, Nada is the
a. tallest b. taller c. tall d. tall as
28. In my opinion, the maths exam is easier than this exam.
a. more b. most c. less d. much
29. Nahed is tall, but her brother is taller.
a. more b. much c. very d. a lot of
30. Aya and Yomna are the same
a. old b. young c. age d. tall
31. My bag is than yours.
a. heavy b. less heavy c. more heavier d. less heavier
32. This island is beautiful than that one.
a. fewer more b. many more c. fewer d. much more
33. The car was more expensive than I expected.
a. many b. most c. the d. much
34. Laptops are becoming more and popular today.
a. more b. many c. most d. much
35. Mansoura isn't so big as Cairo. The latter is
a. much bigger b. biggest c. as big d. bigger than
36. My brother can swim better than
a. I b. can I c. me can d. I can
37. Yesterday has been by far this week.
a. warmer b. warmer than c. the warmest d. warm as
38. Studious pupils feel much during exams than negligent ones.
a. more confidently b. confidence c. confident d. more confident
39. I need to try this game time. It's very exciting.
a. a more b. one more c. many more d. a few more
40. My brother is younger than
a. I am b. mine c. my d. I
41. She plays chess than her friends.
a. more better b. much best c. a lot better d. many more better
42. Salwa is seven years than her brother.
a. older b. elder c. old d. as old
43. A train isn't as fast as a plane. A plane is
a. a lot of faster b. a lot faster than c. faster than d. much faster
44. The first question is difficult than the second one.
a. much b. many more c. much more d. many
45. Samy and Khalid are of the same
a. young b. old c. oldest d. age

My new Friend

46. Who is the intelligent, Mona or Salwa?
a. much b. more c. most d. many
47. The you eat, the fatter you become.
a. most b. much c. many d. more
48. Salma is at reading than Dalia.
a. best b. better c. a lot of better d. better than
49. My car is modern than yours.
a. a little b. a bit c. a little more d. a little most
50. The species of lions living here is in the world.
a. rarer b. as rarer c. more rare d. the rarest
51. Which of the following sentences is correct?
a. Mona is taller than I. b. Mona is taller than am.
c. Mona is taller than I do. d. Mona is taller than me.
52. Which sentence is incorrect?
a. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
b. No other mountain is as high as Mount Everest in the world.
c. Mount Everest is higher than any other mountain in the world.
d. Of all mountains in the world, Mount Everest is the higher.

Part 2: Lessons (3-4)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
cross	غاضب	angry or annoyed.
cheerful	مبتهج	happy, or behaving in a way that shows you are happy.
impatient	غير صبور	annoyed because of delays, someone else's mistakes etc.
kind	عطوف	saying or doing things that show that you care about other people and want to help them or make them.
grumpy	عبوس / نكد	bad-tempered and easily annoyed.
cruel	وقح / قاسي	deliberately hurting people or animals.
naughty	مشاكس / مشاغب	a naughty child does not obey adults and behaves badly.
patient	صبور	able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept difficulties, people's annoying behaviour etc. without becoming angry.
significant	مهم	having an important effect or influence, especially on

My new Friend

My new Friend

what will happen in the future,
you can see an image of the person or thing on the
ice or water.

a disease which affects the brains of older people.

Listening

summary	ملخص	accident	حادثة	swing	أرجوحة
author	مؤلف	explain	يشرح	follow	يتبع
inspiration	إلهام	broken	مكسور	trouble	مشكلة
impression	تأثير / انطباع	characters	شخصيات	wiser	أكثر حكمة
adventures	مغامرات	die	يموت	disabled	معاق
kind	صنوف	busy	مشغول	impatient	غير صبور
three-quarters	ثلاثة أرباع	bar graph	شريط رسم بياني	aloud	يصوت عاليا
alternative to	بدل لـ	statistics	إحصاءات	workplace	محل العمل
percentage	نسبة مئوية	certain	محدد / متأكد	figures	أشكال / أرقام
majority	أغلبية	region	منطقة	in other words	بمعنى آخر
minority	أقلية	size	حجم	obvious	سابق
similar	مشابه	pattern	نموذج / نمط	note	يلاحظ
low	منخفض	tips	وصايا / نصائح	public speaking	كلام عام
equality	مساواة	throw / threw / thrown	يلقى	developing countries	دول نامية
pause	وقفة / يتوقف	hide / hid / hidden	يخفي	developed countries	دول متقدمة
Essay vocabulary					
less than a third	أقل من الثلث	key information	معلومات هامة	noticeable	ملحوظ
only a few	فقط القليل	raise	يُرفَّع	speculate about	يتكهن حول
compare	يقارن	results	نتائج	clear language	لغة واضحة
over	أكثر من	none of the	لا أحد من	eye contact	تواصل بالعين
highest	أعلى	nearly half the number of			تقريبا نصف عدد

Prepositions

inspiration to	الإلهام لـ	care about	يهتم بشأن	for a while	لبزربة من الزمن
on a swing	على الأرجوحة	argue with	يجادل مع	at the end of	في نهاية
related to	مرتبط بـ	at all	على الإطلاق	cross with	غاضب من شخص
aim to	يهدف إلى	agree with	يتفق مع شخص	based on	مقتد على
look after	يعتنى بـ	fall from	يقع من	stay in bed	يملك في الفراش

Important Collocations & Expressions

follow the adventures of	تعرض / تقدم مغامرات	use a swing	بستخدم أرجوحة
have an accident	تحدث له حادثة	make the best of things	يصنع أفضل الأشياء
get into troubles	يدخل في مشاكل	lose the love of	يفقد حب
get (become)	يصبح	the 'head' of the family	مدير للأسرة
make a speech	يلقي خطبة	equal opportunities	فرص متكافئة
wait a long time	ينتظر وقت طويل	throw stones at	يلقي الأحجار على
a little bit naughty	شقي بعض الشيء	Egyptian Women's Day	عيد المرأة المصرية
in a more caring way to	بطريقة أكثر رعاية لـ	badly hurt her back	تؤذي ظهرها بشدة
like a mother to her brothers and sisters			مثل الأم لإخوتها وأخواتها
showed her how to behave			أظهرت لها كيف تتصرف
despite the fact that / even though	برغم حقيقة أن	complete a degree	يكمل للحصول على شهادة
are less likely to	محتمل بشكل أقل أن ..	conform to stereotypes	ينصاع للصور النمطية
go one step farther than this	بأخذ خطوة أبعد من تلك	the Nile Delta	دلتا النيل
a bright student	طالب بارع أو ممتاز	present ideas	يقدم الأفكار
bright future	مستقبل باهر	find ways to	يجد طرق لـ
raise a generation	يربي جيل	critical thinkers	مفكرون نقديون
find a cure for	يكشف علاج لـ	Alzheimer's disease	مرض الزهايمر
remember the events	يتذكر الأحداث	marched on the street	تظاهروا بمسيرات في الشارع
members of parliament	أعضاء البرلمان	increasingly important	أهم للغاية
an international science and engineering fair			معرض دولي للعلوم والهندسة
what makes her different is			ما يجعلها مختلفة هو

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
grumpy	مزاجي / كئيب	restless / nervous / cross / irritable	good natured / patient / tolerant
cross	غاضب	grumpy / irritable / testy	good natured / good tempered
cheerful	مبهج	hopeful / optimistic / rosy	sad / unhappy / dissatisfied
impatient	غير صبور	eager / crazy / enthusiastic	casual / uninterested / apathetic
kind	لطيف	thoughtful / compassionate	mean / heedless / thoughtless
cruel	قسوي	brutal / heartless / grim / harsh	humane / kind / good hearted

My new Friend

naughty	مشاكس	mischievous / bad / ill-natured	behaved / nice / respectable
significant	مهم	meaningful / important	minor / trivial / unimportant
abilities	قدرات	capabilities / capacities	incompetence
inspiration	الهام	motivation / encouragement	subduing
alternative	بديل	optional / unwanted	compulsory / obligatory
majority	أغلبية	bulk / abundance / maximum	minority
hide	خفى	bury / conceal	reveal / show
disabled	معاق	paralyzed / with special-needs	bouncing / healthy / well

Listening Texts

1. A podcast about the Maadi STEM school in Cairo

Why don't more girls study STEM subjects?

Despite the fact that in most countries there are more girls at university than boys, fewer girls than boys complete STEM university degrees. More girls are in school today than ever before, but they don't always have the same opportunities as boys to choose the education or subjects they want. Too many girls are held back by gender biases, stereotypes and social norms and expectations which influence the subjects they study. Research has shown that even though girls often get better grades than boys in STEM subjects in lower school, they choose not to carry on studying them later on because they worry they won't be able to follow classes and they will get poor grades. Well, one answer to this is old girls' schools where it seems that girls are less likely to conform to stereotypes and tend to be more confident about their abilities.

One school in Cairo has gone one step farther than this. The Maadi STEM school for girls is a school which specializes in STEM. One of its students is Hoda Mandour, a seventeen-year old girl from the Nile Delta. Like most teenagers, she loves playing sport and listening to music, but what makes her different is the scientific research she is doing at school. Last May, she and two other students took first place in an international science and engineering fair, where 1600 of the best and brightest students in the world had presented their ideas. Together these girls have found a way to purify drinking water using 24% less energy than typically used. Hoda says what they study there is far more interesting than in the old school. She says, "We do real research. Here everyone is a teacher and everyone is a student."

The aim of the school is to raise a generation of critical thinkers and leaders. Certainly the girls at Maadi seem inspired and motivated to become the next leaders. Hoda's ambition after she graduates is to find a cure for Alzheimer's disease, a disease which affects the brains of older people.

2. A speech about Women's Day

Today, I'm going to talk about Women's Day in Egypt. Egypt's Women's Day is on the sixteenth of March, but in 2019 there was a special sixteen days for Egyptian women from the first to the sixteenth of March. The organizers had chosen these days to remember the events in 1919 when women marched on the street to complain about colonial rule. This event was to remember women's contribution to the Egyptian society.

In my opinion, women are increasingly important in Egyptian society. For example, there are now around ninety women who are members of parliament, more than ever before. In 2021 many women have become judges for the first time. The future is bright for Egyptian women.

Reading Texts

1. Book of the week

What Katy Did, written by the American Susan Coolidge is still a big inspiration to many of today's female authors. The story follows the adventures of 12-year-old Katy and her younger brothers and sisters. Katy had no mother and her father was a busy doctor, so the children were looked after by their kind aunt. Katy wanted to be like a mother to her brothers and sisters, but was often impatient, naughty and liked to have dangerous adventures. One day she decided to use a new swing although her aunt told her not to use it because it was broken. Katy fell from the swing and badly hurt her back. She could not walk and had to stay in bed. This made her very unhappy and cross, until she was visited by her cousin Helen. Helen was disabled and taught Katy to be patient. She also showed her how to behave in a more caring way to her younger brothers and sisters. After her aunt became ill and died, Katy became the head of the family. At the end of the book, she had become a wiser, better person, and she learnt to walk again.

2. Female doctors by country

The bar graph shows the percentage of female doctors in certain given countries around the world. It can be seen that there is a very significant difference across countries, from a majority of women doctors in some countries to a small minority in others.

The country with the highest number of women doctors is Latvia, which has nearly three-quarters of female doctors, while the country with the smallest number is Japan, where less than a quarter of doctors are women.

Netherlands and Spain have very similar numbers of women doctors; around half the doctors in those countries are women. However, another European country Italy has around 10% fewer women doctors.

In conclusion, the most surprising thing about the figures is the big differences across different countries, which do not seem to be related to region, or size or economic development of the country. In other words, there does not seem to be any obvious pattern to the results.

It is especially interesting to note the very low number of women doctors in Japan. That may reflect the stereotype that Japanese women are usually expected to look after the home, rather than work in medical or other fields.

3. Women's Day

From the graph, it can be seen that there is a significant difference between people's opinions when asked the question in the graph. The highest number of people who agreed were in India, where the majority of people (80%) thought things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business. Perhaps the most surprising thing about the figures is that over 70% of people in the less developed countries, such as South Africa and Turkey, agreed with the question. However, in some of the more developed countries such as Sweden and the USA, fewer than 60% of the people agreed, while in South Korea, nearly half the number of people disagreed. It is especially interesting to note that in Japan, only 43% agreed. That may reflect the fact that Japan is a very traditional society. In conclusion, we can see that in most countries, people believe that things would be better if women had more important jobs in business or government.

Language Notes

1. who / which / that + فعل في المعلوم = **V.ing**

who / which / that + فعل في المجهول = **P.P.**

* People who live (living) on the shores of seas enjoy seeing the sea every day.

* His first story, which was published (published) in 1925, made him famous.

2. by = **was written by:**

- What Katy Did by Susan Coolidge is still a big inspiration to many female authors.

3. trouble (اسم لا بعد) = متاعب

- Are you having trouble with your car?

Unit 2: Her story

- Tell me about all your troubles.

4. while (برهة من الزمن / رابط بين جملتين متناقضتين) / a while (بينما / رابط زمني بين جملتين متطابقتين)
* While I was cooking, the phone rang. * My brother likes tea while I like coffee.

* I waited him for a while.

5. at the end of + اسم (في نهاية) / in the end (في النهاية) / at the ends of (عند الأطراف)
* Leaves grow at the ends of branches.
* The hero died in the end / at the end of the film.

6. the same as (متشابه تماماً / مشابه جزئياً) / similar to
* Your bedroom is the same as mine. Your bedroom and mine are the same.
* My camera is similar to my sister's. My camera and my sister's are similar.

7. a long + اسم (صفة بمعنى طويل) / along (ظرف بمعنى بالطول)
* It's a long way to drive to the museum from here.
* Wind turbines along the red sea generate huge amounts of energy.

8. arise / rise / raise / arouse:

arise	arose	لا مفعول + arisen	ينشا / يبرز / يظهر للوجود
rise	rose	لا مفعول + risen	ينهض / تشرق / يرتفع
raise	raised	مفعول + raised	يرفع / يجمع تبرعات (بخصص) / يربي
rouse / arouse	roused	مفعول + roused	يثير / يوقظ

* I worry when such problems arise. * The sun rises in the east.
* The kite rose in the sky when the wind blew. * He is raising some money for a charity.
* Please, raise your hand if you want to ask a question. * Their worry aroused my suspicion.

9. care for = take care of (يعتني بـ) / care for (يرغب بشئ) / care about (الاعتبار)
* Nurses care for (take care of) patients in hospitals.

* Do you care for a cup of tea?

* I don't care about people's telling rumours about me.

10. More Notes:

adventurer	(الشخص المغامر اسم)	adventurous	محب للمغامرة / مليء بالمغامرة
result	نتيجة (نظرية)	conclusion	خاتمة (استنتاج) لموضوع
result in	يُسبب في	result from	ينتج عن
as a result + جملة	لذلك	as a result of + V.ing/N	كنتيجة لـ / بسبب
be based on	معتد على	be based in	مقره في / مقيم في



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She was quite with him for being late.
a. pleased b. delighted c. cross d. notorious
- He felt bright and and full of energy.
a. cheerful b. cheerless c. pessimistic d. dull

My new Friend

- Sarah was becoming increasingly at their lack of interest.
a. impatient b. patient c. interested d. fond
- He was enough to take time out of his busy schedule to come here today.
a. grumpy b. kind c. cruel d. brutal
- He was and in a very bad mood.
a. grumpy b. tempted c. attempted d. pleasant
- I can't stand people who are to animals.
a. passionate b. thoughtful c. faithful d. cruel
- The mother insisted on punishing her little child for being
a. naughty b. well-behaved c. balanced d. good-natured
- You'll just have to be and wait till I'm finished.
a. ill b. sick c. wrecked d. patient
- An antonym for "alternative" is
a. unwanted b. obligatory c. well-educated d. well-behaved
- There are no differences between the two groups of students.
a. signed b. sign c. significant d. surround
- She looked into the water and saw her face there.
a. affected b. infected c. rejected d. reflected
- The new drug has great for the treatment of the disease.
a. important b. tremendous c. significance d. allowance
- My brother got the highest in the exams and was awarded a prize.
a. guide b. grade c. greed d. grid
- I followed two literature lovers into the Cairo Book last month.
a. Just b. Prejudice c. Fair d. Fare
- Everyone was frightened by the strange sequence of
a. events b. evens c. sevens d. happens
- Anthony is so; he finds it difficult to hate anyone.
a. good-natured b. cruel c. grumpy d. savage
- Being, he makes no trouble for his parents.
a. badly-behaved b. well-behaved c. cripple d. grumpy
- Please, don't get cross me; I won't make that mistake again.
a. on b. to c. with d. at
- The little girl was pleased when her dad pushed her on the
a. sing b. sting c. sink d. swing
- Dreams can be a rich source of for an artist.
a. inspiration b. collection c. assassination d. coloration
- No, I don't know his number—I have quite enough remembering my own.
a. tripe b. tribe c. troop d. trouble
- When you're a child, life is one big
a. adventure b. project c. detention d. attention

23. I spent a weekend alone at home. It was too
 a. pleasant b. pleasure c. miser d. disabled
 a. pleasant b. pleasure c. miser d. disabled

24. Someone who is can't use part of their body.
 a. pleased b. able c. ability d. giraffe
 a. pleased b. able c. ability d. giraffe

25. The bar to show how much the new input resembled each of the ten people.
 a. graph b. staff c. grief d. nation
 a. graph b. staff c. grief d. nation

26. Home visiting is an expensive but helpful for persistent truants.
 a. alternative b. alter c. native d. nation
 a. alternative b. alter c. native d. nation

27. show that women live longer than men.
 a. Status b. State c. Statistics d. Stadium
 a. Status b. State c. Statistics d. Stadium

28. A high of the female staff are part-time workers.
 a. relevant b. reference c. percentage d. presentation
 a. relevant b. reference c. percentage d. presentation

29. Official indicate that crime is falling.
 a. figures b. statues c. marriages d. morals
 a. figures b. statues c. marriages d. morals

30. This treatment is not available in the vast of hospitals.
 a. minor b. majority c. minority d. major
 a. minor b. majority c. minority d. major

31. So he is a fraud, a common thief
 a. in no words b. in words c. rewards d. in other words
 a. in no words b. in words c. rewards d. in other words

32. Religious fundamentalism is spreading in the where we live.
 a. regain b. region c. reunion d. resign
 a. regain b. region c. reunion d. resign

33. Only a of British households do not have a car.
 a. major b. minor c. majority d. minority
 a. major b. minor c. majority d. minority

34. There are some practical applications of the research. No one can miss them.
 a. ambiguous b. obvious c. unclear d. hidden
 a. ambiguous b. obvious c. unclear d. hidden

35. The music he composes contains repeated rhythmic
 a. patrons b. patterns c. parties d. splits
 a. patrons b. patterns c. parties d. splits

36. It should be that dissertations submitted late will not be accepted.
 a. noted b. nation c. tuned d. nature
 a. noted b. nation c. tuned d. nature

37. Here are my top for interview success. You have to follow them.
 a. taps b. trips c. tips d. advice
 a. taps b. trips c. tips d. advice

38. The woman spoke almost without for breath.
 a. pleasing b. piecing c. pausing d. posting
 a. pleasing b. piecing c. pausing d. posting

39. The new filing system is a improvement on the old one.
 a. noticeable b. notice c. note d. tune
 a. noticeable b. notice c. note d. tune

40. We all about the reasons for her resignation. No one knew it.
 a. speculated b. respected c. suspended d. deleted
 a. speculated b. respected c. suspended d. deleted

41. The internet allows you to prices from a variety of companies.
 a. compete b. compare c. complete d. repeat
 a. compete b. compare c. complete d. repeat

42. People who are lying tend to avoid eye
 a. contract b. contract c. complete d. repeat
 a. contract b. contract c. complete d. repeat

43. Sales have doubled this year.
 a. nearly b. near c. near to d. nearly
 a. nearly b. near c. near to d. nearly

44. Will you keep an eye on my daughter for a?
 a. when b. during c. while d. however
 a. when b. during c. while d. however

45. The legal system is based compulsion.
 a. in b. at c. on d. from
 a. in b. at c. on d. from

46. There are a number of press agencies based London and in the provinces.
 a. on b. from c. at d. in
 a. on b. from c. at d. in

47. Much of the violence is to drugs and gang warfare.
 a. created b. related c. treated d. cured
 a. created b. related c. treated d. cured

48. Our leader instructed us to the path through the woods.
 a. flow b. follow c. hunt d. catch
 a. flow b. follow c. hunt d. catch

49. Our company promotes equal for women.
 a. parties b. opportunities c. ports d. changes
 a. parties b. opportunities c. ports d. changes

50. The headmaster's aroused the enthusiasm of the students.
 a. speak b. speech c. pitch d. beach
 a. speak b. speech c. pitch d. beach

51. The play is based upon a novel Graham Greene.
 a. from b. by c. to d. in
 a. from b. by c. to d. in

52. My opinion is on the whole as yours.
 a. same b. similar c. similar to d. the same
 a. same b. similar c. similar to d. the same

53. We felt exhilarated by our walk the beach.
 a. length b. a long c. along d. long
 a. length b. a long c. along d. long

54. I really care the students in my class.
 a. after b. of c. about d. to
 a. after b. of c. about d. to

55. His difficulty in walking results a childhood illness.
 a. in b. to c. from d. on
 a. in b. to c. from d. on

56. "She's very grumpy when her tooth aches." A synonym for "grumpy" is
 a. irritable b. glad c. delighted d. relaxed
 a. irritable b. glad c. delighted d. relaxed

57. A synonym for "cheerful" is
 a. pessimistic b. rosy c. hopeless d. negative
 a. pessimistic b. rosy c. hopeless d. negative

58. An antonym for "uninterested" is
 a. fabulous b. enthusiastic c. hateful d. dreadful
 a. fabulous b. enthusiastic c. hateful d. dreadful

59. An antonym for "cruel" is
 a. limited b. tolerant c. naughty d. haughty
 a. limited b. tolerant c. naughty d. haughty

60. An antonym for "....." is "trivial".
 a. significant b. minor c. unimportant d. low
 a. significant b. minor c. unimportant d. low

61. An antonym for "....." is "respectable".
 a. nature b. good-natured c. good-tempered d. naughty
 a. nature b. good-natured c. good-tempered d. naughty

62. Another word for "abilities" is "....."
 a. capacities b. handicaps c. hindrances d. obstacles
 a. capacities b. handicaps c. hindrances d. obstacles

63. Another word for "inspiration" is
 a. discouragement b. relaxation c. motivation d. donation
 a. discouragement b. relaxation c. motivation d. donation

C. Usage الحالات التي يُستخدم فيها زمن الماضي التام

1. للتعبير عن حدث قد اكتمل قبل وقت معين في الماضي

- * By the time it struck three p.m. yesterday, I had prepared lunch.
- * By ten o'clock last night, I had gone to bed.

2. للتعبير عن حدث قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر في الماضي:

- * Ahmed had washed the car before father woke up.
- * Milton had been an accountant before he started his new job.

C. Tense Markers الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي التام

1. الكلمات التي يستخدم معها الماضي التام وحده:

- * by + مدة في الماضي (by eight o'clock yesterday / by ten last night)
- * by the time it was + كلمة ماضي بسيط / * by the time + جملة ماضي بسيط
- * the day (night/ week/ month/ year) before.
- * the previous day (night/ week/ month/ year)

- * By eight p.m. yesterday, I had sent out the invitations.
- * By the time he finished work, he had drunk three coffees.
- * First he had soaked the chicken in some vinegar, then she fried it.
- * She said she had been tired the night before.

2. أهم القوانين التي تربط زمن الماضي التام بزمن الماضي البسيط (كحدثين متتابعين):

1. القانون الخاص بالروابط (After / As soon as / The moment) والتي تعني (بعد):

زمن الماضي البسيط ، زمن الماضي التام + After/ As soon as/ The moment

- * As soon as I'd (had) finished one story, I started the next one.
- * After Sama had washed the clothes, she ironed them.

زمن الماضي التام + after/ as soon as/ the moment + زمن الماضي البسيط

- * I took a break after I had finished my work.
- * She sent the servant out as soon as he had dropped the silver plate.

2. التراكيب التالية تستخدم لتحل محل الماضي التام الذي يتبع (After):

After + V.ing / Noun, زمن الماضي البسيط

After having + P.P, زمن الماضي البسيط

Having + P.P, زمن الماضي البسيط

- * After swimming for a long time, he took a rest to be able to continue.
- * After the accident, he wasn't able to move.
- * Having done the shopping, my mum came back home.

Unit 2: Her story

القانون الخاص بالروابط (Before / By the time) التي تأتي (قبل):

زمن الماضي التام , زمن الماضي البسيط + Before / By the time

- * Before they declared the plan in public, they had consulted the legal committee.
- * By the time I reached the ferry, the boat had left.

زمن الماضي البسيط + before / by the time + زمن الماضي التام

- * I had read the question carefully before I answered it.
- * The plane had left by the time I reached the airport.

4. نستطيع استخدام (V.ing / اسم) بعد (Before) إذا لم تأتي بفعل بعدها:

زمن الماضي التام + Before + V.ing / Noun,

- * Before writing the composition, she made up some main ideas.
- * Before moving to New York, I had lived for ten years in Boston.

5. لاحظ كيف نستخدم (when / until) في القانون التالي:

(تعني: لم يك حتى) الماضي البسيط that الماضي التام + It was only when / It wasn't until

- * It wasn't until she had checked all the prices that she bought the dress.
- * It was only when I had found a clue that I phoned the colonel.

6. القانون الخاص بالروابط (till / until):

زمن الماضي التام + (حتى / إلى) till / until + زمن الماضي البسيط (غالباً متفي)

* تذكر: نفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام صيغة (didn't + مصدر).

- * I didn't give him a hand until I had made sure he was in a real fix.
- * I wasn't given my inheritance till I had signed some papers.

7. القانون الخاص بالتركيبات الثلاثة التالية والتي تعني (لم يك حتى):

hardly when / scarcely when / no sooner than

* تستخدم تلك الصيغ الثلاثة كما يلي: (مثلاً عندما نستخدم hardly when)

جملة ماضى بسيط + when + had + hardly + P.P + فاعل

جملة ماضى بسيط + when + P.P + فاعل + Hardly + had +

- * I had hardly heard their voices outside when I rushed out of the house.
- * Hardly had I heard their voices outside when I rushed out of the house.

8. القانون الخاص بالروابط (on / immediately on / immediately after) والتي تعني (بمجرد أن):

زمن الماضي البسيط , On / Immediately on / Immediately after + V.ing

- * On seeing the fire, she shouted for rescue.
- * Immediately on turning round, the thief stabbed him to death.

My new Friend

* تذكر أنك تستطيع استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط ليحل محل زمن الماضي التام. لكنك لا تستطيع أن تستخدم زمن الماضي التام ليحل محل زمن الماضي البسيط.

- * After they put (had put) on their costumes, they went on the stage.
- * I met my old friends yesterday.

* الآن أجب على المثالين التاليين: (بإمكانك اختيار الماضي البسيط أن لم تجد الماضي التام بين الخيارات)

- Before I travelled to China, I Chinese.
 - a. learnt
 - b. have learnt
 - c. learn
 - d. learning
- I to live in Cairo in 2000.
 - a. have come
 - b. coming
 - c. had come
 - d. came

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense زمن الماضي التام المستمر

1. صيغة الماضي التام المستمر في المبني للمعلوم:

Affirmative Statements	had + been + V.ing (Gerund)	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	hadn't + been + V.ing	الجملة المنفية
Questions	Had + فاعل + been + V.ing ?	السؤال

- * Sandy was tired. She had been working all day.
- * I had been waiting for a long time before they appeared in the distance.
- * Had you been working all day before you met me yesterday?

2. صيغة الماضي التام المستمر في المبني للمجهول:

- زمن الماضي التام المستمر لا يستخدم بشكل شائع في المبني للمجهول ولذلك يأخذ صيغة المجهول الخاصة بالماضي التام والتي تكون كالتالي:

Affirmative Statements	had + been + P.P (Past Participle)	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	hadn't + been + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	Had + الفاعل + been + P.P ?	السؤال

- * The play had been rehearsed for a week before it was performed on the stage.
- * How long had your car been repaired before you collected it from the garage?

3. متى نستخدم الماضي التام المستمر:

1. للتعبير عن حدث اكتمل وقد كان مستمرا لفترة من الوقت قبل وقت معين في الماضي أو قبل حدث آخر في الماضي:
 - * They had been queuing for four hours before they could get the bread.
 - * He had been riding his bike for half an hour when he fell off it and was injured.
2. لوصف أحداث بدأت في الماضي وكانت لا تزال مستمرة ومن المحتمل أن تبقي مستمرة قبل حدوث حدث آخر.
 - * She had been working for that company for long before they dismissed her.
 - * I had been writing the letter for two hours when father came into the room.
3. للتعبير عن تكرار حدث في الماضي.
 - * I had been trying to contact them for a long time before they answered the phone.

99 مای نیو فریند - الصف الثالث الثانوى (كتاب الشرح)

Unit 2: Her story

في الحالة الشرطية الثالثة، يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر في جملة (II) ليعبر عن شيء لم يحدث في الماضي.

* If I had been working in this firm last year, I would have been suffering a lot.

* If she had been living with us last year, she would have been suffering a lot.

* Mona said to me, "How long have you been studying?"

Mona asked me how long I had been studying.

* Ola said, "We have been tidying the house for a long time now"

Ola said they had been tidying the house for a long time then.

6. بعد (as if / as though / if only / I wish):

(إذا تخيلنا أن الحدث الماضي الوهمي الذي يأتي بعدهم كان مستمرا لفترة ثم انتهى):

* I shook hands with them as if I had been dealing with them for many years.

* Ashley shivered her body as if she had been standing in the cold for long.

* I had been logging on the site for weeks before I was chosen an administer.

* She had been looking for her lost child for a year when she finally found him.

7. انه يبرز المدة التي كان الحدث فيها مستمرا قبل حدوث حدث آخر في الماضي:

* I had been logging on the site for weeks before I was chosen an administer.

* She had been looking for her lost child for a year when she finally found him.

* The streets were wet this morning because it had been raining during the night.

* Her eyes were weeping as she had been peeling onions.

4. الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي التام المستمر:

1.

الكلمة Keyword	المعنى Meaning	الموقع Position
since	منذ	في نهاية الجملة
for	لمدة	في نهاية الجملة

* They were exhausted as they had been running since three that morning.

* I had been sleeping for ten hours when she woke me up.

2.

الكلمة Keyword	المعنى Meaning	الموقع Position
all morning + ماضي	طوال فترة الصباح	في نهاية الجملة
all afternoon + ماضي	طوال فترة بعد الظهر	في نهاية الجملة
all evening + ماضي	طوال فترة المساء	في نهاية الجملة
all day + ماضي	طوال النهار	في نهاية الجملة
all night + ماضي	طوال الليل	في نهاية الجملة
all week + ماضي	طوال الأسبوع	في نهاية الجملة

* I had been watching TV all morning so my eyes got tired.

* We had been staying up all night so we were tired in the morning.

My new Friend

Keyword الكلمة

Position الموقع

since / for + then / all / still / hadn't finished yet .

* Ola had been talking on the phone for a long time then .

* Sam had been painting for two hours and hadn't finished yet when she called.

هام جداً: الفرق بين (الماضي التام البسيط) و (الماضي التام المستمر)

يمكننا القول بأن الماضي التام البسيط والماضي التام المستمر يمكن استخدامهما بالتبادل إلا أن الفروق التالية تجعل لكل منهما مزايا ترجحه على الآخر في حالات معينة.

1. يمكن التمييز بين الزمنين وفقاً للمعنى المقصود، (هل الحدث كان قد انتهى أم كان مستمراً؟)

2. يمكن التمييز بين الزمنين وفقاً للمعنى المقصود، (هل الحدث كان قد انتهى أم كان مستمراً؟)

الماضي التام البسيط (had + P.P) يعني : (كان قد حدث) أي (كان قد انتهى)
الماضي التام المستمر (had + been + V.ing) يعني : (كان يحدث) أي (كان مستمراً في الحدث)

* He had done his homework since two in the afternoon. He was sleeping when I came.

* Ola had been doing the housework when I came home. She was very busy then.

2. زمن الماضي التام المستمر لا يستخدم بشكل شائع في المبني للمجهول وذلك بأخذ صيغة المجهول الخاصة بالماضي التام.

* He complained that he had been kept in the office for a long time.

* The wall had been painted for two days before it finally shone brightly.

3. هناك كلمات لا يمكن استخدامها مع الماضي التام المستمر لأنها لا تشير إلى أن الحدث كان مستمرا لوقت معين:

ever / never / yet / just / already

* I had already heard about the problem before he told me.

* She had never seen her parents until yesterday.

4. الأفعال التي تستغرق وقت طويل تأتي في صيغة الماضي التام المستمر: وهي

sleep / wait / work / stay / rain / study / stand etc.

* She had been learning Turkish for a fortnight when she left for Ankara.

5. الأفعال التي لا تشير إلى استمرارية الفعل لا يمكن استخدامها في زمن الماضي التام المستمر:

* I had switched the TV off since the film ended. It was off when he came.

* I had finished reading when my father entered my bedroom.

6. عندما تأتي الكلمات التالية في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (since / for) يفضل استخدام الماضي التام المستمر.

still / all / then / hadn't finished yet.

* The child had been crying for a long time and still was when mother came home.

* Mum had been shopping all morning yesterday.

7. لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر غالباً مع الروابط الزمنية التالية لأن معناها لا يوحي بأن الحدث الذي يأتي بعدها كان مستمرا لفترة ما في الماضي:

(تعني: لم يك حتى) الماضي البسيط (that الماضي التام + It was only when / It wasn't until

زمن الماضي التام + (حتى / إلا) / until / till / زمن الماضي البسيط (غالبا منفيا)

جملة ماضى بسيط + when + had + hardly + P.P فاعل

جملة ماضى بسيط + when + P.P فاعل + had + hardly

Unit 2: Her story

Unit 2: Her story

* I wasn't until she had checked all the prices that she bought the dress .
* It wasn't given my inheritance till I had signed some papers.
* I wasn't given my inheritance till I had signed some papers.
* He didn't take his driving test until he had been training for a year.

* How many books had you read before you entered the competition?
* How long had you been visiting them when they sent you away?
* How long had you been visiting them when they sent you away?
* I had read twenty pages in the new story when he interrupted me.

* Mona had sent out fifty invitations when her groom delayed the wedding.
* I had read twenty pages in the new story when he interrupted me.
* Mona had sent out fifty invitations when her groom delayed the wedding.

* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!
* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!

* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.
* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.

* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.
* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.

* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!
* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!

* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.
* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.

* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.
* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.

* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!
* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!

* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.
* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.

* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.
* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.

* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!
* I had been reading all last night.
* She had spent all her money before I asked her to lend me some!

* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.
* I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
* Paul had been looking for a job for over a year before he got a job.

* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.
* My father was tired because he had been working all day.
* Mona was sad because she had been watching a sad film.

My new friend

understand
guess
Correct
Incorrect
Before he met me, I had thought he was fat.
Before he met me, I had been thinking he was fat.

recognise (recognize)
consider = regard
forget
Before he met me, I had thought he was fat.
Before he met me, I had been thinking he was fat.

admit
deny
promise
surprise
Before he met me, I had thought he was fat.
Before he met me, I had been thinking he was fat.

He had denied it for years until we knew the truth.
He had been denying it for years until we knew the truth.

love = like
hate = dislike
want
need
desire
prefer
Before he met her, he had preferred French women.
Before he met her, he had been preferring French women.

possess = own = have = have got
belong to
own
include
involve
Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

My dad had had that house for ten years before he sold it.
My dad had been having that house for ten years before he sold it.

include
involve
intend
remain
Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Before I paid him, I had owed him the money for five months.
Before I paid him, I had been owing him the money for five months.

Note (1)

Sequence of past tenses

هذه جملتين مرتبطتين أو جملتين في الماضي.

إن يظهر رابط زمني واضح أو علامة زمنية واضحة بين الفعلين في الأزمنة الأربعة يجب أن يستخدم رابط المثال الآتي:

* Samia to drive before she applied to get a licence.

a. has learnt b. had learnt c. learned d. was learning

* يوجد (before) والماضي البسيط الذي يليها يؤكد التغييرات على الماضي التي تسبق (before) حسب ترتيبها الذي تعرفه.

* هنا يعني أن وجود العلامات الزمنية الواضحة يساهم في تحديد زمن الماضي الذي بالجمله.

* إذا لم يظهر رابط زمني محدد أو علامة زمنية بين الفعلين في الأزمنة الثلاثة أو في من غير ذلك فاستطاع التمييز بين الأزمنة الثلاثة وفي الأزمنة الأربعة.

الزمن	التكوين في المعلوم	التكوين في المجهول	المعنى (الوزن)
الماضي البسيط	التصرف الثاني للفعل	was/were + P.P	حدث و انتهى / حدث وقت (تلك)
الماضي المستمر	was/were + V.ing	was/were + being + P.P	حدث بعد (تلك)
الماضي التام	had + P.P	had + been + P.P	كان يحدث (و انقطع) / (كان يحدث و انقطع)
الماضي التام المستمر	had been V.ing	had + been + P.P	كان قد حدث (قبل تلك)
			كان مستمرا في الحدوث (قبل تلك)

* Mona saw the thief running down the street. She for help.

a. shouted b. was shouting c. had shouted d. had been shouting

* الجملة السابقة ليس بها أي رابط زمني أو علامة زمنية تحدد الزمن الذي يجب استخدامه.

* طبقا لأوزان ومطابق الأزمنة الثلاثة، نترجم معنى الاقتدارات كالآتي:

shouted	صرخت (وقتها لحظة)
was shouting	كانت تصرخ
had shouted	كانت قد صرخت (قبل تلك)
had been shouting	كانت مستمرة في الصراخ (قبل تلك)

* كانت مستمرة في الصراخ (قبل تلك)

* كانت قد صرخت (قبل تلك)

* صرخت (وقتها لحظة)

* كانت مستمرة في الصراخ (قبل تلك)

* كانت قد صرخت (قبل تلك)

* صرخت (وقتها لحظة)

* كانت مستمرة في الصراخ (قبل تلك)

* كانت قد صرخت (قبل تلك)

* صرخت (وقتها لحظة)

My new friend

* 4. الحالات المختلفة لـ (when):

* أنها أكثر من قانون عندما تربط جملتين حدثا في الماضي.

(حدثين كلتا مستمرتين في الماضي ولم يقطع أحدهما الآخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

(حدثين كل واحد منهما مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

Exercises on The Past Perfect Simple

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams Exercises

1. She arrived to the cinema late. The movie twenty minutes earlier. (2014 لور)

a. was beginning b. had begun c. has begun d. began

2. When he his homework, he went home. (2012 زاهر)

a. had done b. doing c. will do d. was doing

3. Once he did his homework, he to bed. (2015 زاهر)

a. went b. had gone c. goes d. is going

4. On the good news, Ahmed phoned his parents. (2016)

a. hearing b. hear c. heard d. had heard

5. After finished my work, I went home. (2016)

a. By 2012, I three novels. It was a great achievement for me. (السودان 2017)

a. had written b. will have written c. had been writing d. was writing

Unit 2: Her story

7. After he traveled abroad. **c. graduate** **d. graduating** (2017)
 8. Having the shopping, mother started to prepare lunch. **a. had graduated** **b. graduated** (2014)
 9. Although the police suspected him, he was able to prove that he when the crime **a. did** **b. she did** **c. she does** **d. done** (2019)
 10. Someone next door heavy metal music all night long. I didn't get a wink of sleep. **a. was working** **b. worked** **c. had worked** **d. had been working** (2019)
 11. Before you mentioned about him, I of that novelist. **a. was playing** **b. has played** **c. had been playing** **d. has been playing** (2019)
 12. Adam was angry because he to his friend's party. **a. hadn't ever heard** **b. wasn't hearing** **c. haven't ever heard** **d. don't ever hear** (2019)
 13. Having coldly, he got upset. **a. didn't invite** **b. hasn't invited** **c. wasn't invited** **d. hadn't invited** (2019)
 14. As soon as I'd finished my story, I the next one. **a. to being met** **b. being met** **c. met** **d. been met** (2020)
 15. I saw Ayten last week; I her since 2019. **a. started** **b. would start** **c. was starting** **d. will start** (2021)
 16. As soon as they arrived, we the refreshments. **a. haven't seen** **b. hadn't seen** **c. didn't see** **d. don't see** (2021)
 17. I was very angry because when I arrived at the station, the train **a. served** **b. had served** **c. have served** **d. will serve** (1987)
 18. As soon as she the book, she wanted to see the film. **a. had left** **b. has left** **c. is leaving** **d. leaves** (1986)
 19. After the doors and the windows, I went to bed. **a. finishes** **b. is finishing** **c. has finished** **d. had finished** (1978)
 20. I didn't go shopping until I the housework. **a. locked** **b. had locked** **c. locking** **d. lock** (1980)
 21. I didn't go shopping I had finished the housework. **a. finish** **b. finished** **c. had finished** **d. have finished** (1991)
 22. After he some good news, he left home. **a. as soon as** **b. after** **c. before** **d. until** (2006)
 23. Before that letter, he had had a paper and a pen. **a. had received** **b. has received** **c. is received** **d. receives** (1992)
 24. He got into the class he had seen the teacher coming. **a. wrote** **b. write** **c. had written** **d. writing** (2013)
 25. When Amr arrived, we dinner. He found nothing to eat. **a. when** **b. before** **c. till** **d. having** (2020)
 26. When Amr arrived, we dinner. He found nothing to eat. **a. have had** **b. had had** **c. had** **d. were having** (2020)

My new friend

26. No sooner the noise than we rushed to the spot. **a. had we heard** **b. we did hear** **c. we had heard** **d. did we heard** (2014)
 27. After the house painted, we furnished it. **a. had** **b. had been** **c. has been** **d. is** (2014)
 28. We arrived an hour late. The film an hour earlier. **a. was beginning** **b. had begun** **c. has begun** **d. begins** (2015)
 29. Sadat died in 1981, before that our army the Suez Canal in 1973. **a. crossed** **b. had crossed** **c. have crossed** **d. was crossing** (2016)
 30. Before to bed, the baby had drunk all his milk. **a. to go** **b. went** **c. going** **d. being gone** (2012)
 31. After her father had she lived with her grandfather. **a. dead** **b. died** **c. deadly** **d. death** (2012)
 32. By the time he was 12, my son all the Holy Quran by heart. **a. had kept** **b. kept** **c. was keeping** **d. had been kept** (2011)
 33. By the time we we had been flying for six hours. **a. arrival** **b. had arrived** **c. arrived** **d. arriving** (2011)
 34. Mona didn't send the message to her father until she it. **a. has been writing** **b. has written** **c. had written** **d. writing** (2016)

Longman Exercises

35. Egypt qualified for the world football cup finals in Russia in 2018. It since 1990. **a. hadn't qualified** **b. hasn't qualified** **c. didn't qualify** **d. won't qualify**
 36. I realized that I a silly mistake in the exam when I returned home and checked my answer. **a. have made** **b. had made** **c. am making** **d. made**
 37. I till my friend arrives to go to the club together. **a. left** **b. didn't leave** **c. won't leave** **d. am leaving**
 38. I didn't go to school until I breakfast. **a. have** **b. had** **c. have had** **d. had had**
 39. Having the visa, I booked a flight to Canada. **a. received** **b. had received** **c. to receive** **d. receiving**
 40. As soon as I saw the accident, I the ambulance. **a. phone** **b. will phone** **c. had phoned** **d. phoned**
 41. I returned the book to the library when I it. **a. will read** **b. had read** **c. was reading** **d. have read**
 42. By dinner time, mother prepared all the dishes we like. Food was really delicious. **a. has already** **b. had already** **c. hadn't already** **d. already has**
 43. When we got up that morning, there was sand all over the streets. There a sandstorm. **a. had been being** **b. has been** **c. has been being** **d. had been**

My new Friend Exercises

Unit 2: Her story

44. He this factory for forty years before he sold it. d. had been owned
a. had been owning b. was owning c. had owned for five years.
45. When Melville's novel *Moby Dick* came out in 1851, he d. has written
a. had been owning b. has been writing c. had written
46. We were late because the bus down. d. had been breaking
a. has broken b. had broken c. has been breaking there for six months.
47. When we visited my cousins in Canada, they d. had been living
a. had lived b. were living c. have lived in the farm all day.
48. My father was tired because he d. had worked
a. had been working b. is working c. has worked
49. We for three hours before our plane arrived. d. had been waiting
a. have been waiting b. have waited c. had waited
50. I was tired because I for an hour. d. have been running
a. had run b. have run c. had been running
51. By the time I went to bed, I thirty pages in the new novel. d. was reading
a. had read b. reading c. have read
52. Ola for the test all day yesterday so she was tired. d. had been revising
a. revised b. is revising c. had revised
53. had she saved the money when she went to buy the dress. d. No sooner
a. Hardly b. By the time c. Before
54. By the time I arrived at the stadium, the match d. had started
a. had been starting b. starting c. starts
55. It was only when she the house that she logged on the net. d. had been cleaning
a. has cleaned b. clean c. had cleaned
56. Mona for a job for a month before she found a good job. d. has been looking
a. had looked b. has looked c. had been looking
57. When we woke up, we saw that the streets were covered in water because it all night. d. has been raining
a. had been raining b. rains c. is raining
58. Before the light went out, I for half an hour. d. have been studying
a. had been studying b. have studied c. studied
59. When she came back home, she found out that her money d. had been stolen
a. has stolen b. had stolen c. had been stealing
60. By the time I came back home, mum had already lunch. d. had been studying
a. been preparing b. prepared c. preparing
61. After, I went out for a walk. d. prepare
a. studied b. had studied c. had been studying

My new friend

62. After he all day, he watched a movie on TV. d. had been working
a. had worked b. working c. has worked
63. Mona all day so she felt tired in the evening. d. had been working
a. had been working b. had worked c. has worked
64. She felt ill last night because she too much the night before. d. has been working
a. has eaten b. was eating c. had eaten
65. He had no sooner seen his father he went to his bedroom. d. cats
a. or b. that c. than
66. He didn't go to bed it had struck twelve. d. when
a. while b. when c. before
67. put the child to bed, I phoned the doctor. d. until
a. No sooner b. Having c. After
68. Before he travelled, he a visa. d. On
a. will get b. had got c. has been getting
69. Hardy from abroad when he was asked to travel again. d. gets
a. had been returning b. had he returned c. he had returned
70. Her eyes were tired because she TV all night. d. he returned
a. has been watching b. had watched c. had been watching
71. Before making a trip to Luxor last week, I my car mended. d. has watched
a. have had b. have c. had had
72. It wasn't until I the questions that I started to answer. d. was had
a. had been reading b. was reading c. reading
73. He the papers as soon as I had entered the room. d. had read
a. has hidden b. had hidden c. was hidden
74. I down for so long that my leg went dead. d. hid
a. had been sitting b. was sitting c. had sat
75. His father all his money by the time he was twenty. d. have sat
a. was spent b. had spent c. has spent
76. Sami his bike for half an hour when he fell off it and was injured. d. had been spending
a. had ridden b. was riding c. had been riding
77. The streets were wet this morning because it during the night. d. ridden
a. had rained b. has been raining c. has rained
78. He didn't take his driving test till he for a year. d. had been raining
a. had trained b. has trained c. was training
79. When I had found the report, I it to the secretary. d. had been training
a. had been handing b. had handed c. was handing
80. Sami couldn't phone me as he his phone at home. d. handed
a. was leaving b. had left c. had been leaving

- I missed it.
81. When I arrived at the airport, the plane d. had left
a. has left b. left c. will leave
82. She complained that she for an hour when I arrived. d. waited
a. had waited b. was waiting c. had been waiting
83. My mother in that bank for twenty years when she retired. d. had been working
a. has been working b. worked c. had worked
84. Before poems, he had been a playwright. d. writing
a. had written b. was writing c. wrote
85. She felt ill last night because she too much the night before. d. cats
a. has eaten b. was eating c. had eaten
86. He had no sooner seen his father he went to his bedroom. d. when
a. or b. that c. than
87. put the child to bed. I phoned the doctor. d. On
a. No sooner b. Having c. After
88. What before you had breakfast this morning? d. had you done
a. did you do b. have you done c. you did

Advanced Exercises

89. The roof rainwater for months before they repaired it. d. had been leaking
a. had leaked b. was leaking c. leaked
90. I couldn't contact him as my mobile out of credit since morning. d. had been leaking
a. had had b. had been c. had been being
91. After the new regulations proved to be successful. d. had had being
a. had effected b. being effected c. effecting
92. When I arrived at the airport, the plane I missed it. d. had been effecting
a. has left b. left c. will leave
93. After the criminal admitted his crime. d. had left
a. had been arrested b. arresting c. had arrested
94. for two hours before they arrived. d. being arrested
a. Had we been waiting b. Have we been waiting
c. We have been waiting d. We had been waiting
95. I to make an appointment with the manager for two days before I finally succeeded.
a. have been trying b. have tried c. had been trying d. had tried
96. As soon as she cooking, she went to bed. d. had tried
a. had been finishing b. had finished c. has finished
97. She was over the moon when she found the book she d. had been finished
a. has lost b. has been losing c. had lost

98. By the time I went to sleep last night, I a hundred pages. d. had been reading
a. had read b. read c. have read
99. My aunt decided to change the date of the family party, even though she out 20 invitations. d. had been reading
a. have already sent b. had already sent
c. had already been sending d. have already been sending
100. We had been thinking about staying in Alexandria for our holiday, but finally decided to go to the Red Sea, although we there twice already. d. had been going
a. had gone b. go c. going
101. Which of the following sentences is correct?
a. Before she found a job, she had been looking for a suitable one for ten months.
b. Before she found a job, she has been looking for a suitable one for ten months.
c. Before she found a job, she had been looked for a suitable one for ten months.
d. Before she found a job, she has been looked for a suitable one for ten months.

Writing Skills (Lesson 4)

Writing a report كتابة التقرير

Percentages and Phrases: النسب المئوية بالنسبة والعبرة

0%	none of the
5%	only a few
31%	less than a third
48%	nearly half the number of
79%	over three quarters of
96%	the majority of
20%	less than a quarter
51%	around half

Aids of writing a report أدوات مساعدة لكتابة التقرير

The expression التعبير	The function وظيفته
The bar graph shows	to describe what the report is about.
while / however	to compare two different things.
in conclusion	to introduce the final paragraph.
significant	an alternative to "important" or "large".
the most surprising thing about the figures is	to say what you find noticeable or surprising

It is especially interesting	to say what you find noticeable or surprising
That may reflect	to speculate about the reasons behind the results.
It can be seen that / the highest number of	to summarize the results.

Tips for successful public speaking:

- * Use clear language.
- * Use short statements.
- * Pause after key statements.
- * Make eye contact.

What is a graph? ما هو المخطط البياني

A graph is pictorial representation or a diagram that represents data or values in an organized manner.

المخطط البياني عبارة عن عرض تصويري أو رسم بياني يمثل البيانات والقيم بطريقة منظمة.

The points on the graph often represent the relationship between two or more things.

النقاط المتواجدة في المخطط البياني تمثل عادة العلاقة بين شئين أو أكثر.

Note: لاحظ

Reports are often used to communicate the results or findings of a project

- Use shorter paragraphs and formal language.

- Avoid using apostrophes, contractions and opinions.

بما ما تستخدم التقارير لربط النتائج أو نتائج المشروع، استخدم فقرات قصيرة ولفظ رسمية. تجنب استخدام الفواصل العليا الاختصارات والأراء.

**Exercises on Writing Skills**

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We use to explain reports in percentages.
a. graphics b. paragraphs c. graphs d. grooves
- Graphs show
a. presents b. presentations c. percentages d. proposals
- A graph is
a. a pictorial presentation of data b. an essay to persuade someone of something
c. a text in a local newspaper d. an extract from a novel
- "0%" means
a. none of something b. the majority of something
c. a quarter of something d. two thirds of something
- The points on the graph
a. are used to conclude an essay b. do not show percentages
c. show relationships between things d. are written in a strange language

- "51%" represents
a. exactly half the number b. all the number
c. around half the number d. much more than half the number
- The expression "....." is used to describe what the report is about.
a. It can be seen that b. The bar graph shows
c. It is especially interesting d. Furthermore
- "5%" represents
a. the majority of something b. nearly half of something
c. none of something d. only a few of a number
- "It can be seen that" is used to
a. end the report b. draw the graph
c. summarize the results d. say something is surprising
- "That may reflect" is used to
a. to speculate about the reasons behind the results.
b. introduce the final paragraph
c. compare two things
d. describe what the report is about
- "31%" refers to
a. two thirds of a number b. less than a third of a number
c. the whole number d. nothing or no number
- The word "....." means "important or large".
a. trivial b. whilst c. significant d. detergent
- The word "while" is used to
a. compare two things b. introduce the essay
c. summarize the results d. say that something is noticeable
- "48%" represents
a. all the number b. nearly third of the number
c. nearly half of the number d. the majority of the number
- To say what you find noticeable or surprising, we use "....."
a. To conclude b. In other words
c. It is especially interesting d. That may reflect
- "20%" refers to
a. a third of a number b. the majority of something
c. a quarter of something d. less than a quarter of something
- We use "in conclusion" to
a. introduce the final paragraph
b. speculate about the reasons behind something
c. say something is noticeable
d. start the report

Unit 2: Her story

18. "79%" refers to
 a. two thirds of a number
 c. over three quarters of a number
19. "The bar graph shows" is used to
 a. compare two or more things
 c. summarize the results
20. "96%" represents
 a. the majority of a number
 c. the whole number
- b. less than a third of a number
 d. the minority of a number
- b. describe what the report is about
 d. introduce the final paragraph
- b. half of a number
 d. the minority of a number

Test on Unit (2)

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The charity works with children in less countries.
 a. developed b. developing c. develop d. development
- None of the leaders seems very They can't urge the workers to make effort.
 a. conspiring b. respiring c. inspiring d. requiring
- The patient was perceived to have in breathing.
 a. hard b. difficulty c. difficult d. difficulty
- The prisoner was brought to for trial.
 a. chart b. court c. cart d. card
- The FIFA world cup is every four years.
 a. held b. taken place c. happened d. occurred
- My English at university inspired me to become an English teacher.
 a. lecturer b. manager c. trainee d. collector
- It was a novelty. No one ever done something like that.
 a. was b. did c. has d. had
- If he offered the job, he would have taken it.
 a. was b. has been c. had been d. had
- When Ali went to university, he English for ten years.
 a. was studying b. had studied c. has studied d. had been studying
- Although Ali for six months, he didn't win an Olympic medal.
 a. had trained b. training c. is training d. had been training
- My friend and I for more than an hour before I put the phone down.
 a. have been talking b. had talked c. had been talking d. have talked
- Ali wasn't feeling well yesterday. He hard all weekend.
 a. had studied b. studying c. study d. had been studying

My new Friend

- By the time Maya finished reading the report, she two bottles of water.
 a. had been drinking b. drunk c. had been drunk d. had drunk
- There was water on all the fields because it for three days.
 a. was raining b. has rained c. had been raining d. had rained
- Amir school when he was 15, so he was not able to go to university.
 a. had left b. has left c. leaving d. had been leaving
- When the bus arrived at six o'clock, I for an hour!
 a. have been waiting b. have waited c. had waited d. had been waiting

B. Reading Comprehension

2. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

For the last two years I have been living in Bangladesh, with my parents and my baby sister. We moved here from England and at first I didn't like it because I missed all my school friends. Most students arrive at school in the morning, books in hand, and return home in the afternoon, with a lot of homework. This is the idea we have when we think of schools. However, some schools, like the boat schools in Bangladesh, are a little different from what I was used to.

Twice a year, there are heavy rainstorms in Bangladesh which cover the area with lots of water. This leaves millions of people without clean water, electricity and other important things. It becomes difficult for children to go to schools and for those schools to keep their doors open. To solve these problems, some people thought of a brilliant idea to help the children. They built houses, health centres and schools that move around on top of the water.

Now there are almost 100 boat schools. Each of these schools gets electricity from the sun and has one laptop computer with internet and even a small library. These boat schools are a school and a school bus, all in one. Whenever there's too much water and every other service is closed, these types of schools are still open. They pick up their students from the side of the rivers, and then stop somewhere so that classes can begin. After the lessons are finished, the boat schools return the students to their homes and another group of students is picked up. About 70,000 children have used the boat schools since they started, fifteen years ago.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What does the writer say happens every six months in Bangladesh?
 a. The country doesn't have enough water.
 b. Lots of water brings problems to the country.
 c. Schools close for cleaning.
 d. Students don't want to go to schools.
- What problem do many children have at different times of the year?
 a. They have too much homework when it rains.
 b. Their parents have to buy a boat for them.
 c. They cannot use things that need electricity.
 d. They don't have their laptops.

3. Where can people see a doctor when there is too much water?
 a. at the health center, on the river
 b. inside the library
 c. in the school that is now closed
 d. in the school that is now opened
4. Where does the writer say children can see information online?
 a. at the health centres
 b. on the side of the river
 c. at school when it is open
 d. on the boat schools
5. What is the best title for the article?
 a. The First Day at School
 b. An Unusual School
 c. The worst schools
 d. The Best School in Bangladesh
6. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 a. problems
 b. people
 c. children
 d. doors
7. How many laptops are there on boat schools?
 a. 1
 b. 10
 c. 100
 d. 1000
8. - Where do boat schools get electricity? - Through energy.
 a. lunar
 b. solar
 c. tide
 d. geothermal
9. How could people solve the problem of education during rainstorms?
 a. they built more houses
 b. they built more schools
 c. they built more health centres
 d. they built boat schools
10. We infer from the passage that the writer is
 a. a teacher
 b. a lecturer
 c. a student
 d. a governor

3. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

A Very Unusual Museum

Last week we went on a school trip. We visited a very unusual place. The tourist information centre and the guest house next door have created the Hair Museum. Calling it a museum may be a bit strange as it has thousands of pieces of hair, all from women who have visited the place. The story goes that the local guide was saying goodbye to a good friend of his, when he asked for something to remember her by. She cut off a piece of her hair and gave it to him. He put it up in his shop, and then he told the story to all the tourists who visited his shop. Then, other women who enjoyed the story left a piece of their hair, as well.

The museum started in 1979 when different pieces of hair were put on show. It now holds about 16,000 pieces of hair and is included in the Guinness Book of World Records. There's also another reason to leave some hair: twice a year there is a competition and the winning pieces of hair are chosen. The people who left the pieces of hair that won get a message inviting them back to stay for one night in the guest house next door, without having to pay, during the summer months.

While the tourist information centre and the guest house are busy all year round, the museum is also full of hair and they have now filled up an area of the information centre with more pieces of hair. Visitors can walk down the room in the museum with hair on every available part of the walls and ceilings. Pencils, paper and scissors are offered to those wanting to add their own piece to the museum. They write their name, age and address on the paper.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who does the writer say was the first person to leave a piece of hair?
 a. A visitor to the museum.
 b. A friend of the person from the tourist centre.
 c. A tourist staying at the guest house.
 d. A new tourist who came two years ago.
2. What happens every six months at the museum?
 a. The museum opens a new area.
 b. All the hair is shown to visitors.
 c. A party is held to celebrate new tourists.
 d. Someone can win a free night's stay at the guest house.
3. The writer says the guest house has many customers
 a. all year round.
 b. during the summer months.
 c. twice a year.
 d. every six months.
4. Why does the museum use part of the tourist information centre?
 a. They want to sell the hair to the tourists.
 b. They don't have any more room for the hair.
 c. There aren't any more rooms in the guest house.
 d. They filled the rooms in the guest house
5. Visitors who want to leave a piece of their hair at the museum
 a. can write their own name on the walls if they wish.
 b. must ask for the guest house's name and address.
 c. should give the museum some information about themselves.
 d. must stop visiting the museum during the summer months.
6. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to
 a. the local guide
 b. the good friend
 c. a piece of hair
 d. the women
7. The underlined word "ceilings" is close in meaning to
 a. hoofs
 b. loaves
 c. reefs
 d. roofs
8. The museum first started nearly ago.
 a. half a century
 b. a century
 c. a century and a half
 d. two centuries
9. Why is the museum considered an unusual place?
 a. as it is a museum for men only
 b. as it is a museum for women only
 c. as it is a museum for statues only
 d. as it is a museum for hair only
10. What is the advantage of winning the competition?
 a. staying free of charge
 b. meeting other women
 c. buying all hair
 d. staying all summer months for free

Writing

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The body of the essay includes the of the essay. (التجريبى - 2021)
 a. middle paragraphs
 b. first paragraphs
 c. closing sentences
 d. topic sentences
2. One of the social instructions is (التجريبى - 2021)
 a. "Keep distance to avoid infection."
 b. "Write your work experience."
 c. "Write your personal and hard skills."
 d. "Leave your contact information."

3. James must have driven his car because it's too far to walk. What type of "must" is this?
- Logical conclusion
 - Strong recommendation
 - Necessity
 - Prohibition
4. Which sentence has the perfect punctuation?
- I visited the following cities; London, Paris, Madrid and Rome.
 - I visited the following cities, London, Paris, Madrid and Rome.
 - I visited the following cities: London : Paris : Madrid and Rome.
 - I visited the following cities: London, Paris , Madrid and Rome.

D: Translation**5. Choose the best Arabic Translation:**

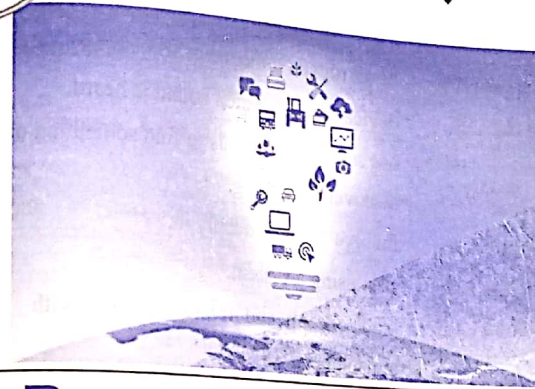
1. A civilized society should aim at eradicating and wiping out smoking.
- أ. ينبغي أن تهدف حضارة المجتمع إلى إزالة التدخين والقضاء عليه.
 ب. ينبغي أن يهدف المجتمع المتحضر إلى التدخين والقضاء على إزالته.
 ج. ينبغي أن يهدف المجتمع المتحضر إلى إزالة التدخين والقضاء عليه.
 د. ينبغي أن يتحضر المجتمع ويهدف إلى إزالة التدخين والقضاء عليه.
2. The sun is extremely strong and you shouldn't look at it directly.
- أ. قوة الشمس جيدة عليك ألا تنظر إليها مباشرة.
 ب. الشمس جيدة في القوة عليك ألا تنظر إليها مباشرة.
 ج. الشمس قوية جداً عليك ألا تنظر مباشر.
 د. الشمس قوية جداً عليك ألا تنظر إليها مباشرة.

6. Choose the best English Translation:

1. التمرينات الرياضية وسيلة جيدة للتخلص من الإجهاد والإحباط الناتج من العمل وهذا يعود بالنفع على المجتمع بأكمله.
- Sports and exercises is a good means to get rid of fatigue and frustration resulting from work and this benefits the whole society.
 - Sports and exercises are a good mean to get rid of fatigue and frustration resulting from work and this benefits the whole society.
 - Sports and exercises are a good means to get rid of fatigue and frustration resulting from work and this benefits the whole society.
 - Sports and exercises are a good means to get red of fatigue and frustration resulting from work and this benefits the whole society.
2. التعبير عن انتمائنا للوطن لا يكون بتريد الشعارات والهتافات إنما بالعمل الجاد والتضحية من أجل الوطن.
- Expressing our belongingness our homeland shouldn't be through slogans and cheering but through hard work and sacrifice for the sake of the motherland.
 - Expressing our belongingness to our homeland shouldn't be throw slogans and cheering but through hard work and sacrifice for the sake of the motherland.
 - Expressing our belongingness to our homeland shouldn't be through slogans and cheering but though hard work and sacrifice for the sake of the motherland.
 - Expressing our belongingness to our homeland shouldn't be through slogans and cheering but through hard work and sacrifice for the sake of the motherland.



Unit (3)



Beyond Imagination

أبعد من الخيال

Objectives

Reading	A scientific text.
Writing	Online comments about the impact of technology; An argumentative essay about green technology.
Listening	A discussion about innovations in medicine.
Speaking	Making predictions about the future of technology.
Language	Future perfect; present perfect for future use.
Life skills	Problem solving; Critical thinking.

Unit 3: Beyond Imagination

Part 1: Lessons (1-2)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
surround	يحيط / يطوق	be all round (someone or something).
speaker	مكبر صوت	device through which sound is heard.
experiment (v)	يجري تجربة	use scientific methods to find something out or discover something.
immerse	يغمر / يُدخل	involve yourself deeply in.
implement	ينفذ / يطبق	start using a system.
mass-produced	منتج بكميات كبيرة	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine.
process	عملية	method of producing something.
approach	طريقة / منهج	way of viewing or doing something.
spectacularly	بصورة مذهلة	extremely good, exciting or surprising.
inconvenient	غير ملائم / مزعج	causing difficulty or problems.
surround sound	الصوت المحيط	a system for playing sounds, especially in cinemas, that uses three or more loudspeakers so that the person listening seems to be surrounded by the sound.
astronaut	رائد فضاء	a person who has been trained for travelling in space.
astronomer	عالم فلك	someone who studies astronomy.
planet	كوكب	an extremely large, round mass of rock and metal, such as Earth, or of gas, such as Jupiter, that moves in a circular path around the sun or another star.
solar system	النظام الشمسي	the sun and the group of planets that move around it.
spacecraft	سفينة فضاء	a vehicle used for travel in space.
surface	سطح	the outer or top part or layer of something.
universe	الكون	everything that exists, especially all physical matter, including all the stars, planets, galaxies, etc. in space.

Reading and Critical Thinking

system	نظام	device	جهاز	visuals	مرئيات
involve	يشمل	sound	صوت شئ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
deeply	بعمق	cause	يسبب	scale	نطاق
scientific	علمي	difficulty	صعوبة	extremely	للغاية
evidence	دليل / شاهد	potentially	من المحتمل	true surround	محيط حقيقي
fantasound	موسيقى تصويرية	Fantasia	فانتازيا	whole	كل
totally	كلياً	audience	جمهور / مشاهدين	methods	طرق
illustrated book	كتاب مصور	create	يخلق / يبدع	printing process	عملية الطباعة
roll /	لفة / يتدرج	rather than	بدلاً من	sheet	ورقة / فرخ ورق
clear	واضح	innovate	يبتكر / يبدع	audio	صوتي
advertising	إعلان	innovation	إبداع	major	رئيسي
packaging	التعبئة والتغليف	sound quality	جودة الصوت	objects	أشياء
applications	تطبيقات	curious	فضولي	science fiction	خيال علمي
teens	مراهقون	burning questions	أسئلة ملحة	conversation	محادثة
distances	مسافات	earth	كوكب الأرض	constantly	باستمرار
human life	حياة بشرية	exist	يوجد / يتواجد	life forms	صور الحياة
invent	يخترع	temperature	درجة حرارة	minus	سالب
degree	درجة حرارة	average	متوسط	charge	يشحن
Celsius	درجة مئوية	advances	تطورات	freezing	متجمد
data	بيانات / معلومات	step	خطوة	conquer	يغزو / يتغلب على
cancel	يلغي	college	كلية	plastic toys	ألعاب بلاستيك
cycle lanes	ممرات للدراجات	screens	شاشات	square	مربع
seats	مقاعد	educational	تعليمي	nature	الطبيعة
Mount Everest	جبل إيفرست	snowy	مكسو بالثلج	flat	مستو
immersed in	منغمك في	immersive	غامرة / شامل	permanent	دائم

Grammar and Communication Skills

tense	زمن	normally	بشكل طبيعي	time phrases	عبارات زمنية
phrases	عبارات	clause	أشياء جمل	once	بمجرد أن

Unit 3: Beyond Imagination

within	خلال	back	خلف	one day	في أحد الأيام
in the next decade	في العقد القادم	in the last	في آخر ...	predictions	تنبؤات
infinitive	مصدر	future facts	حقائق مستقبلية	specific time	وقت معين
activity	نشاط	actions	أحداث	complete	مكتمل

Prepositions

involve ... in	يقدم .. في	surrounded by	محاط بـ	in the road	في الطريق
way / method of	طريقة لـ	on average	في المتوسط	close to	بالقرب من
use ... to / for	يستخدم ... في	shortly after	بعد فترة وجيزة	long before	قبل فترة طويلة
problem with	مشكلة في	on display	معروض	email at	براسل علي
thank for	يشكر على	search for	يبحث عن	universe beyond	ما وراء الكون
get us to	توصلنا الي	essential for	أساسي لـ	on Mars	على المريخ
as a result	ونتيجة لذلك	turn into	يتحول إلى	expand into	يتوسع في
immerse into	ينهمك في	in 3D	ثلاثي الأبعاد	cut into pieces	يقطع إلى أجزاء

Important Collocations & Expressions

make your life easier	تجعل حياتك أسهل	became practical	أصبح عمليا
use scientific methods	يستخدم طرق علمية	develop an approach	يطور نهج
cause difficulty / problem	يسبب صعوبة / مشكلة	created an illustrated book	أنشأ كتاباً مصوراً
on other planets	على الكواكب الأخرى	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
introduce technology	يقدم التكنولوجيا	developed a printing process	طور عملية الطباعة
take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس	make the T-ring	يصنع مكبر صوت ورقي
make films	يصنع أفلام	produce sound	يحدث صوت
have life	توجد بها حياة	advertise products	يعلن عن منتجات
support human life	تدعم حياة الإنسان	invent the technology	بخترع التكنولوجيا
study the conditions	يدرس الظروف	spend enough time on	يقضي وقت كافي في
collect useful data	يجمع معلومات مفيدة	pass the exam	يجتاز الامتحان
find some evidence	يجد بعض الشواهد	do some research	يقوم ببعض البحث
took a different approach	اتخذ نهجاً مختلفاً	look much more 'real'	يبدو أكثر واقعية
on a big scale	على نطاق واسع	paper-thin speakers	مكبرات صوت رقيقة
on a small scale	على نطاق ضيق	with the invention of	مع اختراع
onto / on the surface of	على السطح	with the introduction of	مع بداية

My new Friend

at a competitive price	بسر تنافسي	in large numbers	بأعداد كبيرة
on bottles and tins	على الزجاجات والعلب	at a time	كل مرة
in the shape of	على شكل	on large screens	على شاشات كبيرة
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	step into the universe	يخطو إلى الكون
go as far back as the 1930s			تعود إلى ثلاثينيات القرن الماضي
potentially mass-produced			يحتمل أن تكون منتجة بكميات كبيرة
playing music or adverts at you			تشغيل الموسيقى أو الإعلانات عليك
provide audio information about			تقديم معلومات صوتية عن
keep using the technology we have			يظل يستخدم التكنولوجيا التي نمتلكها
go down as low as 125 degrees below freezing			تنخفض حتى 125 درجة تحت التجمد
make the film experience even more real			تجعل تجربة الفيلم أكثر واقعية
a 360-degree paper speaker			مكبر صوت ورقي 360 درجة

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	synonyms	Antonyms
immerse	يمتغ / يغمس	absorb / captivate / dip / soak	bore / jade / tire
implement	ينفذ	apply / enforce / fulfill	disregard / ignore / neglect
process	عملية	procedure / course / operation	
spectacularly	بشكل رائع	gorgeously / fancily / brilliantly	boringly / dully / modestly
inconvenient	غير ملائم	awkward / annoying / disturbing	convenient / desirable / good
evidence	دليل	confirmation / proof	refutation / assumption
illustrated	مصور / موضح	demonstrated / analyzed	obscured / perplexed
invent	يخترع	fabricate / make up	imitate / clone / copy
permanent	دائم	eternal / ceaseless / immortal	temporary / mortal
constantly	باستمرار	continually / perpetually	occasionally
potentially	من المحتمل	possibly / probably / perhaps	improbably / incredibly
surround	يحيط	circle / enclose / compass / fence	
experiment	تجربة	trial / test / attempt / effort	
approach	نهج	avenue / passage / path / route	
universe	الكون	world / nature / creation / existence	
methods	طرق	strategies / approaches / systems / styles / forms	

Reading Texts

1. The future of sound

'Surround sound' is a system that uses 3 or more speakers to make you feel like you are 'surrounded' by sound. Surround sound experiments go as far back as the 1930s. In fact, the technology was first introduced in 1940 in the Walt Disney Film *Fantasia*, which used *Fantasound*. This was a system designed to totally immerse the audience in the film like the visuals did. Unfortunately, it was too expensive to implement *on a big scale*, as *Fantasound* needed 54 speakers. It wasn't until 1975, with the invention of *Dolby Stereo*, requiring just four basic speakers that 'surround sound' became practical. It was used spectacularly in the film *Star Wars*. True surround sound in the home, however, didn't arrive until 1982, with the introduction of *Dolby Surround* technology. But this still required four speakers, making it expensive and inconvenient.

Now, a whole new approach has been developed by scientists at the Chemnitz University of Technology in Germany, which uses paper instead of speakers. The team had experimented before: in 2015, they created an illustrated book which had speakers hidden inside the pages that made noises as readers turned them over. Now they have developed a printing process which can print whole rolls of the paper-thin speakers, rather than one sheet at a time. They have used this to make the T-ring, a 360-degree paper speaker, a sound experience more immersive than even a cinema, and can be potentially mass-produced *at a competitive price*. Professor Hubler, from the University predicts that one major use of this new idea will be for audio advertising and packaging. Imagine the packaging on bottles and tins playing music or adverts at you in your local supermarket!

2. Teen Astronomers

Teen Astronomers is a website for young people who are interested in finding out about the world they live in. If you have any burning questions, please email us at teenastronomers@theconversation.edu.au.

Why has nobody found any life outside of Earth? – Tariq, age 17, Zagazig, Egypt.

Thank you for your question Tariq. Astronomers like us are constantly searching for planets which may support human life, but they're not easy to find. To start with, it's likely that if such a planet exists, it will be outside our solar system. Until we have invented the technology to get us to these planets, we won't be able to study the conditions there.

But we'll keep using the technology we have to find out what we can, until we have found some evidence.

One of the most important things is to find a planet with water, because it is essential for all life forms. Scientists recently discovered that there is permanent liquid water on Mars, which made a lot of people excited. After all, it is the closest planet to Earth. However, on average, the temperature on Mars is about minus 60 degrees Celsius. In winter it can go down *as low as* 125 degrees below freezing. When we've found a way for astronauts to survive these extreme temperatures, they'll be able to spend enough time on the surface of Mars to collect useful data.

Mars is hopefully just one step into the universe. Once we've conquered Mars, it will be easier to expand into the universe beyond, with future advances in space technology.

3. Technology in the cinema

When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. Technology, however, is making the film experience even more real.

In the 1970s, a company called IMAX took a different approach. Their films were shown on very large, tall screens. Special speakers were put behind the screen, which helped to make the sound better and louder. In addition, the films were made using a special process which made the pictures look much more 'real'.

The problem with these types of films was the cost. They had to build special square cinemas, because people needed to watch the film in seats which all faced the screen. You also needed special cameras and couldn't make films of more than an hour long. So these films were nearly all educational, often about nature. One of the most popular was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were surrounded by snowy mountains.

Since 2000, however, similar technology has allowed traditional films to be made in the same way. These are mass-produced and shown in traditional cinemas. As a result, many modern films sound great. Many are in 3D, so that the pictures look real and not flat. Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to immerse you even more into the experience. Other cinemas have even experimented with allowing you to 'feel' the film using smell, rain and wind. However, the cost of this will probably mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

use + to + مصدر / مصدر + to + شيء + لعل

use + for + V.ing / اسم + use + for + لعل

* The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to write (for writing).

* be + used to + مصدر / be used for + V.ing / اسم (يستخدم لـ)

* The hammer is used to hit (for hitting) nails into wood.

* The Nile water is used for irrigation.

* used = second hand / درجة ثانية / صفة بمعنى مستعمل

* My brother bought a used laptop yesterday.

* use up = run out of / ينفذ ما لديه / يستهلك

* In the future, we will use up most of the world's oil.

use + to + صفة / مصدر

* Wave farms aren't expensive to produce.

* It's dangerous to have many things in the sea.

9. experience / تجربة / موقف (اسم يُعد) / an experience / خبرة (اسم لا يُعد) / experiment : تجربة

* He has good experience in modern technology.

* What happened yesterday was a good experience.

* Most scientists have to do experiments to test theories.

10. as well as / in addition to / besides + V.ing / اسم : بالإضافة إلى

* As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arabic culture.

11. other than = apart from / غير - عدا / rather than / بدلاً من

* Think of other solutions other than trickery / الخديعة.

* We have to recycle used paper rather than throw it away.

12. as a result + جملة (كنتيجة لذلك) / as a result of + اسم (V.ing) : كنتيجة لـ

* He was ill, as a result he didn't go to school.

* He didn't go to school as a result of being ill / his illness.

13. More Notes:

system	نظام عمل (منظومة)	discipline	النظام (الانضباط)
way (method) to	مصدر / اسم (طريقة) لـ	way (method) of + V.ing	اسم (طريقة) لـ
astronaut	رائد فضاء (يسافر للفضاء)	astronomer	عالم فلك (يدرس النجوم والكواكب)
astrologer	منجم	futurologist	عالم يتنبأ بالمستقبل
average / average of	متوسط (صفة) / متوسط كذا ...	on average	في المتوسط
turn (switch) on	يُشغل	turn (switch) off	يوقف / يطفئ
turn into	يحول ... إلى	turn to	يحول ... إلى
product	منتج (صناعي) (تعد)	produce	منتج (زراعي) (لا تعد)
visible	مرئي (ليس مخفياً)	visual	مرئي / بصري / يخاطب العين
advise	ينصح	advice	نصيحة

device	جهاز	devise	يبتكر
permanent	دائم	temporary	مؤقت
chair	كرسي يظهر	stool	كرسي بدون ظهر
seat	مقعد ثابت	sofa	كنبة / أريكة
disabled	معاق جسديا	retarded	معاق ذهنيًا
backward	متخلف عن النمو	handicapped	معاق جسديا او عقليا
degree	شهادة جامعية (المؤهل)	certificate	شهادة / وثيقة / صك (ميلاد / وفاة)
imaginary	خيالي (شيء)	imaginative	خيالي (شيء) / مبدع (شخص)
imagine	يتخيل	Fancy / Imagine + V.ing	من المدهش
natural	طبيعي (من الطبيعة)	natural with	على طبيعته مع
discover	يكتشف شيء	explore	يستكشف مكان
invent	يخترع شيء لأول مرة	create	يبدع / يخلق
surface	سطح الشيء	roof	سقف المنزل
explore space	يستكشف الفضاء	invade space	يغزو الفضاء
operation	عملية جراحية - عملية ترميم	process	عملية طبيعية - عملية تصنيع
paper	الورق	a paper / papers	جريدة / الجرائد - الأبحاث
earth	كوكب الأرض	floor	أرضية غرفة
soil	تربة (للزراعة)	land	أرض يابسة



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The on most phones are very good now. Music sounds loud and clear on them.
a. speakers b. sneakers c. swimmers d. survivors
- The shops are big buildings. It is the only small building in the road.
a. surrounded by b. survived by c. declared by d. announced by
- Noha had a big birthday cake in the shape of the pyramids!
a. spectacularly b. spectacle c. scale d. spectacular
- The play was so good that I was totally in the story. I forgot I was in a theatre!
a. immersed b. prevented c. inhibited d. arranged
- There are plans to build new cycle lanes through the city, but they have not yet it, so I still take the bus.
a. planted b. implemented c. graved d. surrounded
- The wood goes through a/an which turns it into paper.
a. wool b. procession c. process d. prevention
- All the trains were cancelled this morning, which was very as I couldn't get to college.
a. conventional b. convenient c. inconvenient d. programmed

My new Friend

- Plastic toys are very cheap because thousands of them are in factories every day.
a. massive b. missile c. mass-produced d. massively
- A speaker is a/an through which sound is heard.
a. advice b. advise c. devise d. device
- Some people feel that on animals is wrong.
a. experiencing b. experimenting c. exporting d. exploring
- Facts can be established by observation and
a. experiment b. experience c. exportation d. exerting
- The process using steam to sterilize the instruments.
a. revolves b. involves c. solves d. dissolves
- They are prepared for the of the new system.
a. implementation b. collaboration c. cooperation d. congregation
- While waiting for the bus, I was by a woman who asked for the time.
a. attended b. approached c. addicted d. indicated
- The industrial revolution heralded the start of production.
a. mass b. miss c. missed d. muse
- The berries are into juice or sauce.
a. possessed b. processed c. recessed d. reversed
- The coastal road has scenery, which everyone enjoys seeing.
a. inconvenient b. spectacular c. ugly d. rewarding
- We apologize for the delay and regret any it may have caused.
a. convenience b. inconvenient c. convenient d. inconvenience
- He used his wife's birthday as a/an excuse for not going to the meeting.
a. convenient b. oculist c. communist d. allergic
- A/An sound is a system for reproducing sound using several speakers.
a. Around b. Surround c. Suppose d. Support
- all over the world will be observing the eclipse.
a. Astronauts b. Asteroids c. Astronomers d. Astrologers
- Astronauts are well-trained to travel into
a. technology b. speed c. space d. soil
- The Venus is enshrouded in thick clouds.
a. plant b. planter c. planet d. blanket
- There are nine planets in the system.
a. solar b. rural c. global d. local
- The disintegrated as it entered the Earth's atmosphere.
a. space b. spacecraft c. craftsman d. salesman
- Scientists disagree about how the was created.
a. global b. universal c. university d. universe

46. The paramedics him over to make it easier for him to breathe.
 a. ruled b. rolled c. roiled d. riled
47. The quality was poor. We couldn't hear well.
 a. video b. audio c. auto d. motto
48. If you want to attract customers you need to on TV.
 a. organize b. advertise c. disorganize d. recognize
49. Attractive can help to sell products.
 a. mocking b. laughing c. racing d. packaging
50. Improving the of care for nursing home residents is a priority.
 a. equality b. inequality c. quality d. quantity
51. Members of the council strongly to plans to sell off the land.
 a. objected b. refused c. subjected d. injected
52. Her paintings are of ordinary everyday
 a. rejects b. objects c. injects d. addicts
53. Science stories often mention robots that can talk.
 a. fraction b. vision c. friction d. fiction
54. Her secretive manner had made me to know what was behind her.
 a. normal b. version c. curious d. audience
55. There are some obvious practical of the research.
 a. applications b. columns c. visions d. divisions
56. Both my daughters are in their One is seventeen and the other is a year older.
 a. means b. makes c. vases d. teens
57. He was impatient to ask a question whose answer he was eager to know.
 a. vulgar b. burning c. burned d. warning
58. Civilization does not remain static, but changes
 a. instantly b. continuous c. constantly d. previously
59. It seems reasonable to suggest that all life on earth share a common origin.
 a. forms b. firms c. farms d. frames
60. The temperature went down to ten last night.
 a. minute b. mimic c. manic d. minus
61. house prices decreased by 13% last year.
 a. Verge b. Coverage c. Average d. Revenge
62. People average are living much longer than before.
 a. In b. on c. at d. with
63. The battery is low; I need to my phone.
 a. charge b. accuse c. cause d. admit
64. The plastic material can take up to 160 degree of heat.
 a. Celsius b. sllee c. slide d. side

65. There have been great in the treatment of cancer.
a. admits b. addicts c. proverbs d. advances
66. The was collected by various researchers.
a. date b. data c. dates d. dot
67. The Spanish the New World in the 16th century.
a. conquered b. booked c. reversed d. reserved
68. Cars are not allowed in the cycle
a. leads b. lanes c. lens d. lucks
69. All flights have been because of bad weather.
a. encouraged b. started c. built d. cancelled
70. Our television has a 19-inch
a. scene b. screen c. swing d. sting
71. Passengers must fasten their belts prior to descent.
a. sofa b. chair c. stool d. seat
72. It is impossible to change the laws of
a. natural b. normal c. nature d. mature
73. The weather in January is often cold and
a. snowy b. smuggle c. slowly d. hot
74. The game company's system allows the player to feel like they are really riding in a spacecraft.
a. immersive b. immerse c. immersed d. immersion
75. The course offers the opportunity for total in the language and culture.
a. detention b. reflection c. invention d. immersion
76. "We decided to make the arrangement permanent." A synonym for "permanent" is
a. everlasting b. ending c. temporary d. temporal
77. The shops have delicious produce display.
a. at b. in c. about d. on
78. Metals when they are heated.
a. expert b. expand c. export d. express
79. Many civilians died as a/an of allied bombing.
a. cause b. reason c. effect d. result
80. My child is immersed drawing all the time.
a. up b. down c. into d. to
81. There are some obvious applications of the research.
a. practice b. practitioner c. practical d. practise
82. The roof is by four huge columns.
a. supposed b. supported c. assumed d. surrendered
83. Don't call me unless it's a emergency.
a. fact b. real c. truth d. factor

84. They're hoping that their prices will drive out the rival company.
a. expensive b. competitive c. collective d. comprehensive
85. The government provides money in the of grants and student loans.
a. shop b. sheep c. cheap d. shape
86. Hepatitis is a fatal disease.
a. scenery b. plot c. pottery d. potentially
87. For optimum effect, these drops are used daily.
a. one b. time c. ounce d. once
88. It me two hours to finish my homework.
a. took b. took from c. took of d. took out
89. I stepped aside so that she come in.
a. can b. may c. will d. might
90. It was hot day that he had to keep mopping his forehead with handkerchief.
a. such a b. too c. enough d. so
91. Carbolic acid is usually used cleaning.
a. to b. as c. for d. with
92. If you are in the market for a car, that dealer has some fine bargains.
a. use b. usage c. user d. used
93. He is good at dancing playing drums.
a. in addition to that b. in addition c. beside d. as well as
94. The problem was psychological physiological.
a. other than b. rather than c. to this d. better
95. were piled in great heaps on the desk.
a. A paper b. Newspaper c. Paper d. Papers
96. He was injured boiler explosion.
a. because b. as a result c. therefore d. as a result of
97. I have a recurrent dream that I've turned an elephant.
a. on b. down c. into d. off
98. Fancy you here; I didn't expect that.
a. meet b. meeting c. to meeting d. to meet
99. A synonym for the adjective "permanent" is
a. temporary b. ceaseless c. ending d. frequent
100. "The seeds will swell when immersed in water." A synonym for "immersed" is
a. locked b. soaked c. deleted d. solved
101. Another word for "process" is
a. calculation b. operation c. commission d. intrusion
102. "The excess demand is illustrated in Figure 16.2." Another word for "illustrated" is
a. dimensional b. demonstrated c. prevented d. inhibited

Future Tenses; Present Perfect for future use

Future forms and tenses صيغ وأزمنة المستقبل

1. The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

1. Usage استخدام المستقبل البسيط

يستخدم (زمن المستقبل البسيط) في التعبير عن حدث سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

- * I will do the housework later today.
- * We are celebrating my brother's birthday tomorrow.

2. Tense Markers الكلمات الدالة على زمن المستقبل البسيط

- * in the future / in future / من الآن فصاعداً / في المستقبل
- * in the near future / in / سنة في المستقبل + / في المستقبل القريب
- * tomorrow / today evening / tonight
- * next year / next month / next week / on next Monday
- * the coming / in the coming days / in the years to come
- * when I grow up / when I grow old / when I become older
- * shortly / soon / later
- * in (within) a year (month / week) / in two years' time / in two hours

الحالات التي تستخدم فيها كل صيغة من صيغ المستقبل البسيط

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

* يُستخدم للتعبير عن المستقبل عند وجود حدث مستقبلي سوف يتم حسب جدول زمني في المستقبل.

* يُستخدم مع مواعيد القطارات والأتوبيسات والطائرات والبرامج .. الخ. / وأيضاً مع المقابلات والمواعيد الرسمية.

- * My train arrives in Alex at 8 tomorrow morning.
- * The lesson doesn't finish until three o'clock.
- * The president meets the ministers at 11 o'clock tomorrow.

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

* يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث مرتب في المستقبل.

** كيف تعرف أن الحدث المستقبلي مرتب؟

1. عند وجود الكلمات الآتية بالجملة.

appointment	موعد	arrange	يرتب	prepare	يُجهز
ready	جاهز - مستعد	arrangement	ترتيب	preparation	إعداد - تجهيز

- * The couple are getting married next week. Everything is prepared.
- 2. عندما يضيف المتحدث الي حديثه الخطوة التي اتخذها للترتيب للحدث.

* I'm watching the match at the stadium next Friday. I've already booked a ticket.

3. إذا ذكر المتحدث الشيء الذي لن يستطيع فعله في المستقبل بسبب ترتيبه لشيء آخر.

* I can't see you tomorrow, I'm meeting a friend off at the airport.
هناك أحداث من الصعب أن تكون قراراً مفاجئاً ويكون الغرض من ذكرها الإبلاغ بأنه قد تم ترتيبها بالفعل.

* Tomorrow I'm watching a football match with my friend.
من المؤكد أن المتحدث قد رتب لمشاهدة المباراة مع صديق قبل أن يذكر ذلك الآن.

* Walaa is travelling to London next Spring.
من المؤكد أن ولاء قد رتب السفر إلى لندن قبل ذكر المعلومة ولولا هذا ما عرف المتحدث بذلك.

Note (1)

لا يمكننا استخدام زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في هاتين الحالتين:

* It's raining tomorrow. (You can't arrange rain) لا يمكن ترتيب المطر
* I'm watching TV. (This can't be arranged) لا يمكن ترتيب مشاهدة التلفاز

3. am - is - are + going to + مصدر الفعل:

تستخدم هذه الصيغة في التعبير عن المستقبل البسيط في الحالات التالية:

1. وجود حدث مخطط (مقرر/هناك نية) لحدوثه في المستقبل:

وجود الكلمات التالية في الجملة يشير إلى أن الحدث مخطط (مقرر/هناك نية) لحدوثه في المستقبل.
plan ينوي decide يقرر intend ينوي
a plan (plans) خطة (خطط) decision قرار intention نية

* I've decided that I am going to do more exercise in the future.
* She is going to buy a new computer. She has already made her plan.
2. رغبة في التعبير عن الطموح المستقبلي:

* I'm going to be a famous architect one day.
* I'm going to study medicine at university as I'm going to be a doctor.
3. للتعبير عن تنبؤ له دليل واضح.

* The sky is cloudy. I think it's going to rain.
* The car is running out of petrol. It's going to stop.
* Watch out! The baby is going to fall.
أحذرك لأنني أرى دليل يوحى أن الطفل سوف يسقط أرضاً.

Note (2)

* تنبؤات الطقس والولادة لا تحتاج دائماً إلى ذكر دليل:

* We've had some fantastic news. My sister is going to have a baby.
* I think it's going to be a sunny day tomorrow.

* My brother is very clever. I think he will be a doctor.
* My brother is revising well. I think he's going to pass the test.

* الصفات الدائمة ليست أدلة بينما المواقف المؤقتة أدلة واضحة.

My new Friend

* (الذكاء في المثال الأول صفة دائمة فليست دليل على أن صاحبها سيصبح طبيباً أما المراجعة الجيدة في الجملة الثانية هي دليل واضح على أن من قام بها سيجتاز الاختبار بنجاح).

يمكن لصيغتي (am/ is/ are + V.ing) و (am/ is/ are going to + مصدر) أن يُستخدمتا بالتبادل عند الترتيب أو التخطيط والنية والقرار.

1. I've already decided that I part in the next competition.
a. going to take b. will take c. take d. am taking

2. Amira her old flat. She has arranged it.
a. is going to sell b. will sell c. sells d. selling

* يمكن لصيغتي (am/ is/ are + V.ing) و (am/ is/ are going to + مصدر) أن يُستخدمتا بالتبادل عند ذكر المتحدث للخطوة الأولى التي اتخذها للترتيب أو التخطيط للحدث.

* They've got the tickets. They are going to fly to England.
* I've got the ticket. I'm watching the match at the stadium next Friday.

4. shall + مصدر:

* نادراً ما تستخدم تلك الصيغة لتعبير عن المستقبل البسيط كما أنها تختصر إلى (I/ We) مع ضميري الفاعل.

* تستخدم غالباً عندما نقوم بعمل عرض أو اقتراح وعندما نطلب النصيحة.

Shall I + مصدر?	العرض
Shall I + مصدر?	طلب النصيحة
Shall we + مصدر?	الاقتراح

* Shall I help you carry this heavy bag?
* Shall we go to the cinema?

5. will + مصدر:

* تُعتبر تلك الصيغة هي الأكثر شيوعاً في التعبير عن المستقبل البسيط وتعبير عن الأغراض التالية.
أ. الحقائق المستقبلية: كالتعبير عن عُمر الأشخاص والأشياء في وقت معين في المستقبل:

* This school will be ten years old this year.
* Father is forty nine now. Next year he will be fifty.
ب. القرارات السريعة التي تتخذ أثناء الكلام أو عندما يتطوع المتحدث لفعل شيء ما كقرار سريع منه.

* That's the phone. I will answer it.
* Someone is knocking at the door. I will open it.
ج. العروض والطلبات (offers and requests):

* I'll go shopping with you if you like.
* Will you help me make dinner, please?
د. الوعود والتهديدات (promises and threats):

* I promise I'll contact you in two days' time.
* Don't worry. I will lend you the money you need.
هـ. التحذير (warning): نستطيع تحذير الآخرين من عاقبة ما باستخدام القانون التالي.

مصدر will/ won't + وإلا or/ else/ or else/ otherwise + صيغة أمرية (صيغة نصيحة)

Unit 3: Beyond Imagination

* Do (You should do) what I say otherwise you will be in trouble.
 * Think of something useful to do or you will regret it later.
 (predictions with no evidence) لا يذكر لها دليل
 * Father will be home in ten minutes.

* I think it will be hot today.
 * There will be no oil in the world one day.

* You sweep the floor and I will cook the dinner.
 * You do the typing and I will check it later.

* I will open the door. That will be dad.

* Take the medicine. You will (may) need it.
 (if) تكون لـ (will) الأولوية على باقي صيغ المستقبل البسيط في الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ (if)

* If you give more attention to your study, you will get a good grade.
 * You will be tired tomorrow if you stay up late tonight.

I'm sure	I think	perhaps	never
surely	I believe	It's probable	always
I feel sure	I suppose	أعتقد probably	usually
I'm certain	I assume	أفترض likely	often
certainly	I doubt	أشك maybe	I expect
almost certainly	I don't think	it's possible	I predict
definitely	I know	possibly	I fear أن أخشى
I hope	I wonder	أعجب I promise	I'm afraid. للأسف

* I'm sure the match will be really exciting.
 * I hope your grandfather will have a successful operation.
 * You will probably stay in prison for life.
 * I expect Ahmed will pass his exams. * Perhaps they will send you a letter soon.

لـ تُستخدم (will) للتعبير عن تكرار الأحداث في المستقبل: لهذا تُستخدم (will) مع الظروف الآتية في المستقبل:

always usually often never

* The sun will always illuminate the earth. تضيء - تشرق
 * E-books will never replace school books. تحل محل الكتب الإلكترونية

* I think it will be hot today.
 * I've just read the weather report. It's going to be sunny.
 * I expect / I predict it will rain today.
 * There are dark clouds in the sky. I think it is going to rain.

* لاحظ الفرق بين الجمل التالية:

My new Friend

* تنبؤات المفسر التي ليس لها دليل يُفضل فيها استخدام (will).
 * تنبؤات المفسر التي فيها دليل يُفضل فيها استخدام (مصدر + am / is / are + going to).

* تُستخدم (will) مع الترتيبات، الخطط والقرارات عندما يكون الفعل الأصلي (be).
 * I've planned it. I will be in Cairo tomorrow.
 * I will be at the meeting tomorrow. I've arranged it.
 * I am being at the meeting tomorrow. I've arranged it.

جملة صحيحة

جملة خاطئة

* لاحظ الفرق بين الجمل التالية:

1. I can't talk at the moment. I'm doing my homework.

هنا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث في الوقت الحالي.
 2. I can't see you later this evening. I'm doing my homework.

هنا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مستقبلي مرتب سيمنع حدث آخر.
 3. There's a good film on TV tonight. It finishes at ten o'clock.

هنا نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن موعد مؤكد حسب جدول زمني محدد.
 4. There's a good film on TV tonight. I think that it will finish at ten o'clock.

هنا نستخدم (مصدر + will) للتعبير عن رأي لوجود (I think) رغم أنه موعد لكن ليس مؤكد.
 5. We're going to have fish for dinner.

هنا نستخدم (going to) للتعبير عن تخطيط لتناول السمك في العشاء.
 6. I think we'll have fish for dinner.

هنا نستخدم (مصدر + will) للتعبير عن رأي لوجود (I think).

الروابط الشرطية والزمنية المستقبلية

* يُستخدم المستقبل البسيط بعد الجمل الزمنية والشرطية المستقبلية.
 * نقوم باستخدام القوانين التالية للتعبير عن أي حدثين سوف يتتابعان في المستقبل.
 * لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام بعد الرابط الزمني أو الشرطي.

After The Moment As soon as بمجرد أن Once Before By the time When While If Unless	زمن المضارع البسيط أو زمن المضارع التام	مصدر + will مصدر + shall مصدر + am / is / are + going to مصدر + am / is / are + V.ing. مصدر + should / ought to / had better مصدر + can / may / might مصدر + must / have to / has to فعل في صيغة الأمر
---	---	---

* As soon as Ali gets home, he is going to have dinner.
 * When you finish doing this work, you can leave.
 * I'll phone my father after I eat (have eaten) my dinner.

مصدر + will (won't) + فاعل
مصدر + don't / مصدر

till / until
إلا - حتى

المضارع البسيط
المضارع التام

- * She won't leave till you give her a permission.
 * Don't press this button until the light turns green.

ما يلي: يعتمد اختيار صيغ المستقبل أو أحد بدائلهم على المعنى المقصود.
 من المنطقي اختيار أحد صيغ المستقبل بمجرد رؤية الروابط السابقة. فلابد من تحديد المعنى المناسب أولاً حسب سياق الجملة.

1. You clean your room before you go out with your friends.
 a. had to b. will c. must d. might
2. If you don't feel well, you see a doctor.
 a. will b. are going to c. might d. should
3. If you are interested in going into space, saving now.
 a. will start b. start c. may start d. can start

اختبر فهمك لتروابط الزمنية ولشرطية المستقبلية بملأ الصرين التالي:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You clean your room before you go out with your friends.
 a. had to b. will c. must d. might
2. If she wants to start her course this year, she before the end of March or she will wait for next year.
 a. is going to apply b. is applying c. has to apply d. will apply
3. If you're going to take the motorcycle, you a helmet. It's a law.
 a. are going to wear b. can wear c. will wear d. have to wear
4. If you don't feel well, you see a doctor.
 a. will b. are going to c. might d. should
5. We know for sure till we hear from both sides.
 a. aren't going to b. wouldn't c. won't d. mustn't
6. If you are interested in going into space, saving now.
 a. will start b. start c. may start d. can start
7. Before you answer any question, and think carefully.
 a. would stop b. will stop c. stop d. can stop
8. If you want an e-book reader, you start saving now.
 a. would b. had better c. ought d. will
9. If you don't understand, you ask your teacher. It's advisable.
 a. might b. can c. have d. should
10. If you can't dictate your conditions تفاوض شروطك, you negotiate تفاوض.
 a. will b. should c. need d. ought



Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams' Exercises

1. My friend will lend me his book as soon as he it. (دور ثان 99)
 a. will finish b. has finished c. would finish d. will have finished
2. She to London next spring. (دور أول 2003)
 a. is travelling b. travels c. travelling d. has travelled
3. In the future, shopping on the internet. (دور ثان 2004)
 a. will be done b. will do c. have been done d. were done
4. In the future, solar heating in homes and industry. (دور أول 2005)
 a. is used b. will be used c. are used d. would be used
5. I expect he pass his exams easily. (دور ثان 2007) - (دور أول 2005)
 a. would b. should c. will d. must
6. I want to buy a new villa, so I save a lot of money. (دور أول 2011)
 a. am going to b. will c. going to d. will be
7. He a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan. (دور ثان 2013)
 a. is going to become b. will become c. becomes d. is becoming
8. He an eye doctor when he finishes his graduate studies. This is his plan. (دور أول 2015)
 a. would be b. is c. is going to be d. has been
9. I probably be away for a week this summer. (دور ثان 2015)
 a. am going to b. had to c. would d. will
10. The plane to Brazil off tomorrow at 6:00 a.m. (دور أول 2015)
 a. is taking b. takes c. will take d. is going to take
11. In my opinion, the population of Egypt by 20 % next year. (دور ثان 2015)
 a. is increasing b. has increased c. is going to increase d. will increase
12. She is flying to London next week, her flight off at 7 a.m. (دور أول 2016)
 a. took b. taking c. take d. takes
13. I will inform you as soon as I home tomorrow. (دور أول 2016)
 a. will arrive b. had arrived c. arrive d. arrived
14. The match at 8:00 this evening. (أزهر 2011)
 a. will start b. is going to start c. starts d. will be starting
15. He planned that he America next summer. (أزهر 2012)
 a. visits b. will visit c. is visiting d. is going to visit
16. - What's your plan for the next Ramadan? - I Omra. (أزهر 2014)
 a. 'm performing b. 'll perform c. perform d. 'm going to perform
17. I decided to travel to Luxor with my friends at the weekend. We at the airport (أزهر 2014)
 a. are going to meet b. will meet c. would meet d. are meeting

38. They've got the tickets; they to London.
 a. will have flown b. are going to fly c. are flying d. will fly
39. I to the book fair to buy the books I need. This is my intention.
 a. will have gone b. am going to go c. am going d. will go
40. I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I be sick.
 a. should b. am going to c. am to d. will
41. This time next week, I will be on holiday. I on the beach.
 a. am lying b. am going to be c. will be lying d. will be
42. I don't think the exam difficult.
 a. will be b. is going to be c. will have been d. is being

My new friend Exercises

43. These are my plans for the summer holidays. First of all, I to Alex.
 a. am going to go b. am going for c. go d. will go
44. While Mona is doing her homework tomorrow, mum lunch.
 a. will preparing b. preparing c. be preparing d. will be preparing
45. I to Fayoum next weekend. It's already arranged.
 a. am travelling b. will travel c. travel d. am going to travel
46. I my homework when they come to visit us tomorrow.
 a. will be doing b. do c. be doing d. may doing
47. At five o'clock tomorrow, I football.
 a. will played b. playing c. will be playing d. would play
48. I'm going to apply to study Medicine at Assiut University because I a doctor.
 a. will go to be b. will be c. am being d. am going to be
49. I'm sure the publishers the price when more people buy e-books.
 a. are going to reduce b. are reducing c. reduce d. will reduce
50. The programme at seven o'clock this evening.
 a. starts b. will start c. is starting d. is going to start
51. I can't talk at the moment. I my homework.
 a. will do b. do c. have done d. am doing
52. I can't see you later this evening. I
 a. am doing b. had done c. do d. would do
53. There's a good film on TV tonight. It at ten o'clock.
 a. is going to finish b. will finish c. is finishing d. finishes
54. There's a good film on TV tonight. I think that it at ten o'clock.
 a. finishes b. is finishing c. will finish d. is going to finish
55. I think we fish for dinner.

in thirty minutes.

b. will leave

d. is leaving

75 years old.

b. is going to be

d. would have been

them for you.

c. am going to carry d. carries

than half a million people next year.

b. is growing

c. going to grow d. grows

Id you like to come?

b. are having

c. have
d. are going to have

at two o'clock this afternoon.

d. is finishing

d. is finishing

difficult to find a chair.

c. is being d. has been

d. has been

Part 2: Lessons (3-4)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill.
operation	عملية جراحية	procedure performed on a living body usually with instruments especially for the repair of damage or defect or the restoration of health.
records	سجلات	to write (something) down so that it can be used or seen again in the future : to produce a record of.
sensor	جهاز استشعار	a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.
surgeon	طبيب جراح	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better.
surgery	جراحة	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged.
treatment	علاج	medicines or things that make medicines.

Reading and Critical Thinking

monitor	يراقب	on balance	dishwashers	في توازن
artificial	اصطناعي	replace	last for	يستبدل
development	تنمية	skills	electric cars	مهارات
tasks	مهام	health apps	global problems	تطبيقات صحية
normally	طبيعياً	comments	disasters	تعليقات
accurately	بدقة	gamers	tablets	اللاعبين
surgical tools	أدوات جراحية	complicated	warn	معد
distant	بعد	maths problems	swap	مساائل رياضية
advanced	متقدم	warning systems	escape	اجهزة نذار
earthquake	زلازل	cyber security	issue	امن معلوماتي
hackers	قراصنة الانترنت	individuals	organizations	الأفراد
cases	حالات	addicted to	benefits	مدمن لـ
obvious	واضح	cures	handle	علاجات
cut open	قطع مفتوح	remove	injury	يزيل
equipment	معدات	measure	shop assistant	يقيس
factory workers	عمال المصنع	businesses	advertisements	شركات
kill	يرقى	global warming	recycle	احتباس حراري

Essay vocabulary

blog	ملونة	advantages of	مزايا لـ	post	منشور
comments	تطبيقات	disadvantages of	عيوب لـ	on the whole	على العموم
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	log in	يسجل دخول	register	يسجل

Prepositions

connected to	متصل بـ	carry out	ينفذ	throw away	يألق بعيداً
in the field of	في مجال	important for	هام لـ	warn about	يحذر بشأن
controlled by	يتحكم فيه بواسطة	depend on	يعتمد على	thanks to	بفضل
benefits of	فوائد	log in	يسجل دخول	run out of	ينفذ ما لديه من

Important Collocations & Expressions

My new Friend

make medicine	يصنع دواء	buy online	يشترى على الانترنت
stay healthy	يبقى صحي	improve health care	يحسن الرعاية الصحية
perform (do) tasks	يؤدي مهام	require human intelligence	تتطلب ذكاء بشري
recognise pictures	يتعرف على الصور	solve problems	يحل مشاكل
create opportunities for	يخلق فرص لـ	save lives	ينقذ حياة
give people more time	يعطى للناس مزيد من الوقت	escape to safety	يهرب إلى الامان
become a big issue	تصبح قضية كبيرة	cause (do) serious harm to	تسبب ضرر خطير لـ
become addicted to	ي become لـ	walk in nature	يمشي في الطبيعة
discover new cures for	يجد علاجات جديدة لـ	a list of	يعد قائمة بـ
steal information	يسرق معلومات	affect our lives	تؤثر على حياتنا
build cars and machines	يبنى سيارات وآلات	do well in the exam	يؤدي جيداً في الامتحان
replace traditional cars	يحل محل السيارات القديمة	self-driving cars	سيارات ذاتية القيادة
call a taxi	يستدعي تاكسي	produce amazing art	ينتج فن مذهل
communicate in any language	يتواصل بأي لغة	produce amazing music	ينتج موسيقى مذهلة
do badly in the exam	يؤدي بشكل سيء في الامتحان	find a way to	يجد طريقة لـ
build phones	يصنع هواتف	more and more powerful	قوي أكثر وأكثر
play video games	يلعب ألعاب فيديو	Artificial Intelligence (AI)	ذكاء اصطناعي
it is terrible that	من السيئ أن	on a bigger scale	على نطاق أكبر
on the one hand	من ناحية	but that often means	ولكن هذا غالباً يعني
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	with the help of	بمساعدة
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ	on old equipment	على جهاز قديم
improve our everyday lives	تحسن حياتنا اليومية	have an operation	تجري له عملية جراحية
perform (do / carry out) an operation			يؤدي عملية جراحية
measure light, heat, sound			تقيس الضوء والحرارة والصوت
monitor your health or fitness			تراقب صحتك ولياقتك
handle the surgical tools			يتعامل مع الأدوات الجراحية
have advanced warning systems			لديهم أنظمة تحذير متقدمة
change the way we live			يغير الطريقة التي نعيش بها

Word	Meaning	synonyms	Antonyms
artificial	صناعي	man-made / synthetic / unnatural / industrial / fabricated	raw / natural / crude
simple	بسيط	modest / natural / genuine	exaggerated / overdone / complex
development	تمية	evolution / expansion / progress	backside / regression
normally	بشكل طبيعي	commonly / naturally / ordinarily	oddly / strangely / radically
accurately	بدقة	precisely / word for word	inexactly / carelessly / inaccurately
handle	بتعامل	manage / react / regulate / operate	mishandle / mess up
distant	بعيد	apart / isolated / out of the way	close / near / nearby
advanced	متقدم	developed / evolved / improved	retarded / uncivilized
obvious	واضح	apparent / clear / plain	ambiguous / mysterious
complicated	معقد	complex / difficult	simple / plain
last	يستمر	continue / go on / keep up	run out / cease / finish
serious	خطير	earnest / grave / severe / harsh	ridiculous / humorous / joking
equipment	معدات	apparatus / tools / kit / stuff	
drug	دواء	cure / medicament / remedy	
monitor	يراقب	cover / watch / gaze / keep an eye on	
tasks	مهام	duties / jobs / projects / missions	

Reading Texts

1. Comments on a blog

- Posted 8 Sept 2021, 17.30 Eduardo

Technology is very important for us here in Mexico City. We depend on smartphones, tablets, computers and especially the internet. I am lucky to have a computer in my house, because my father doesn't live with us, so it helps me keep in touch with him. On a bigger scale, technology has helped save lives in Mexico. We have very advanced warning systems which give people more time to escape to safety if an earthquake is coming. On the other hand, cyber security has become a big issue. Computer hackers can cause serious harm to individuals and organisations. Important information can be stolen. There have been many cases where this has happened in Mexico, and I'm sure there will be more in the future.

- Posted 9 Sept 2021, 13.50 Hadia123

Technology surrounds us. It's everywhere. It's hard to imagine a life without technology. But, of course, we could live without it. Only forty years ago people survived without smart phones or the Internet. On the whole, I think technology can be dangerous because people can become addicted to it. They forget about simple things like walking in nature and being with friends.

- Posted 11 Sept 2021, 16.30 Joat19

I don't agree with the last comment. The benefits of technology in medicine are obvious. People's lives are saved every day because of new technology in hospitals! In the future, it'll be even more important. It will help us discover new cures for lots of diseases. Of course, technology has some negative effects, but on balance, we can't live without it now.

- Log in or register to post comments

2. Possible future uses of AI

Experts all agree that we will see more artificial intelligence (AI) in the future, but how will this affect our lives?

Factories already use AI to build cars and machines. Work that used to be done by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades, computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop assistants. That means many shops and businesses won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours.

When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you advertisements to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need to be mass-produced.

Many people think that self-driving cars will have replaced traditional cars within the next few decades. We will all be calling self-driving cars to take us where we want to go, just like we call a taxi today.

Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing art or music. AI will also help us to communicate in any language.

Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to AI.

3. The advantages and disadvantages to evolving technology

Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger screens or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. On a bigger scale, computers in businesses, at airports and in almost every organisation become more and more powerful. We now depend on everything becoming better, bigger and faster.

On the one hand, this makes things easier for all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good as cinema screens. Mobile phones mean that you can be connected to the internet anywhere, so you can always find out information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

On the other hand, new technology is very bad for the environment. We all want to buy the latest phone, television or computer game, but that often means throwing away the old ones. You can recycle some parts of old equipment, but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

On the whole, it is good that technology changes. We all want to have things that can improve our everyday lives. On balance, however, I think that we have to find a way to use new technology on old equipment. It is terrible that we have to throw away good equipment just because it does not use the latest technology. If we could build phones, TVs and computers that could last for decades, we could have a cleaner, greener world.

Language Notes

1. steal / rob:

* **steal** (يسرق) **from** مكان / شخص شيء:

- * I saw them stealing money from the safe.
- * My car was stolen last night.

* **rob** (يُجرد) شيء of شخص / مكان:

- * Someone robbed me of my watch.
- * I saw the men who robbed the bank.
- * I was robbed of my wallet yesterday.

2. stop / prevent + مفعول + from + V.ing

- * Illness stops people from enjoying life.

3. treat / cure / heal - treat / deal / trade:

- treat for = cure of يعالج من:

- * The dentist is treating me for a bad tooth.
- * Doctors help cure people of diseases.

- treatment for / cure for علاج لـ:

- * A treatment for the virus must be discovered.

- heal يَشفِي:

- * He was wounded but quickly his wounds healed.

- **treat** (يُعامل شخص) - يتعامل مع شيء:

- * She treats me like one of the family.
- * Treat this information as completely confidential.

- treatment معاملة:

- * They complained about the treatment of the prisoners.

- **deal with = handle** يتعامل مع شيء:

- * Youth have to know how to deal with modern technology.

- **deal in = trade in** يتاجر في:

- * This evil man deals in / trades in drugs.

- **deal** - صفقة - اتفاق:

- * They made a deal to sell the land to a property developer.

- **trade with** يتاجر مع:

- * India began trading with Europe in the 15th and 16th centuries.

4. good at / to / for:

- **good = clever = skilled = wonderful = intelligent + at** (مستوى) جيد في:

- **bad at = hopeless at = terrible at** (مستوى) سيء في:

- * I'm quite good at English.

- * She's terrible at Math's. She needs much effort.

- **good for = useful for** مفيد لـ - **bad for = harmful to** ضار بـ:

- * E-books will be good for the environment as it will prevent cutting down trees.
- * Eating too much sweet is bad for health.

- **good (kind) to** قاسي على - **unkind (cruel) to** عطفوف على:

- * He isn't good to me. He treats me badly.

5. present / give / provide / supply:

- **present (give)** شيء to شخص = **present** شخص with شيء:

- * I presented / gave a mobile phone to my son as a reward.
- * I presented my son with a mobile phone as a reward.

- **provide / supply** with (يُمد - يُزوّد - يوفّر) بـ

- * The school provides the students with the necessary books.

- **provide / supply** for (يوفّر - يمد - يزود) لـ

- * The school provides the necessary books for the students.

- **provide / run / give + a course (in)** يقدم - يعطي دورة دراسية في:

- * This centre provides courses in English.
- * Our faculty runs courses for older people.

- **do / take + a course (in)** يحصل على دورة في:

- * Older people can do courses at our faculty.

6. accept × agree × approve / expect / except:

- **accept** (يقبل دعوة - عرض - اعتذار - وظيفة):

- * He accepted my invitation so I thanked him a lot.
- * He didn't accept the job offered to him.

- **agree to + مصدر / شيء + agree to / on / about** يوافق - يتفق:

- * He agreed to go with me so I thanked him.
- * He agreed with me.

Unit 3: Beyond Imagination

١٠ يقبل / disapprove of يقبل

* Catherine's parents now approve of her marriage.

* I disapprove of cosmetic surgery.

١١ يتوقع expect

* Astronomers expect rain to fall continuously over the next week.

١٢ عدا except (for)

* The office is open every day except Sundays.

9. More Notes:

mission	مهمة (واجب - وظيفة)	task	مهمة (واجب - وظيفة)
throw in / into	يلقي (يرمى) في ...	throw away	يلقي من
dispense with	يستغنى عن	do / go / live without	يستغنى عن
thanks for	شكرا على	thanks to	بفضل كذا
connect ... with	يروصل ... بـ	connect to	يتصل بـ
connection	تواصل بين شيئين	contact	تواصل بين شخصان
attached (connected) to	موصول بـ	attached (connected) with	مرتبط بـ
communicate with	يتواصل مع	communicate by	يتواصل عن طريق (بواسطة)
every (each) day	ظرف بمعنى (كل يوم)	everyday	صفة بمعنى (يومي)
every day	كل يوم	all day	طوال اليوم
run out	ينفذ / ينتهي	run out of	ينفذ ما لديه / يستهلك
take part in	يشارك في	take place (in)	يحدث (في)
take someone's place	يحل محل	take the place of	يحل محل
appreciate	يقدر (يحترم)	estimate	يقدر (يحسب - يقيس)
calculate	يحسب (يعد)	measure	يقيس
announcement	إعلان (تصريح)	advertisement	إعلان عن بضائع
recycled	معاد تصنيعه بالفعل	recyclable	يمكن إعادة تصنيعه



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Baby elephants on their mothers until they are five.
a. depend b. respond c. demand d. addict
- Most buildings in the city of New York are than those in European cities.
a. on the one hand b. on a bigger scale c. on the other hand d. on purpose
- We all love to see elephants, but, more and more are killed every year.
a. on the other hand b. on the whole c. on the one hand d. on balance
- I think that young people today are healthier than they were 20 years ago.
a. on the whole b. on a large scale c. on balance d. on the one hand

My new Friend

- The boys and girls did well in the exams, but the girls got higher marks.
a. on whole b. on balance c. balanced d. balance
- Taking these could seriously endanger your health.
a. medical b. herb c. drugs d. addicts
- The boy needs a life-saving transplant
a. procession b. operation c. process d. operator
- This surgeon never an operation without washing his hands.
a. forms b. carries c. performs d. makes
- My aunt is ill. She is going to a heart transplant operation next week.
a. have b. make c. do d. carry out
- Police attest to his long history of violence.
a. records b. cords c. cradles d. crudes
- The thermometer a temperature of 30 degrees Celsius.
a. accorded b. rewarded c. awarded d. recorded
- The security device has a heat which detects the presence of people and animals.
a. senator b. sensible c. sensitive d. sensor
- The students watched as the performed the operation.
a. servant b. civilian c. sergeant d. surgeon
- Changes in the patient's condition may make inadvisable.
a. surgical b. surgeon c. surgery d. server
- Their cruel of prisoners was abominable.
a. treaty b. heal c. cure d. treatment
- The hospital provides free to indigents.
a. medical b. treatment c. hire d. well-done
- Her cancer can only be controlled, not
a. cured b. carved c. craved d. shaved
- The medicine is an effective cure a headache.
a. on b. with c. for d. of
- He came home from hospital cured the disease but a shadow of his former self.
a. of b. from c. on d. for
- The clinic has several thousand patients free of charge.
a. created b. invented c. expanded d. treated
- To listen to the, click on the link below.
a. podcast b. indirect c. quantity d. qualification
- The workers are constantly for exposure to radiation.
a. screen b. monitored c. motivated d. monopolized

23. Computer scientists study intelligence.
a. natural b. normal c. artificial d. collective
24. Shortage of labour power retarded our economic
a. development b. commitment c. attachment d. engagement
25. Doctors do not always have good communication
a. skulls b. skills c. stations d. statues
26. The use of cars could be a key factor in fighting pollution.
a. power b. electric c. gas d. petrol
27. She occupied herself with routine office
a. flasks b. tusks c. tasks d. takes
28. The minister refused to on individual cases.
a. communicate b. comment c. content d. contact
29. Blog readers can write on it.
a. comments b. commons c. commissions d. columns
30. Their suggestion has, balance, proved practicable.
a. in b. at c. on d. with
31. The reason for the was engine failure, not human error.
a. plaster b. disaster c. eluster d. master
32. Now, have not only become cultural icons, but industry players.
a. toys b. games c. gamers d. joys
33. The surgeon ordered the nurse to sterilize the tools before the operation.
a. surgical b. tutor c. crucial d. critical
34. Signs across the entrances all visitors to stub out their cigarettes.
a. warm b. worm c. warn d. ward
35. He is a trouble maker. You must be with him.
a. close b. nearby c. near d. distant
36. I my red scarf for her blue one.
a. wiped b. wept c. swapped d. swept
37. Without more training or technical skills, they'll lose their jobs.
a. advanced b. deteriorated c. backward d. retarded
38. A criminal gang into a credit card company's most secure files.
a. backed b. hacked c. kicked d. mocked
39. Computer are people who gain access to a computer system without permission.
a. rackets b. shakers c. walkers d. hackers
- Education is now a major political
a. cease b. issue c. misuse d. abuse

41. He is passionately to pop music. He listens to it all the time.
a. addicted b. indicated c. directed d. ventured
42. I underwent aversion therapy for my to smoking.
a. radiation b. eradication c. addiction d. injection
43. The technique is painful, admittedly, but it the patient greatly.
a. benefits b. loses c. misses d. wastes
44. Medically, we will derive great from this technique.
a. fit b. appropriate c. fitter d. benefit
45. How many students have for English classes?
a. rendered b. tended c. captivated d. registered
46. She suffered extensive in the accident.
a. injuries b. addicts c. proverbs d. pronouns
47. The math's teacher said I didn't the angle accurately.
a. treasure b. appreciate c. respect d. measure
48. It's a good idea to household waste.
a. reinvent b. rewrite c. recycle d. dismantle
49. This envelope is made from paper. This is a good way to save resources.
a. cycled b. biked c. recycled d. circled
50. Will global mean the spread of tropical parasitic diseases?
a. warning b. dominating c. working d. warming
51. The police threatened to have protestors forcibly
a. shaved b. removed c. mocked d. cooked
52. Education levels are strongly to income.
a. deleted b. dated c. voted d. related
53. Don't ever your personal information on social media.
a. past b. post c. blast d. beast
54. He had a persistent headache that for three days.
a. seated b. chaired c. cared d. lasted
55. modern technology, people can now live better lives.
a. Thanks b. Thanks for c. Thanks to d. Thanking
56. The car petrol, and as a further complication I had no money!
a. ran on b. ran out c. ran off d. ran out of
57. A survey showed people were confused about what they should eat to healthy.
a. sit b. stay c. seat d. say
58. True marriage us to show trust and loyalty.
a. acquires b. requires c. inquires d. enquires

59. The government is doing its best to create job for young people.
a. popularities b. populations c. opportunities d. occasions
60. Heavy drinking can cause permanent to the brain.
a. manage b. damage c. coverage d. image
61. I've made a of names - I hope I haven't left anyone out.
a. loss b. least c. list d. layer
62. The bank was by a gang of bandits.
a. stolen b. robbed c. gripped d. grabbed
63. Her purse was from her handbag.
a. robbed b. stung c. shrugged d. stolen
64. cars do not need a driver.
a. Driving b. Diving c. Self-assured d. Self-driving
65. Do you in touch with any school friends?
a. keep b. sleep c. make d. fake
66. It was good of him to the problem in a wise way.
a. handle b. deal c. treat d. fit
67. Cutting down trees is not good the environment.
a. for b. at c. to d. with
68. Charities help to families in crisis situations.
a. prevent b. dissuade c. discourage d. deprive
69. I think no one can with modern technology. All people need it.
a. dispense with b. live c. do d. go
70. Never give up your dreams. Miracles are incidents.
a. every day b. day c. everyday d. ever ready
71. "Many polymers, such as nylon, are artificial." A synonym for "artificial" is
a. natural b. man-made c. raw d. crude
72. "The teacher always imposes heavy tasks on us." "Tasks" means
a. duties b. laws c. rights d. plights
73. "The meeting lasted from two o'clock to six." A synonym for "lasted" is
a. ended b. continued c. finished d. ran out
74. "Priority is given to patients with serious conditions." A synonym for "serious" is
a. global b. severe c. humorous d. joking
75. "I have been banished to a distant corridor." A synonym for "distant" is
a. devastated b. isolated c. insulated d. installed
76. "The article accurately reflects public opinion." A synonym for "accurately" is
a. publicly b. slickly c. precisely d. approximately

77. An antonym for "obvious" is
a. ambiguity b. mysterious c. clear d. apparent
78. "I can't render my thought accurately." An antonym for "accurately" is
a. inexactly b. precisely c. exactly d. word for word
79. There will always be development in technology. A synonym for "development" is
a. revolution b. evolution c. recommendation d. engagement
80. "This food contains no artificial flavouring." An antonym for "artificial" is
a. natural b. man-made c. fabricated d. industrial
81. "He has an advanced way of thinking." An antonym for "advanced" is
a. retarded b. improved c. developed d. enhanced
82. A synonym for the adjective "obvious" is
a. ambiguous b. unclear c. enormous d. apparent

Grammar

زمن المستقبل التام The future perfect tense

A. The Active Voice تكوين المستقبل التام في المبني للمعلوم

Affirmative Statements	will + have + P.P	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	won't + have + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	will + فاعل + have + P.P	السؤال

* By 2100, the government will have built hundreds more towns.

B. The passive voice تكوين الفعل في زمن المستقبل التام في المبني للمجهول

Affirmative Statements	will + have + been + P.P	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	won't + have + been + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	will + فاعل + have + been + P.P	السؤال

* By 2100, hundreds more towns will have been built.

C. Tense markers الكلمات الدالة على زمن المستقبل التام

- مدة في المستقبل + by the end of / مدة في المستقبل + before / مدة في المستقبل + by
- * in / within + + time (period) / in 3 years' time / in two years' period
- * by tomorrow / by next week / by now / by 2020 / by the time he is forty / by the end of this year
- * by this time tomorrow / by April next year / in another four months

D. Usage

- الحالات التي يتم فيها استخدام زمن المستقبل التام
يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سيكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر أو قبل وقت معين في المستقبل.
- * By this time next week, Yourself will have visited his grandparents.
 - * Lamia won't have finished her exams until next week.
 - * She hopes she will have found a good job by the age of 30.
 - * When I graduate in July, I think I will have taken 100 exams at this college.

- لاحظ الفرق بين المستقبل البسيط والمستقبل التام في الأمثلة التالية:
1. In 2026, the population of Egypt will grow to about 95 million.
By 2026, the population of Egypt will have grown to about 95 million.
 2. We expect we'll have finished work by five o'clock this evening.
We expect we'll finish work at five o'clock this evening.

* يمكن (مصدر + will) أن تحل محل (will have P.P) في المستقبل التام خاصة إن كنا نعبّر عن حدث مفتوح (طويل) وليس حدث مكتمل (منتهى).

- * I will run my own business by the end of next year.
- * By 2060, many jobs will have disappeared and new ones will be available.
- * By the year 2050, the population of the earth will probably reach ten billion.

The future Continuous tense زمن المستقبل المستمر

A. The active voice

تكوين الفعل في زمن المستقبل المستمر في المعنى المعلوم		
Affirmative Statements	will + be + V.ing	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	won't + be + V.ing	الجملة المنفية
Questions	will + فاعل + be + V.ing	السؤال

- * When he's 21, he will be working in a bank.
- * In fifty years, people will be living longer than they are now.

B. The passive voice

تكوين الفعل في زمن المستقبل المستمر في المعنى المجهول		
Affirmative Statements	will + be + P.P	الجملة المثبتة
Negative Statements	won't + be + P.P	الجملة المنفية
Questions	will + فاعل + be + P.P	السؤال

- * The patient will be operated on from two to four tomorrow.
- * We will be tested at this time tomorrow.

C. Usage

- الحالات التي يتم فيها استخدام زمن المستقبل المستمر
1. للتنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمراً في الحدث في وقت معين في المستقبل:
* When Maha's 25, she will be working in this company.
* Don't call me at nine tomorrow because I will be sleeping.
 2. للتنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمراً في الحدث في وقت معين في المستقبل كجزء من روتين معتاد:
* Next Friday, I will be training at the club. I usually do so on Friday.
* I will be doing my homework at nine tomorrow morning. I usually do so at this time.

My new Friend

3. للتنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمراً في المستقبل ثم يقطعه حدث آخر أو مدة معينة.
- * I will be having my dinner when they come to visit us tomorrow.
 - * At seven tomorrow, I will still be working on this research.

4. للتنبؤ بعملية مستقبلية أو ظاهرة مستقبلية.
- * In 100 years, people will be suffering from fewer diseases.
 - * We think fewer people will be living with these diseases in the future.

عندما نريد أن نشير إلى أحداث أو عمليات أو ظواهر محتملة أن تكون مستمرة في الحدث في وقت معين في المستقبل، نستخدم صيغة الفعل التالية للتعبير عن المستقبل المستمر.

ربما يكون مستمراً في الحدث
may + be + V.ing

- * In 100 years, people may be living in space.
- * When she's 25, she may be working in Paris.

D. Tense markers

- الكلمات الدالة على زمن المستقبل المستمر
- at ... o'clock tomorrow / from ... to ... tomorrow / this time tomorrow /
 - at (by) this time tomorrow / at midnight tonight / all tomorrow morning (evening)
 - this time next week / at this time next week / at this month next year. /
 - from to in the future. / still (المستقبل) /
 - during July and August / six years from now
 - * in + عدد + years / in + عدد + years' time / for the next + عدد + years.
 - * Between سنة في المستقبل and سنة في المستقبل.

- * Between 2025 and 2030, my daughter will be studying at university.
- * We'll be working on the project for the next fifteen years.

عندما نتنبأ بحدث مستقبلي يستغرق وقت قصير نستخدم المستقبل البسيط (مصدر + will).

عندما نتنبأ بحدث مستقبلي يستغرق وقت طويل نستخدم المستقبل المستمر (be + V.ing + will).

- * I think our team will win next week's competition.
- * At ten next Friday, I'll be flying to Washington. My flight leaves at 9:30.

هذا يعني أن:

المستقبل البسيط (مصدر + will) يعطينا معنى (سوف يحدث) ... للأحداث السريعة القصيرة.

المستقبل المستمر (be + V.ing + will) يعطينا معنى (سوف يكون يحدث) ... للأحداث المستمرة الطويلة.

* تعامل جيداً مع المثال التالي:

- * I think my son next week's exam.
- a. will be passing b. will passing c. will be passed d. will pass

* سيكون الاختيار الأمثل هو المستقبل البسيط (will pass) لأن المعنى المناسب (سوف يجتاز).

* لا نستطيع اختيار المستقبل المستمر (will be passing) الذي يعني (سوف يكون يجتاز) لأن المعنى لا يسمح.

Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams' Exercises

1. By 2030, well- paid jobs..... available in Egypt.
a. will be b. had been c. will have been d. were being (دور اول - 2017)
2. By the year 2060, the internet by everyone.
a. will have used b. will have been used c. will be using d. would be used (دور اول 2001)
3. By 2050 we hope that oil by clean energy.
a. will have replaced b. will have been replaced c. will replace d. has been replaced (2015 - دور ثان)
4. By my 50th birthday, I in my current profession for over 20 years.
a. will have been b. will be c. will be being d. will have (دور ثان 2012)
5. By 2020, eco-friendly cars on water and sunshine.
a. will running b. will have run c. would run d. run (دور اول 2014)
6. I'll have arrived home 6:00.
a. by b. at c. on d. in (أزهر 2013)
7. I'll have finished doing my homework 8 o'clock p.m tomorrow.
a. on b. at c. for d. by (السودان 2013)
8. By 2100, millions of trees and hundreds of forests
a. will have been saving b. will be saved c. will have saved d. will have been saved (السودان 2016)
9. By 2025, scientists believe that a cure for cancer will found.
a. have b. be c. have been d. being (أزهر 2011)
10. Sorry, your car won't by next week.
a. have been repaired b. be repairing c. be repaired d. have repaired (أزهر 2014)
11. you be going to Alexandria again this summer?
a. Will b. Shall c. Would d. Should (أزهر 2005)
12. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I my homework.
a. would be doing b. would do c. may do d. will be doing (دور ثان 2014)

Longman Exercises

13. By the end of next year, the ministry of education new curricula based on life skills
a. am going to introduce b. will introduce c. introduces d. will have introduced
14. People on the moon by the end of the 21st century. Who knows?!
15. By next month, my elder brother for 10 years.
a. will be marrying b. is going to marry c. will marry d. will have been married

16. By the end of next year, the government a new school in the village.
a. will be building b. will be built c. will have built d. will build
17. At one o'clock tomorrow, I lunch with my friends.
a. will be eating b. will have eaten c. would eat d. may eating
18. By ten o'clock tonight, I all my homework.
a. would finish b. am finishing c. will have finished d. will finish
19. I haven't seen my cousin in England for five years. I'm sure she a lot!
a. grows b. is growing c. is going to grow d. will have grown
20. At this time tomorrow, Ali chemistry.
a. may be studied b. will study c. will be studying d. will study
21. By 2050, most of the old buildings will replaced by modern offices.
a. be b. have c. been d. have been
22. Tomorrow from four to six, I TV.
a. will be watch b. will watch c. will be watching d. will watched
23. By 2050, electric cars petrol cars.
a. will have replaced b. will be replaced c. will replace d. will have been replaced
24. By the year 2500, everyone his own aeroplane.
a. will be owning b. will have been owned c. will have owned d. has owned
25. When we enough information, we'll tell you.
a. have b. had c. 'd had d. will have
26. I'll keep working hard the exam.
a. until I pass b. until do I pass c. until have I passed d. until I will pass
27. I won't be able to write the report until I the research.
a. doing b. did c. will do d. 've done
28. Once I've done the research, I the report.
a. have been started b. 'll start c. would start d. started
29. When the experiments, we'll collect all the results.
a. I'll do b. I've done c. I'm done d. I had done
30. Once you your homework, will you tidy your room please?
a. 'll finish b. had finished c. 've finished d. finished
31. Normal people won't travel in space until it less expensive.
a. has become b. became c. will become d. becoming
32. People electric cars until they have discovered a way for them to go longer distances without being charged.
a. won't have been bought b. won't be bought c. won't buy d. won't have bought

33. When I've fixed my computer, I you with your research.
a. will have helped b. had helped c. will help d. would help
34. When this lesson, I'll go to the library.
a. have I finished b. I've finished c. will I finish d. I will finish
35. He the operation by 5 pm.
a. won't finish b. won't be finished c. won't have finished d. will be finished
36. Once we exploring Mars, we'll probably find other places that have life.
a. had finished b. have finished c. finishing d. will finish
37. In three decades, schools computers instead of teachers.
a. will use b. will be using c. will be used d. will used
38. Within the next hundred years, we a way to use water for fuel.
a. will have found b. would find c. will be finding d. found
39. Ali won't be able to use the computer until it.
a. will he repair b. he will repair c. has he repaired d. he's repaired
40. Once I've finished reading this book, I it to you.
a. had lent b. lent c. will be lent d. 'll lend
41. When we the cake, we'll cut it into pieces.
a. have been baked b. baked c. will bake d. 've baked
42. We won't be able to stay in the hotel until they painting it.
a. 've finished b. will finish c. finished d. had finished
43. When Tarek has passed his driving test, he able to drive in Cairo.
a. 'll be b. have been c. had been d. was
44. Soon, my little brother too old for primary school.
a. will be b. will being c. will have d. will be being
45. Within the next few years, we won't able to see tigers in the wild, only in zoos.
a. be b. had been c. have been d. have

Advanced Exercises

46. How many cities by the time you retire?
a. will you have visited b. you will visit c. will you visit d. you will have visited
47. By the time the guests arrive, we are going to everything.
a. have been prepared b. be prepared c. be preparing d. have prepared
48. By the day of the conference, you will enough German.
a. have been learnt b. be learnt c. learning d. have learnt
49. I'm going to travel when I my studies.
a. will have finished b. will finish c. had finished d. have finished

50. When I have a cold, I usually my doctor.
a. am going to see b. am seeing c. see d. will see
51. If you want to be an archaeologist, you visit Egypt.
a. might b. will c. should d. would
52. By 2040, pollution
a. may eliminate b. may be eliminated c. may have eliminated d. may have been eliminated
53. Take this gun with you. Perhaps you use it to defend yourself.
a. may be b. are going c. would d. will
54. Don't worry. By the time you arrive I up the whole house.
a. will have tidied b. have tidied c. would tidy d. will have been tidied
55. You want to spend ten years in Europe. By that time you every major city then.
a. will have been visited b. will be visited c. will visit d. will have visited
56. You by the time I'm ready.
a. will finish b. would finish c. will have finished d. will be finished

Writing Skills (Lesson 4)

1. Blogs and Blog Comments المدونات على الانترنت والتعليقات عليها

- When writing comments on blogs, the comments focus on the advantages and disadvantages of the issue written about.
عند كتابة تعليقات على المدونة، تركز تلك التعليقات على مزايا وعيوب القضية المكتوب عنها.
- The comments reflect on the positive and negative effects that something (technology for example) has on everyday life.
تعكس التعليقات التأثيرات الإيجابية والسلبية لشيء ما (التكنولوجيا مثلا) على الحياة اليومية.
- When writing comments, we use the following expressions:
عند كتابة التعليقات، نستخدم التعبيرات التالية:

Expression	Meaning	Function
On one hand	من ناحية	to introduce a statement that is followed by another contrasting statement.
On the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	used to introduce a statement that contrasts with a previous statement or presents a different point of view.
On the whole	على العموم	to take everything into account.
On a big scale	على نطاق واسع	involving many people or things, or happening over a large area.
On a small scale	على نطاق ضيق	to a small degree.
On balance	في توازن	when all factors are taken into consideration.

- Blog commenting is a relationship between bloggers, bloggers and blog readers.
التعليق على المدونة هو العلاقة بين المدونين والمدونين وقراء المدونة.
- It is a great way to exchange ideas, thoughts or opinions about what people feel for a particular topic or a blog post.
إنه طريقة جيدة لتبادل الأفكار والآراء عن شعور الناس تجاه موضوع معين أو منشور على مدونة.
- Blog comments helps the blog to attract traffic and makes it social.
التعليقات على المدونة تساعد على جذب الزوار للمدونة وجعلها منشورة أكثر على مواقع التواصل.
- Blog readers or visitors leave a comment on to the blog posts in the form of questions if they want to ask anything, or a comment for appreciating the information shared.
قراء أو زوار المدونة يتركون تعليقات على منشورات المدونة على شكل سؤال إذا أرادوا أن يسألوا عن شيء ما أو تعليقا يقدّر المعلومات التي تمت مشاركتها.

2. Argumentative essays المقالات الجدلية

- An argumentative essay presents an extended, evidence-based argument. It requires a strong thesis statement—a clearly defined stance on your topic. Your aim is to convince the reader of your thesis using evidence (such as quotations) and analysis.
المقالات الجدلية يقدم المقال الجدلي حجة موسعة قائمة على الأدلة وتتطلب جملة رئيسية قوية - موقف محدد بوضوح حول موضوعك. هدفك هو إقناع القارئ بجملة رئيسية باستخدام الأدلة (مثل الاقتباسات) والتحليل.



Exercises on Writing Skills

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There are some things I like about my new smartphone, and some things I don't like. But I prefer it to my old phone.
a. on the one hand b. on the other hand c. on balance d. on a small scale
- My uncle, who's 58 plays video games, but I think most gamers are under 55.
a. on the whole b. on one hand c. on the other hand d. within a minute
- We the internet to do research for our homework.
a. on the whole b. depend on c. on one hand d. on the other hand
- On the one hand, calculators can solve complicated problems very quickly, but they make us lazy and slower at working out maths problems.
a. on the other hand b. on the one hands c. whole of the matter d. in balanced way
- Some technology, like dishwashers for example, can help us save time doing jobs in the house, but we have innovations like electric cars, which can help us solve global problems.
a. in that scale b. on a bigger scale c. scale that bigger d. depend on
- Blog readers write on blogs.
a. words b. poems c. comments d. contacts
- Blog comments focus on
a. the appearance of the bloggers b. the merits and demerits of the issue
c. the way the blogger talks d. the blogger's casual wear

- "On the whole" means
a. depending on b. on balance c. in general d. in special
- Blog comments reflect on
a. the negative sides of something b. the positive sides of something
c. the way the blogger writes d. the positive and negative sides of something
- Blog comments allows strengthening the relationship between
a. the blogger and the reader b. the blog and the post
c. the post and the comments d. the comments and the reader
- "On one hand" is used to
a. take everything into account. b. mean "to a small degree"
c. introduce a statement that is preceded by a contrasting idea.
d. introduce a statement that is followed by a contrasting idea.
- "On a big scale" means
a. involving everything and all things b. involving only a few things
c. involving nothing d. involving many things
- When all factors are taken into consideration, we use "....."
a. on one hand b. on balance c. on the other hand d. on a small scale
- Stopping climate change will require action on a large
a. whole b. balance c. scale d. depend
- Blog leave comments on posts.
a. marks b. kisses c. readers d. bloggers
- "On the whole" is used to say that
a. a contrasting idea is following b. everything is taken into account
c. we are talking about unknown things d. a contrasting idea has been mentioned
- Blog comments are a good way for
a. spreading love b. spreading peace c. sharing ideas d. witnessing ages
- "On a small scale" means
a. on the whole b. on one hand c. in general d. on a minor level
- Comments on a blog the positive and negative sides of the issue discussed.
a. reflect on b. ignore c. neglect d. suffocate
- "On the other hand" is used in a blog to
a. introduce a statement that contrasts with the previous one.
b. take some things into consideration.
c. introduce a statement contrasting with the following one.
d. say that everything is taken into account.

A: Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- distinguishes between a leader and a follower.
a. Innovation b. Contamination c. Delegation d. Estimation
- float in space because of zero-gravity.
a. Astronomers b. Astrologers c. Astronauts d. Asteroids
- He dived below the of the water.
a. surface b. roof c. service d. ceiling
- Fruit is a source of vitamins and energy.
a. compact b. connected c. communicated d. convenient
- Pluto is the farthest planet in the solar
a. discipline b. way c. system d. regime
- The footballer found himself immediately by screaming fans.
a. survived b. surrendered c. surrounded d. suppressed
- Look, there's a sandstorm. I the windows.
a. am closing b. will close c. would close d. am going to close
- June I will have gone to Spain.
a. In next b. Next c. By next d. To next
- I in Tokyo for three months before you visit.
a. would have been b. will have been c. will be d. will have
- My birthday party next Thursday. I've prepared everything.
a. is being held b. will be held c. shall be held d. is held
- By the age of 25, I expect I a car.
a. am going to buy b. am buying c. will buy d. buy
- Soha is going on holiday soon. This time next week, she in the Mediterranean.
a. will sail b. sailed c. would sail d. will be sailing
- By this time next year, three houses in this area.
a. will have built b. will be built c. will build d. will have been built
- Next week, my English lesson at 9 am.
a. will start b. is going to start c. is starting d. starts
- It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
a. are going to go b. will go c. go d. are going
- This time next week, Hamid in a school football match.
a. will be playing b. would play c. will play d. playing

B: Reading Comprehension

My new Friend

2. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

Terrorism is a very serious phenomenon, therefore it needs urgent solutions and a kind of direct and strong facing. The whole world is shocked by the acts committed by terrorists. Their actions are rightly condemned by many world leaders. Acts of terrorism are usually carried out to gain publicity for the cause which the terrorists espouse.

The need to gain publicity for their aims usually leads terrorist groups to admit to the acts of violence. Many countries spend a great deal of time and money on defence and intelligence. However, most of them are attacked by terrorists from time to time.

There are many different groups of terrorists throughout the world, each motivated by different things. This may be a sense of political injustice, religious enthusiasm or simply hatred of the people whom they attack. Often, they are an invisible enemy, who use stealth and secrecy to commit acts of brutality, and then disappear.

Most difficult to deal with are those terrorists who are prepared to die for their cause. Such is their fanatical hatred of the people whom they are attacking that they are prepared to commit suicide.

World leaders now realize the global nature of many modern issues. The need to eradicate terrorism is, surely, one of the most important of these.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why are countries shocked by terrorist attacks?
a. The attacks are in the capital. b. They think they are secure.
c. They think they are strong. d. They think they are civilized.
- Why is it difficult to stop the acts of terrorism?
a. Because terrorists hide themselves.
b. Because terrorists are ready to die for their cause.
c. Because terrorists are well-organized.
d. Because terrorists have modern weapons.
- How do world countries usually react to terrorist attacks?
a. They support them. b. They condemn them.
c. They feel helpless. d. They help terrorists.
- What strategy do terrorists use?
a. Publicity b. Stealth c. Love d. Hatred
- What does the underlined pronoun "these" refer to?
a. terrorists b. leaders c. issues d. victims
- What can the underlined word "espouse" be replaced by?
a. attack b. support c. hate d. condemn
- Terrorists carry out their acts of violence because of
a. a sense of political justice b. religious tolerance
c. religious enthusiasm d. love of the people they attack

8. Why are terrorists sometimes quick to admit their acts of violence?
 a. To make governments angry
 c. To kill more victims
 b. To gain publicity
 d. To get attention from other terrorists
9. How do world leaders feel about terrorist actions?
 a. They support them
 c. They advocate them
 b. They condemn them
 d. They defend them
10. Terrorists use stealth and to commit acts of brutality.
 a. publicity
 c. monopoly
 b. hiding
 d. diving

3. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

Hydroponics is the science of growing plants without soil. Although it sounds like a new technology, it is not by any means a modern idea. Ancient Egyptian writings describe the growing of plants in water. Early examples of hydroponic culture include the hanging gardens of Babylon and the floating gardens built by the Aztecs in Mexico.

Soil helps to anchor the roots of plants, but it has been demonstrated that it is not absolutely necessary for their growth. As long as it can obtain food from somewhere, a plant will grow. In hydroponics, nutrients are dissolved in water and the plant takes them in through its roots.

In the last 70 years, the technique has developed dramatically. It has become extremely popular in Europe and is widely used to grow food crops. Holland leads the world in hydroponic food production, with Canada a close second. Hydroponics has been used to grow vegetables in submarines and now astronauts are experimenting with it to produce food in space.

Many people see hydroponics as a solution to the world's growing food problems. As populations grow and cities increase in size, there is less and less land available for agriculture. Countries with limited space for crop cultivation can use hydroponics to produce food. It can also be used in areas with poor soil such as deserts. Scientists are now looking at ways of removing the salt from seawater and using it to mix the nutrient solution. Soon there will be no areas of the world where food cannot be produced.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What happens to the amount of land available to farming as cities grow bigger?
 a. It becomes limited.
 c. It is increased.
 b. It becomes cultivated.
 d. It is deserted.
2. What is hydroponics an answer to?
 a. The problem of feeding submarine crews.
 b. The problem of world food shortage.
 c. The problem of there being too much sea water.
 d. The problem of feeding astronauts in space.

3. Which place produces the most hydroponic food?
 a. Europe
 c. Canada
 b. Holland
 d. Space
4. What is the most suitable title for the first paragraph?
 a. Hydroponics now.
 b. The future of hydroponics.
 c. How hydroponics work.
 d. The history of hydroponics.
5. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
 a. The soil
 b. The root
 c. The plant
 d. The trunk
6. What does the word "obtain" mean?
 a. grow
 b. get
 c. manufacture
 d. allow
7. Why does the writer mention the floating gardens built by the Aztecs?
 a. To show that hydroponics is not a modern idea.
 b. To show us that the Aztecs were good builders.
 c. To show that floating gardens are attractive.
 d. To show that civilizations could do wonders.
8. Hydroponics is the science of growing plants
 a. without water
 b. in water
 c. in soil
 d. in sand
9. Nutrients are dissolved in water and the plant takes them through its roots.
 a. up
 b. down
 c. off
 d. in
10. Choose an unusual place where food has been produced by hydroponics.
 a. In water
 b. In space
 c. In soil
 d. In the desert

C: Writing

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "He put off the trip." "Off" is a/an
 a. adverb
 b. preposition
 c. adjective
 d. pronoun
2. We think that sports and are important things.
 a. games'
 b. game's
 c. games
 d. games,
3. Which sentence is correct?
 a. She is shorter then me.
 b. She is shorter than I am.
 c. She is shorter than me am.
 d. She is shorter then I am.
4. "I'll help you if I have the ability to do." "I'll" is considered a
 a. gerund
 b. pronoun
 c. contraction
 d. contradiction

D: Translation

5. Choose the best Arabic Translation:

1. We become more self-controlled as we get older because we are bigger and stronger.

أ. نحن نصبح أكثر سيطرة على نفوس الناس كلما تقدمنا في العمر لأننا نصبح أكبر وأقوي.
 ب. نحن نصبح أكثر سيطرة على أنفسنا كلما تقدمنا في العمر لأننا نصبح أكبر وأقوي.
 ج. نحن نصبح أقل سيطرة على أنفسنا كلما تقدمنا في العمر لأننا نصبح أكبر وأقوي.
 د. نحن نصبح أكثر سيطرة على أنفسنا كلما تأخرنا في العمر لأننا نصبح أكبر وأقوي.

2. In the future, the word "impossible" might be dropped from the dictionary.

أ. في المستقبل قد يتم استبعاد كلمة "مستحيل" من القاموس.
ب. المستقبل سوف يستبعد كلمة "مستحيل" من القاموس.
ج. في المستقبل استبعاد كلمة "مستحيل" من القاموس.
د. المستقبل قد يستبعد كلمة "مستحيل" التي هي في القاموس.

6. Choose the best English Translation:

أ. تطور الآداب والفنون في مجتمع ما يدل على رقي هذا المجتمع.

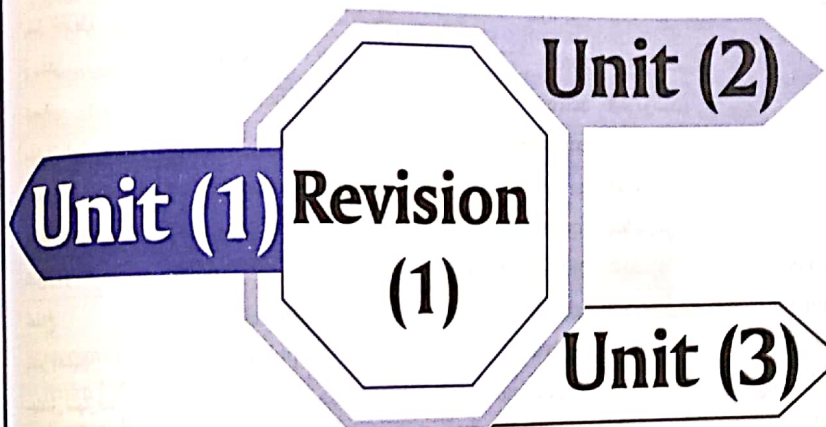
- The development of literature and arts in a certain society proves how promoted this society is.
- The development literature and arts in a certain society proves how promoted this society is.
- The development of literature arts in a certain society proves how promoted this society is.
- The development of literature and arts in a certain society prove how promoted this society is.

2. التعليم ليس غاية في حد ذاته لكنه وسيلة لغاية، فنحن نعلم الأطفال من أجل أن نعددهم للحياة.

- Education isn't an end in itself but it's a mean to an end, as we educate students to prepare them for life.
- Education isn't an end in itself but it's a means to an end, as we educate students to prepare them for life.
- Education isn't an end in itself but it's a means to an end, as we educate students prepare them for life.
- Education isn't an end in itself but it's a means to an end, as we educate students to prepare them life.



Review (1)



Review (A)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Meaning
journalist	صحفي	reporter
objective	موضوعي	balanced
prejudice	تحامل / تحيز	bias
confusing	مربك	misleading
opinions	آراء	points of view

Vocabulary

Reading and Critical Thinking

purpose	غرض / هدف	message	مغري	career	حياة مهنية
online show	عرض على النت	get lost	يضل طريقه	go missing	يضل الطريق
wooden puppets	عرائس خشبية	forest	غابة	wireless	لاسلكي
musical	فيلم موسيقي	actress	ممثلة	chemist	كيميائي
radioactivity	نشاط إشعاعي	engineer	مهندس	key skills	مهارات أساسية
creative	إبداعي	target audience	جمهور مستهدف	get across	يلهم
overcome	يتغلب على	focus	يركز	reality	حقيقة
characters	شخصيات	promote	يرقي / يطور	technologies	تكنولوجيات
recommend	يوصي / يرشح	space travel	السفر للفضاء	climate	المنطق
swarm robotics	سرب الروبوتات	software	البرمجيات	publish	ينشر (كتب)
programming	البرمجة	achievement	الجاز	car engineer	مهندس سيارات
banned	ممنوع	race days	أيام السباق	key facts	حقائق أساسية
quotes	أقتباسات	local area	منطقة محلية	top tips	أهم النصائح
advance	يتقدم	news story	قصةخبارية	effective	مؤثر
scar	وشم / علامة	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	products	منتجات
opinion essay	مقال عن الرأي	linking phrases	عبارات ربط	supporting examples	أمثلة مدعمة
a variety of	مجموعة متنوعة من	concluding paragraph	بداية ختامية	dear	عزيز

Prepositions

My new Friend

hear of	يسمع عن	come to life	يعود للحياة	look down on	ينظر لأسفل على
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	make up of	يتكون من	dream of	يحلم بـ
basis for	أساس لـ	link to	يربط بـ	in common	مشارك
take place	يحدث	take off	تقلع الطائرة	degree in	درجة علمية في
famous for	مشهور بـ	experiments on	تجارب على	travel into	يسافر في

Important Collocations & Expressions

get messages across to	يُفهم رسائل لـ	focus attention on	يركز الانتباه على
prepare a presentation to	يقدم عرض لـ	share knowledge with	يتشارك المعرفة مع
invent a technology	يخترع تكنولوجيا	CV (Curriculum Vitea)	السيرة الذاتية
develop key skills	يبنى مهارات أساسية	overcome the difficulties	يتغلب على الصعاب
aged 12	يبلغ من العمر 12 سنة	make some predictions	يقوم ببعض التنبؤات
send robots to space	يرسل الإنسان الآلي للفضاء	receive astronaut training	يتلقى تدريب رائد فضاء
get you started	تجعلك تبدأ	enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة
win the competition	يفوز بمسابقة	win the chance	يفوز بفرصة
present a view	يقدم وجهة نظر	get different opinions	يحصل على آراء مختلفة
mechanical engineering	هندسة ميكانيكية	space technologies	تكنولوجيا الفضاء
plastic-detecting robot	روبوت للكشف عن البلاستيك		
make important contributions to	يقدم مساهمات هامة لـ		
electric-powered racing cars	سيارات سباق تدار بالكهرباء		
Computing and Electronics Engineering PhD	دكتوراه هندسة الحاسبات والإلكترونيات		

Translation Words and Expressions

in recognition for (of)	اعترافاً بـ - تقديراً لـ	for the sake of	لأجل - لصالح
in return for	في مقابل	under control	تحت السيطرة
go to great lengths to ...	يقطع شوطاً كبيراً نحو	make it possible for	يجعل من الممكن لـ
in gratitude for	عرفاناً بالجميل	in all fields	في جميع المجالات
in respect to	فيما يخص	throughout the ages	عبر العصور
at an alarming rate	بمعدل مخيف	put into consideration / bear in mind	يضع في الاعتبار
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	at the expense of	على حساب
at the present time	في الوقت الحاضر	stand as an obstacle	يقف كعقبة
in the years to come	في السنوات القادمة	constitute a threat to	يشكل تهديداً لـ
pay attention to	يلتفت إلى (بهتم بـ)	pave the way to	يمهد الطريق إلى

1. DIGITHEATRE REVIEW

Scientists from history come to life in a new online show *involving* wooden puppets, music and theatre called Jina and the Stem sisters. It's a musical with great songs and a wonderful message. The show tells the story of some of the most inspiring women in science and mathematics.

In the story, Jina is on a journey and gets lost in a forest. There she meets women who have made important contributions to the history of STEM. The women include Hedy Lamarr, who was both an actress and inventor. Whilst at the top of her film career, she invented a technology called signal-hopping, which later was the basis for all modern wireless communication, including that found in mobile phones. Other women that Jina meets are Marie Curie, who was a physicist and chemist famous for her research and experiments on radioactivity, and Mae Jemison, an American engineer and astronaut. Marie Curie was the first woman to win the Nobel Prize award in two different fields. Mae Jemison was the first black woman to travel into space.

The scientists share their knowledge with Jina and help her to develop key skills to become a future STEM expert herself. On her journey, Jina also meets computer scientist Ada Lovelace and astronomer who show Jina the stars.

The show has been created for schools. It will hopefully encourage young people to find out more about these inspiring women in science and how they overcame the difficulties and prejudice in their way.

"The puppets were beautiful and completely immersed me in the characters", Mona, aged 12. "I definitely recommend it."

2. FOCUS ON JOBS

- CV (1):

Name: Sara Ahmed

Education: Degree in Computing and Electronics Engineering PhD in Swarm Robotics

Job: Senior developer, BSB Robotics

Duties: Developing software for robots

Biggest achievement: developed a new robot which will teach young people about programming

- CV (2):

Name: Amani Safwat

Education: Degree in Mechanical Engineering

Job: Car engineer, Mahindra Racing

Duties: Prepares cars for race days

Biggest achievement: made a contribution to the development of electric-powered racing cars.

3. Competition time

Do you dream of becoming a journalist? If so, enter our competition to win the chance see your story in our magazine. If you've got a fascinating story to report from your local area, we want to hear from you.

Here are some top tips from our Editor to get you started.

The winning story will be published in IntheNews. Find out more:

www.IntheNewsnews.com

Top tips for writing a news story:

- Present a view which is objective.
- Include the key facts, and make sure you check them.
- Try to avoid any prejudice.
- Don't include information that is inaccurate (not correct).
- Be careful not to include confusing figures.
- Interview people involved to get different opinions.

Language Notes

1. pay / cost:

* pay for + شئ / يدفع ثمن (شئ) + شئ ع:

* He paid for the publication of the book himself.

* How much did you pay for this car?

* pay (يدفع أجر لشخص) شخص:

* The mechanic won't do any repairs to the car till you pay him.

* pay for (يدفع بدلًا من) شخص:

* Don't pay for me. I'll pay for myself.

* pay in (by) cash نقداً:

* He paid for the shirt in cash.

* pay by + وسيلة دفع = pay with + أداة / وسيلة مائنة:

* Can I pay by credit card, please?

* Can I pay with a (my/the) credit card, please?

Revision (1)

- * كيف / يكلف / cost?
- * How much does the car cost?
- * This car cost me two hundred thousand pounds.
- * 2. how + what = what? / ظرف + مفعول
- * How wide is the underground? = What width is the underground?
- * 3. in this way = with this method / بالطريقة / على الطريق / by the way

بمسار الطريق

- * Make a timetable for your study. In this way, you will manage your time.
- * I met an old friend on the way to the club this morning.
- * By the way, how is your father today?
- * Lack of money is an obstacle in the way of development.

4. work / job / profession / career:

- * عمل. يمكن العمل (اسم لا يند)
- * I have got a lot of work to do.
- * Mr. Ali leaves work at three o'clock every day.
- * وظيفة. مهنة (اسم يند) job
- * He has got a job as a teacher.
- * I have got a lot of jobs to do.
- * المهنة (اسم لا يند) profession
- * Doctors and nurses belong to the medical profession.
- * مهنة / الحياة العملية / career
- * He started his career five years ago.
- * I spent most of my career working hard.

5. CV = Curriculum vitae / السيرة الذاتية / biography

- * I must send my CV to the company before next Saturday.
- * Taha Hussein wrote a biography about Omar Ibnul Khatlab.

6. ambition / goal / aim / purpose / function

- * My ambition is to visit the Far East.
- * The function of a hammer is to hit nails.

7. More notes:

اللفظ	اللفظ	اللفظ	اللفظ	اللفظ	اللفظ
examine	يفحص	بشأن	عن	مفكرة	check
escape	يفتح	للحرية	والتأكد	من شيء	escapism
go missing	يختفي	الطريق	be (get) lost = lose the way		
aged	كبير	السن	aging / ageing		
at the age of (aged)	في سن	السن	in the age (reign) of		
hear	يسمع	السمع	listen to		
hear of	يسمع	عن شخص	hear from		
hear of	يسمع	عن شخص	hear about		
publish	ينشر	الطباعة	spread		
confused	مربك	مربك	confusing		

consist of	يتكون من	contain / include	يحتوي على / يشمل
include	يشمل (قائمة)	involve	يشمل / يتضمن (شيء مفعول)
apply for	يقدم للالتحاق بـ	apply to	يقدم بطلب الى

Workbook Exercises

1. Choose the correct option (A, B, C, or D):

- We think the person who won the quiz is a He looked up the answers online, which was not allowed.
 - chat
 - bias
 - cheat
 - spin
- You must be of yourself. You've made a silly mistake.
 - proud
 - pleased
 - afraid
 - ashamed
- The of some planets in our solar system is rocky.
 - impact
 - face
 - scar
 - surface
- It is a to think that women always do housework.
 - prejudice
 - stereotype
 - type
 - incident
- What is the best for a headache?
 - treat
 - treatment
 - illness
 - surgeon
- People who leak books and join in are punished for their crime.
 - piracy
 - pirates
 - cheat
 - chat
- While I dinner, someone knocked on the door.
 - have
 - was having
 - did have
 - am having
- Doctors keep the health of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.
 - paper
 - records
 - placements
 - figures
- After he had examined the athlete, the doctor him permission to join the competition.
 - gave
 - given
 - had given
 - gives
- The train before we arrived at the station.
 - had left
 - has left
 - was leaving
 - will leave
- Mr Ali at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.
 - has worked
 - is working
 - will have been working
 - had been working
- The bridge over the valley is on a scale than the one over the river.
 - big
 - bigger
 - biggest
 - the biggest
- When the bus plunged off the bridge, it was the experience of my life. We were lucky that nobody was hurt.
 - most shocking
 - shocking
 - more shocking
 - less shocking
- For the next year, Ahmed on an engineering project in Alexandria.
 - was working
 - will have worked
 - will be working
 - had been working
- By 2050, I think that astronomers new planets outside our solar system.
 - will have found
 - find
 - have found
 - are finding

Revision (1)

16. We won't be able to live on Mars until we enough water there.
a. will find b. have found c. will be finding d. found
17. I felt really sick the party, so I went home.
a. while b. when c. during d. on
18. She has made a great contribution to social work in her neighbourhood. "Contribution" here is a synonym for
a. deprivation b. donation c. estimation d. relation
19. My brother was finally that he had been selected for the new position as Sales Manager.
a. asked b. said c. informed d. ordered
20. You should your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.
a. appear b. float c. inverse d. immerse
21. This is the most difficult situation I
a. had ever been faced b. have ever faced c. had ever faced d. have ever been faced
22. Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
a. The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
b. The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
c. The teacher said "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
d. The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
23. Pollution has a serious effect on our health. However, a lot of people are still ignorant of the importance of keeping the environment clean. This shows in ideas.
a. addition b. contrast c. possibility d. reason
24. In a hook sentence, you need to
a. sum up your essay by briefly revisiting the information covered.
b. grab the reader's attention to read the essay.
c. support, explain, illustrate, or provide evidence for the idea expressed in the topic sentence.
d. analyze two points of view by either comparing them, contrasting them, or both.

2. Read the following passage then choose the correct option (A, B, C, or D):

Few women had become pharaohs of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut, who is one of the most important females in Egyptian history. She was pharaoh from around 1479 BCE to 1458 BCE, making her one of the longest ruling females. During her 21 years of rule, she improved trade with other countries, which had stopped for many years during a war.

Pictures from the walls of ancient temples show Hatshepsut's ships trading with a country called Punt (now part of East Africa), from where her ships brought back gold, valuable stones and animal skins. They also brought back trees, which were planted when returned to Egypt. This is believed to be the first time foreign trees were grown in a different country. The journey to Punt was probably the first of other trading trips, which included visits to Byblos (now in Lebanon) and Sinai.

Money from this trade helped Hatshepsut to build many amazing buildings and bring many years of peace and wealth to Egypt. The many buildings that Hatshepsut had

My new Friend

built were usually larger and more impressive than buildings of the past. Her most famous buildings include the temples at Beni Hasan and at Deir el-Bahri, which some people call one of the wonders of the ancient world. But she also helped to repair other older monuments that had been damaged and started a period of artistic creativity.

Hatshepsut had many statues made of herself and you can find them in many of the world's greatest museums today. Many of the statues that were made at this time were in Thutmoside style (named after her father Thutmose I), which people today consider as the typical ancient Egyptian style.

The mummy of Hatshepsut and lots of information about her can be found at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.

25. What was Hatshepsut's main contribution to ancient Egypt?
a. She had statues built. b. She brought peace and wealth to the country.
c. She helped women become pharaohs. d. She was a female stereotype.
26. Which of the following do we not learn about Punt from the text?
a. Many trees grow there. b. People hunted animals there.
c. It was a rich country. d. It had many wars with ancient Egypt.
27. How could Hatshepsut afford to build so much during her rule?
a. She improved trade with other countries. b. She won wars with other countries.
c. She planted trees from other countries. d. She had many statues made of herself.
28. What do we know about the statues that were made of Hatshepsut?
a. They are unusual. b. They are in a style that people expect.
c. They are more impressive than other statues. d. They are in a very unpopular style.
29. Why you think many of ancient Egypt's older monuments had been damaged before Hatshepsut's rule?
a. They were usually larger and more impressive than buildings of the past.
b. She helped women become pharaohs.
c. She planted trees from other countries.
d. She had many statues made of herself.
30. In what ways is Hatshepsut a good role model for women today?
a. She improved trade with other countries.
b. She won wars with other countries.
c. She planted trees from other countries.
d. She had many statues made of herself.
31. According to the article, gold, valuable stones and animals were
a. finally kept in Punt b. sold to African countries
c. brought to Egypt d. restored before the reign of Hatshepsut
32. People consider Deir el-Bahri one of the wonders of the ancient world. *Wonders* is similar in meaning to
a. obstacles b. myths c. marvels d. superstitions
33. Which of the following is incorrect according to the passage?
a. Not many women had become pharaohs of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut.
b. Hatshepsut improved trade with other countries, built many amazing buildings and made wars with others during her reign.
c. We can see the statues made for Hatshepsut in many of the world's greatest museums today.
d. Thutmose III was Hatshepsut's stepson.
34. We can see the mummy of Hatshepsut
a. at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization b. in East of Africa
c. in the temples at Beni Hasan d. at a museum in Punt
35. Trade with other countries during Hatshepsut's rule.
a. flourished b. declined c. stopped d. was the same as

36. According to the article, which of the following gives incorrect information?

- During the reign of Hatshepsut, foreign trees were planted in Egypt.
- Hatshepsut had older monuments repaired.
- Hatshepsut ruled Egypt for more than twenty years.
- Today, people consider the Thutmoside style of making statues as a typical modern one.

37. Hatshepsut during her reign.
- had a lot of amazing buildings built
 - brought wealth to the country
 - achieved peace
 - all of the above

3. Read the sentences and choose the correct Translation from a, b, c, or d:

38. Innovation is endless. The more man seeks progress and welfare, the more he invents things that make life easier. However, do you think all inventions don't have negative aspects?

- الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما ابتكر الإنسان أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل، كلما سعى إلى التقدم والرفاهية، ومع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب إيجابية؟
- الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والتطور، كلما اشترى أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل، ولذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟
- الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، كلما ابتكر أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل ومع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟
- الرفاهية لا نهاية لها، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، كلما ابتكر أشياء تجعل الحياة أسرع. ومع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن الرفاهية ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟

39. Women have played a pivotal role in the renaissance of ancient and modern societies. Through this role, they demonstrated their ability to achieve positive change in those societies.

أ. لقد أظهرت المرأة دوراً محورياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، واستعرضت في تلك الفترة قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير النسبي في تلك المجتمعات.

ب. لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً محورياً في بناء المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور رغبتها في تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.

ج. لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً عادياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك الحضارات.

د. لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً محورياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.

40. من المتوقع أن تتوقف طباعة الصحف في العقود القليلة القادمة. سنقرأ الأخبار عبر الإنترنت، لذلك سنحتاج إلى معرفة المزيد عن المواقع الإلكترونية الجديدة التي يمكن أن تعطينا وجهة نظر متوازنة.

- In the next few decades, I think that we will have continued printing newspapers. We won't be reading the news offline, so we will need to know about new books that can give us a balanced point of view.
- In the next few years, I think that we will have stopped painting newspapers. We will be borrowing the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a fixed point of view.

- In the next few decades, it is expected that printing newspapers will have stopped. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.
- In the next few decades, I think that we will have stopped printing newspapers. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.

يهدف منتدى شباب العالم المقام في مصر سنوياً إلى الدعم الكامل للشباب، وتحديد كل المشكلات التي تواجههم وحلها.

- The international Men Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully support young people and identify and solve all the problems they face, to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive improvement.
- The World Youth Forum, which is annually held in Egypt, aims to fully support youth and identify and solve the problems they face, to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development.
- The International Youth Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, seems to fully care for young people and simplify and solve the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in improving society and achieving comprehensive development.
- The local Youth Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully look for young people and identify and postpone all the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development.

42. تهتم الدولة دائماً بحماية حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمؤلفين والناشرين، لذا تفرض عقوبة صارمة على القرصنة الفكرية وتسريب الكتب حفاظاً على حقوق المنتجين ودور النشر.

- The estate is always takes care of protect the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leak in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing homes.
- The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it propose a strict penalty on intellectual privacy and book diversion in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.
- The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leaking in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.
- The estate is always interested in protecting the intellectual liberty rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book lake in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

Revision (1)

4.3. **Write an argumentative essay of about 200 words on one of these topics:**

1. Write about the advantages and disadvantages of international sports competitions such as the FIFA World Cup and the Olympic Games.
2. Write about the pros and cons of tabloid and broad sheet reports.

Test on Review (A)

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. When writing a point of view, you should make it
a. prejudiced b. objective c. object d. subjective
2. My sister has a in mechanical engineering.
a. grade b. greed c. greedy d. degree
3. We ran a and I was the fastest.
a. resort b. race c. prize d. pierce
4. When does the plan and when does it land?
a. take on b. take up c. take off d. take down
5. He was for the best actor award.
a. nominated b. mantled c. handled d. wondered
6. by the sunny weather, I decided to explore the woods.
a. Inspired b. Volunteered c. Regarded d. Considered
7. I my work before I took a break.
a. finish b. have finished c. finishing d. had finished
8. We weren't hungry because we
a. have already eaten b. has already eaten c. had already eaten d. already eaten
9. On seeing the fire, she for help.
a. have shouted b. had shouted c. was shouted d. shouted
10. After Mona had played the piano, she her sister with her homework.
a. was helping b. helped c. has helped d. had helped
11. By the time Nadeh arrived, we lunch, so there was nothing for her to eat.
a. had had b. were having c. have had d. had
12. Hardly from abroad when he was asked to travel again.
a. has he returned b. he has returned c. he had returned d. had he returned
13. After, he became a journalist and worked for a good newspaper.
a. graduated b. had graduated c. having graduate d. graduating
14. Mona to Germany and she is still there.
a. is going b. has been c. has gone d. been

My new Friend

15. The last time he a concert was in 2005.
a. has given b. gave c. giving d. have given
16. He two gold medals since he joined the National Team.
a. has got b. was getting c. got d. is getting

B. Reading Comprehension

2. **Read the passage and the answer the questions:**

Plants will grow wherever there is enough moisture, light, warmth and nourishment in the soil. Many species have had to adapt to survive in harsh conditions.

Desert plants live in places where temperatures are very high and there is very little water. Desert grasses have very long roots which can reach water far below the ground. Finding water is one problem, losing it is another. A broad-leaved tree like the birch loses up to 400 litres of water a day from its leaves that's enough to fill about 1,200 soft drink cans. Such a tree would not last long in a desert. The Cacti of the North American deserts have thin spines instead of leaves. These have a very small surface area so almost no water is lost through them. The pointed spines also protect the plant from being eaten by animals.

Some plants live in mountainous areas where the sun is very strong in summer but temperatures are very low in winter. These plants have fine hairs on their leaves to prevent them from being burnt by the sun and to stop them freezing in winter.

Bromeliads are small plants which grow in tropical rainforests. If they grow on the ground, they wouldn't get enough light because of the trees around them. So they grow on the branches of tall trees where sunlight can reach their leaves.

Each plant has developed its own particular way of coping with the conditions in which it grows. The result is that there are very few places in the world where there are no plants at all.

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What are cacti?
a. Plants which grow in deserts. b. Plants with very fine hairs on their leaves.
c. Plants which lose a lot of water. d. Plants with very broad leaves.
2. Why do you think animals don't eat cacti?
a. They don't taste nice. b. They don't contain enough water.
c. They are poisonous. d. The spines are sharp and painful.
3. What absorbs water from underground?
a. The root b. The bark c. The leaf d. The trunk
4. Which of the following sentences is true?
a. The fine hairs on the leaves of mountain plants are only useful in summer.
b. There is no water at all in desert areas.
c. There are no areas in the world in which there are no plants.
d. Plants with narrow leaves lose less water than plants with wide leaves.

Revision (1)

5. What does the underlined word "these" refer to?
 a. The leaves b. The deserts c. The spines d. The cacti
6. What do the underlined words "coping with" mean?
 a. adapting to b. disagreeing with c. being able to d. having problems with
7. Moisture, light, and nourishment in the soil are necessary for plants to grow.
 a. cold b. heating c. warmth d. factory
8. Cacti have spines to protect
 a. water from being drunk by people b. plants from being eaten by animals
 c. animals from being killed by people d. people from dying from hunger
9. Broad-leaved trees don't live in the desert because
 a. they lose a lot of water b. they gain a lot of weight
 c. they get very high temperatures d. they die quickly
10. There are plants in most places in the world because each plant has developed its own particular way of the conditions in which it grows.
 a. coping with b. dying from c. cooperating with d. escaping from

3 Read the passage and the answer the questions:

The man who first tried to fly faced many difficulties. One of the greatest difficulties faced by him was how to find a suitable engine. Steam engines were the first to be tried in aeroplanes, but they were too heavy to be of any real use. One such machine, made in 1884, was driven by a steam engine. It is said to have risen for a moment off the ground. Another rose, but fell and was damaged. When the petrol engine was invented, real success was obtained because it was very light but despite this, the power it developed was great.

Orville Wright, and his brother Wilbur, two Americans, had made a lot of experiments and had taken great trouble to study the art of flying in gliders before they tried to fly their planes. A glider is like an aeroplane but it has not got an engine.

Other people followed the Wright brothers in their footsteps. Louis Bleriot, a Frenchman, flew across the English Channel from Calais to Dover in 1909. In 1919 Sir John Alcock and Sir Arthur Brown made the first flight across the Atlantic Ocean and in the same year an aeroplane flew from England to Australia. The age of air travel had arrived. After that air travel had developed over many years. In our present age, it is very convenient and promoted.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is meant by "Other people followed the Wright brothers in their footsteps"?
 a. They went with them. b. They followed their footprints.
 c. They did as they had done. d. They were friendly with them.
2. When did an aeroplane fly from England to Australia?
 a. in 1920. b. in 1918. c. in 1919. d. in 1909.
3. How is air travel today?
 a. It is inconvenient. b. It is improved. c. It is difficult. d. It is harsh.
4. How many times did the machine made in 1884 rise?
 a. Once b. Twice c. Four times d. Twice

My new Friend

5. What does the underlined word "it" refers to?
 a. The steam engine. b. The aeroplane. c. The glider. d. The petrol engine.
6. What does the underlined word "suitable" mean?
 a. right b. worse c. sociable d. broken
7. The Wright Brothers had studied the art of flying in
 a. diggers b. gliders c. drivers d. triggers
8. What was the biggest problem that faced the men who tried to fly?
 a. Finding a good destination b. Finding a suitable engine
 c. Keeping balance d. Finding the right way to fly
9. Why was the steam engine not suitable for use in aeroplanes?
 a. It was too light b. It was too heavy c. It was broken d. It stopped working
10. flight(s) took place in the year 1919.
 a. One b. Three c. Two d. No

3 Writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Many new projects have been carried out there. This is a/an voice.
 a. direct b. strong c. passive d. active
2. runs through nine African countries.
 a. River Nile b. The River Nile c. River Nile d. The river Nile
3. We conclude an essay by
 a. summarizing the body paragraphs. b. paraphrasing the thesis.
 c. introducing new arguments. d. adding new content.
4. A paragraph is a
 a. piece of writing made up of only one sentence.
 b. series of paragraphs about one main idea, or point.
 c. series of sentences that talk about various subjects.
 d. series of sentences that talk about a specific subject.

3 Translation

5 Choose the best Arabic Translation:

1. Camouflage is a method of hiding which allows an object to remain unnoticed, by blending with its environment.
 أ. التمويه إخفاء للطريقة تسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يتحدج مع بيئته.
 ب. التمويه طريقة للاختفاء تسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يتحدج مع بيئته.
 ج. التمويه طريق خفي يسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يتحدج مع بيئته.
 د. التمويه بطريقة الاختفاء يسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يتحدج مع بيئته.
2. People tell lies for fear of punishment or to seem intelligent or powerful.
 أ. يخاف الناس من الغيب وانقلب لكي يبدوون أذكاء أو أقوياء.
 ب. يكذب الناس طلباً لتخوف أو لكي يبدوون أذكاء أو أقوياء.



Unit (4)



Taking care of ourselves

العناية بأنفسنا

Objectives

Reading	An article about burn-out; An extract from the poem Suppose by Phoebe Carey.
Writing	An email to a friend to offer help; An essay about changes you have experienced in your life.
Listening	Voice messages about well-being.
Speaking	Discussions to find solutions for mental health problems.
Language	Modal verbs; Making suggestions.
Life skills	Self-management; Resilience.

Unit 4: Mental health and well-being

Part 1: Lessons (1-2)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
burnout	إرهاق	a situation where you can't do anything because you're so tired and stressed.
exhausted	منهك / مرهق	describing the feeling of being very tired.
cope with	يواجه / يتعامل	to deal successfully with something difficult.
well-being	الرفاهية	how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.
mental health	صحة عقلية / صحة نفسية	how a person thinks and the emotions they feel.
improve	يحسن / يتحسن	to get better.
promote	يشتر / يروج	to tell people about something.
self-care	رعاية ذاتية	taking care of your body and how you feel.
time management	إدارة الوقت	organizing when you do things and for how long.
stress	ضغط / التوتر	a feeling of being very worried and scared.
frown	يصبح عابس / يتجهم	to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression, moving your eyebrows together.
pout	يهرم شفاهه / يهرطم	to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy, or in order to look sexually attractive
scold	يؤنب / يصف	to angrily criticize someone, especially a child, about something they have done.
suppose	يفترض	to think that something is probably true, based on what you know.
alter	يتغير / يغير	to become different, to make somebody / something different.
clear off	يزول / ينتهي	to go or run away.

Vocabulary

My new friend

Reading and Critical Thinking

situations	مواقف	headache	صعاع	sunshine	ضوء الشمس
stressed	مضغوط / مضطرب	pain		dressed	مرتدي
stressed	مضغوط / مضطرب	shoulders	اكتاف	pour	يصب
stressed	مضغوط / مضطرب	back	الظهر / الخلف	clear off	يتخلص من
emotion	عاطفة	responsibility	مسؤولية	please	يرضي
emotional	عاطفي	responsible	مسؤول	reaction	رد فعل
emotionally	عاطفياً	behaviour	سلوك / تصرف	creative	إبداعي
organize	ينظم	conversations	محادثات	creativity	إبداع
press	يضغط	increase	زيادة / يزيد	creation	خلق / إبداع
pressure	ضغط	increasing	متزايد	frustrated	محبط
pressing	مُلح / ضاغط	increasingly	يشكل متزايد	alter	يغير
perfectly	بشكل تام	particular	خاص	alteration	تغيير / تعديل
connection	اتصال	in particular	خصوصاً	wise	حكيم
chance	فرصة	whatever	مهما	concentrate on	يركز على
snack	وجبة خفيفة	importance	أهمية	factors	عوامل
feelings	مشاعر	influence	تأثير / يؤثر	concentration	تركيز
lonely	شاعر بالوحدة	regularly	بانتظام	general	عام
the countryside	الريف	physical	بدني	periods	فترات
break	راحة / يكسر	reduce	يقلل	divide into	يقسم إلى
categories	أصناف / أنواع / فئات	urgent	مهم / ملح	stretch	يتمدد
alarm	منبه	regular basis	أساس منظم	produce	ينتج
endorphins	الاندورفين	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	fresh air	هواء نقي
unhealthily	بشكل غير صحي	caffeine	مادة الكافيين	diary	مفكرة
external	خارجي	hurt	يؤذي	priority	أولوية
perceive	يرى	raincoat	بشطر مطر	remain	يبقى
perception	إدراك	adapt	يتكيف / يتأقلم	difficulties	صعوبات
structures	تركيب	suggestion	اقتراح	past regrets	ندم في الماضي

Prepositions

Prepositions	غضب من شخص	on the bus
go for a walk	angry with	يذهب للتنزه
pressure on	deal with	يواجه
forget about	benefit from	يستفيد من
get back	stay up	يبيت من
pour down	thank for	يشكر على
	write down	يكتب / يذاكر

Important Collocations & Expressions

in the order of priority	ترتيب الأولوية	do revision	يؤم بالمراسة
get enough sleep	يحصل على نوم كافٍ	make a revision plan	يخطط لمراسية
do everything perfectly	يفعل كل شيء بشكل تام	plan your revision	يخطط لمراسية
experience burnout	يسر برهق	do the best	يذل أقصى ما لديه
stop doing hobbies	يوقف عن القيام بهواياته	find it difficult to sleep	يد من الصعب النوم
start thinking about	يبدأ في التفكير في	take responsibility for	يولي مسئولية
do activities outside of	يؤم بشئمة خارج	change this behaviour	يغير هذا السلوك
increase your well-being	تزيد من رفاهيتك	on a regular basis	على أساس منظم
cause burnout	تسبب الإرهاق	have a negative effect on	له تأثير سلبي على
avoid burnout	تجنب الإرهاق	spend more time on	يفضي المزيد من الوقت في
take a break	بالراحة	follow advice	يتبع النصيحة
make a suggestion	يقدم الاقتراح	stay in bed	يبيت في الفراش
have strange dreams	يحللم بخلام غريبة	have the energy to	له الطاقة لكي
make time for	يخص وقت لـ	take more exercise	يؤم بالمزيد من التمارين
produce endorphins	تنتج الاندورفين	make a decision	يخذ قرار
Have you considered (thought about) + V-ing?			هل فكرت في
do (sport) / a hobby / homework / exams			يؤم (رياضة) / هواية / يعمل الواجب / يمتحن
can't live their lives normally anymore			لم يعد يستطيع المعيشة بشكل طبيعي
the result of poor time management skill			نتيجة ضعف مهارات ادارة الوقت
have / get / feel a headache			يصلب بعداع
cause / give a headache			يسبب صداع
have 'real' conversations with			يتحدث فعلياً مع

My new friend

promote better mental health	يعزز الصحة العقلية بشكل أفضل
make sunshine in the house	يجعل ضوء الشمس بالبيت
take a five-minute break	بالراحة لمدة خمس دقائق
avoid having too much caffeine	تجنب تناول الكثير من الكافيين.
suggest a special technique	يقترح أسلوب خاص

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
burnout	إرهاق	exhaustion / tiredness	energy / strength / revitalization
exhausted	منهك / مرهق	burnt-out / tired / wearied	relaxed / active / energetic
cope	يتعامل	manage / get along / carry on	fail / decline / give up
well-being	رفاهية	welfare / prosperity / healthiness	sadness / suffering / ill-being
mental	عقلي	cognitive / intelligent / reasoning	physical / bodily / non-mental
improve	يحسن	amend / enhance / upgrade	damage / harm / worsen / reduce
promote	يرقي / يبرز	advance / elevate / boost / upgrade	remove / degrade / lower / reduce
stress	ضغط	pressure / strain / tension / anxiety	comfort / consolation
frown	يقطب حاجبيه	stare / glare / pout / frown	grin / laugh / smile
pout	يثرم / يضايق	frown / lower / growl	grin / laugh / smile
scold	يؤيخ / يوبخ	scorn / mock / belittle	approve / endorse / praise
suppose	يفترض	assume / guess / presume / speculate	demonstrate / prove / determine
emotional	عاطلي	burning / passionate / enthusiastic	impersonal / unemotional
strange	غريب	abnormal / funky / extraordinary	common / average / regular
external	خارجي	outer / outside / outward	internal / interior / inside
urgent	ملح / ضروري	demanding / intense / crucial	incidental / low-pressure
reduce	يقلل	decrease / lessen / lower / decline	increase / boost / expand
chance	فرصة	occasion / room / opportunity	
categories	تصنيفات	divisions / classes / families	
alter	يغير	change / modify / vary	fix / freeze / stabilize
frustrated	محبط	disappointed / dissatisfied	content / pleased / glad / satisfied

Reading Texts

1. How to avoid burnout

Burnout is a mental health problem that is affecting more and more people today because there's so much pressure on us to work hard and do everything perfectly. When you experience burnout, you feel exhausted and you usually don't spend enough time doing things you enjoy. You might stop doing hobbies that you used to enjoy and you may become ill more often than usual. As a result, people experiencing burnout feel like they can't live their lives normally anymore.

Burnout is usually caused by both decisions you make about things that you can control, for example, the amount of homework you have to do, and situations you can't control, for example if you spend a lot more time on your homework than you have to because you want to do it perfectly. This is your choice or the result of poor time management skills.

If you're in danger of suffering from burnout, you will usually experience a lot of stress, find it difficult to sleep and have a lot of headaches or pain in your shoulders and back.

In order to improve your mental health, you need to take responsibility for the things that you can control. For example, if you find it difficult to say 'no' when people ask you to do activities outside of school and you feel exhausted because of this, you could change this behaviour. Then you can start thinking about activities you really enjoy doing. These should be activities that help you to forget about everything else that is happening, such as drawing or painting, doing a sport or having 'real' conversations with your friends and family. Activities like these are examples of self-care. They help to promote better mental health and increase your well-being.

2. Suppose

by Phoebe Cary

Suppose you're dressed for walking,
And the rain comes pouring down,
Will it clear off any sooner
Because you scold and frown?

And wouldn't it be nicer
For you to smile than pout,
And so make sunshine in the house
When there is none without?

And suppose the world don't please you,
Nor the way some people do,
Do you think the whole creation
Will be altered just for you?

And isn't it, my boy or girl,
The wisest, bravest plan,
Whatever comes, or doesn't come,
To do the best you can?

3. Studying can be stressful.

Here are four tips to make life easier.

Tip 1: Divide the things you need to do into four categories. These are: (1) urgent and important (2) important but not urgent (3) not important but urgent (4) not important and not urgent. Using this system, you will quickly be able to see what you have to do now and what can wait.

Tip 2: When studying for a long time, you should know when to take a rest. This will help you to avoid burnout and continue studying. Use a clock with an alarm. After every twenty-five minutes, take a five-minute break and stand up and stretch.

Tip 3: You should *do exercise* on a regular basis. Exercise will produce endorphins, which are chemicals that help to reduce stress. If the exercise is outside, you will also benefit from some fresh air.

Tip 4: You should not eat unhealthily when you are studying. A salad is quick to prepare and fruit is a better snack than chocolate. You should also avoid having too much caffeine. Water is much healthier.

4. A dialogue between Leila and Nadia

Leila : Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Nadia: Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.

Leila : Oh no! Why don't you sit down and tell me about it?

Nadia: Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

Leila : That sounds like a lot. Have you considered telling your parents you are stressed?

Nadia: I don't want to worry them.

Leila : You could *write down* everything you have to do this week in order of priority and say 'no' to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, how about doing your

healthy	سليم بدنيا	sane	سليم عقليا
get (feel) a headache	يشعر بالصداع	give (cause) a headache	يسبب الصداع
however + ظرف / ظرف + فعل + فاعل + صفة / ظرف	برغم	Whatever + اسم + فعل + فاعل + اسم	بمهما
benefit	يلغي - يستفيد - فائدة (استفادة)	benefit from	يستفيد من
weather	طقس (فترة محدودة)	climate	مناخ (عموما / لفترة أطول)
weather	طقس	whether	فما
weather forecast	التنبؤ الجوية	weather expert	خبير طقس
adapt (adjust) to	يتكيف مع	adopt	يبنى
alarm	جهاز إنذار لخطر ما / يخيف	ultimatum	إنذار لخطر كبير اذا لم يفعل شخص شئ
alarming	مزعج - مخيف	alert	تخدير / يحذر
strange	غريب / عجيب / غير مألوف	foreign	أجنبي من بلد أخرى
stranger	شخص غريب	foreigner	مواطن أجنبي
increase in	زيادة في	increase by	يزداد بنسبة كذا
increasing	متزايد	on the increase	متنامي - متزايد



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I am always studying and when I have free time I just want to stay in bed. I think I'm suffering from
a. burnout b. improvement c. involvement d. well-being
- If you don't slow down and take a break, you'll out very quickly.
a. carve b. burn c. return d. turn
- I feel lonely and I'm beginning to have strange dreams. I'm worried about my health.
a. mutual b. mental c. manual d. manure
- Few people have daily contact with people.
a. mentally disabled b. mental ability c. mental disability d. mental disabled
- I think schools should the importance of looking after yourself.
a. promote b. remote c. remove d. move
- If you are successful, you can expect
a. donation b. promotion c. vulnerable d. omission
- I don't have the time to do everything I want to do. I'm bad at
a. time management b. engagement c. improvement d. intention
- Many companies did not to ride out the recession.
a. succeed b. pass c. manage d. courage
- My father has to cope with a lot of in his job and uses sport to help him relax.
a. stressful b. stressed c. stress d. surround

- It's a very situation for everyone concerned.
a. stressed b. stressful c. surrounding d. stress
- The minister the need for economic sacrifice.
a. steamed b. screamed c. creamed d. stressed
- He was feeling very and tired.
a. stress b. stresses c. stressed d. successful
- Mohamed has started to exercise regularly. It has helped him improve his general a lot. He is much more relaxed and positive now.
a. attaining b. compiling c. well-behaved d. well-being
- Amal is always and she never has the energy to do anything.
a. exhausted b. exhausting c. exhaust d. exhaustion
- She was taken to hospital suffering from
a. attachment b. exhaustion c. engagement d. involvement
- I have myself doing too much work.
a. intended b. attended c. comprehended d. exhausted
- My mum knows how to with difficult situations really well.
a. contact b. connect c. communicate d. cope
- She's struggling to cope the heavy workload.
a. in b. with c. for d. about
- My grandmother said walking in the countryside helped her physical and mental health.
a. prove b. approve c. curve d. improve
- You must always make time for If you look after yourself, you will be able to help others as well.
a. share b. self-care c. stare d. stress
- Looking after small children can be very
a. tiredness b. tire c. tired d. tiring
- How do you intend to with this problem?
a. treat b. cure c. heal d. deal
- Love, hate, joy, fear and grief are
a. intentions b. emotions c. volitions d. violations
- He was angry; he and closed his eyes tightly.
a. frowned b. grained c. gained d. shrugged
- She looked up with a puzzled on her face; she was angry with him.
a. gown b. gloom c. drain d. frown
- As she spoke, her eyes were mirthful, while her lips
a. pierced b. pouted c. counted d. donated
- When I told her the bad news, her lips were set in a of annoyance.
a. pout b. shut c. cry d. mount

28. Rose the child gently for her bad behaviour.
a. sold b. scolded c. praised d. encouraged
29. I all the tickets have been sold now, have they?
a. support b. oppose c. enclose d. suppose
30. Journalists who strongly the government can be heavily fined or imprisoned.
a. pout b. frown c. praise d. criticize
31. Sitting for too long on the computer usually me a headache.
a. makes b. gives c. cause d. has
32. When I sit for too long on the computer, I usually a headache.
a. cause b. get c. give d. make
33. Reading too much me feel headaches.
a. gives b. makes c. causes d. does
34. When the wound is healed, the is forgotten.
a. complain b. plain c. pain d. bin
35. He the coffee with a very unsteady hand.
a. frowned b. pouted c. plied d. poured
36. Please clear the dinner things and then you can watch television.
a. up b. out c. down d. off
37. A product manager is for product profitability.
a. response b. respond c. responsible d. responsibility
38. We must each take for our own actions.
a. responsibility b. charged c. opportunity d. equality
39. Are you willing to responsibility for your life, to accept we create our reality?
a. give b. make c. do d. take
40. Nothing me more than to be allowed to take supper with them.
a. pissed b. pleasure c. happy d. pleased
41. He's always moralizing about the of young people.
a. behaviour b. behave c. half d. having
42. Many firms are concentrating on their markets overseas.
a. reducing b. decreasing c. limiting d. increasing
43. I can see an maturity in how she understands the world.
a. increasingly b. increase c. increasing d. increasingly
44. The law was passed in response to public
a. reassure b. pressure c. treasure d. occurrence
45. Doing your work will help you get promoted.
a. probably b. improbably c. proper d. perfectly
46. Everyone liked my father; he was the gentleman.
a. inappropriate b. ugly c. perfect d. selective

47. Nothing can the fact that the refugees are our responsibility.
a. chance b. alter c. ultra d. alert
48. We will accept ultimate responsibility for happens.
a. however b. whatever c. whoever d. whomever
49. strong he is, he couldn't defeat his opponent.
a. Whatever b. However c. Whenever d. Wherever
50. It seems that the disease is now under
a. compact b. contact c. control d. casual
51. Large areas of the city were by the Mafia.
a. controlled b. rolled c. rowed d. rated
52. He felt extremely when things went against him.
a. delighted b. frustrated c. disappointing d. shiny
53. The loud noise made it hard for me to on my work.
a. communicate b. contaminate c. collect d. concentrate
54. I find that yoga improves my powers of
a. concentration b. counter c. compact d. addiction
55. The of the poem is that all people need one another.
a. message b. massage c. missile d. massive
56. It's healthier to on fruit rather than chocolate.
a. suck b. snack c. swipe d. sweep
57. The student is starving for friendship.
a. only b. alone c. lonely d. lime
58. Wash to ensure personal hygiene.
a. regularity b. irregular c. regular d. regularly
59. They spent a pleasant afternoon motoring through the
a. countryside b. counter c. encounter d. crater
60. Tomorrow's weather will be dry with sunny
a. brains b. drains c. periods d. breads
61. Her spiritual beauty outshone her beauty.
a. physician b. physical c. physicist d. physics
62. We've been doing experiments 24 hours without a
a. bake b. brake c. broke d. break
63. Take these antibiotics; they will help the swelling.
a. deduce b. introduce c. reduce d. induce
64. I hope this disagreement does not us.
a. share b. divide c. spill d. spell
65. There are three of accommodation - standard, executive and deluxe.
a. categories b. groceries c. bounces d. drives

66. Can you come to the phone? It sounds
a. question b. urgent c. regular d. base
67. They are now living together on a permanent
a. basic b. essential c. basis d. bath
68. The road away for tens of miles.
a. catches b. stretches c. snatches d. brings
69. I felt a growing sense of when he did not return that night.
a. alarm b. alter c. lamp d. a lamb
70. During vigorous exercise the brain generates chemicals called
a. endorphins b. dolphins c. diamonds d. detergents
71. Happiness doesn't depend on any conditions. It is governed by our mental attitude.
a. inner b. internal c. external d. extend
72. The Government gave to reforming the legal system.
a. responsible b. priority c. popularity d. regularly
73. The duty to protect my sister is to all others.
a. proper b. perfect c. prior d. bearer
74. It is important to disentangle all the that may be causing your stress.
a. falcons b. factories c. factors d. fries
75. The body produces which are natural painkillers.
a. cosmetics b. costumes c. statues d. chemicals
76. I can't any difference between these coins.
a. receive b. perceive c. reverse d. reserve
77. Our of things is often influenced by subjective factors, such as tiredness.
a. perceivable b. receipt c. perception d. pressure
78. The children are finding it hard to to the new school.
a. adopt b. addict c. direct d. adapt
79. Most living creatures are capable of when compelled to do so.
a. addiction b. adaptation c. intention d. infection
80. Egypt has greatly extended its in world affairs.
a. influence b. influential c. infect d. affect
81. Public opinion is by the small elite who control the media.
a. intended b. attended c. infected d. influenced
82. Geologists study the of the rocks.
a. builder b. structure c. culture d. mature
83. He who will not learn when he is young will it when he is old.
a. greet b. regret c. return d. turn
84. The country's economy is in of falling apart.
a. danger b. serious c. hazardous d. serial

85. They from health problems and fear the long term effects of radiation.
a. complain b. suffer c. surrender d. surround
86. My secretary takes all of my appointments.
a. care of b. after c. down on d. more off
87. I think you will from doing exercise; it will help you get fit.
a. benefit b. suffer c. complain d. pain
88. I'm trying to break the of staying up too late.
a. custom b. habit c. costume d. cosmetic
89. I'm going to stay up some revision for the exam tonight.
a. making b. giving c. taking d. doing
90. Most people stress when they work too much.
a. exploit b. experiment c. experience d. expert
91. I do my to hide my real feelings from others.
a. test b. best c. waste d. waist
92. If you have once a decision, stand by it, don't allow yourself to be argued round.
a. done b. spent c. given d. made
93. I don't want to talk about it Stop discussing it.
a. no more b. no longer c. anymore d. moreover
94. The cottage was in physical condition. It needed repairing.
a. high b. poor c. high-quality d. qualified
95. The light and the heat of the sun is referred to as
a. sunset b. sunshine c. solar d. masculine
96. Researchers used advanced to analyse the brain scans.
a. fakes b. techniques c. demerits d. attains
97. I can't go to the door-I'm not yet.
a. worn b. wearing c. dressed d. put on
98. Before you give up, think of the reason you held on so long.
a. for b. of c. which d. why
99. I can the chicken in mushroom sauce - it's delicious.
a. recommend b. advise c. devise d. advice
100. This year's good harvest will make last year's bad one.
a. up b. out c. up for d. down on
101. "This failure leaves the child frustrated." A synonym for "frustrated" is
a. exhausted b. depressed c. impressed d. colossal
102. "There are different categories of books in the library." A synonym for "categories" is
a. words b. sentences c. divisions d. dimensions
103. "Chance had thrown us together at a skiing resort." A synonym for "chance" is
a. change b. opportunity c. causality d. prominence

104. "The aim is to reduce traffic at peak periods." An antonym for "reduce" is
 a. lessen b. decrease c. cut out d. increase
105. "All external doors should be bolted top and bottom." An antonym for "external" is
 a. internal b. outer c. outside d. outward
106. "There's something strange about her." A synonym for "strange" is
 a. common b. abnormal c. average d. regular
107. "I suppose you'll hector me until I phone him." A synonym for "suppose" is
 a. oppose b. assume c. prove d. determine
108. "I admired his considerable mental ability." A synonym for "mental" is
 a. intellectual b. physical c. bodily d. usual
109. "We'll need to reduce the weight by half." A synonym for "reduce" is
 a. enhance b. omit c. lessen d. develop
110. "The lotion is for external use only." A synonym for "external" is
 a. internal b. outer c. interior d. inner
111. "This condition requires urgent treatment." A synonym for "urgent" is
 a. incidental b. instant c. mending d. minor
112. "We've had to alter some of our plans." A synonym for "alter" is
 a. fix b. admit c. modify d. identify
113. "He was frustrated in his ambition." An antonym for "frustrated" is
 a. disappointed b. pleasure c. satisfied d. depressed

Grammar

Modal verbs; Making Suggestion

- Ways of making suggestion: طرق عمل الاقتراح

What about + V.ing?	ماذا عن
How about + V.ing?	ماذا عن
Have you considered (thought about) + V.ing?	هل خطر ببالك أن
Why don't you + مصدر الفعل?	لم لا
You could (should) + مصدر الفعل	من الممكن لك أن / ينبغي عليك أن
You could + have + P.P	كان بإمكانك أن (لنوم على ما فات)
You should + have + P.P	كان عليك أن (لنوم على ما فات)

- * How about saying no more often?
- * What about doing sport four times a week instead of six?
- * Have you considered going to bed a bit earlier?
- * Why don't you start studying for that exam in February?

- * You could do your homework with other students.
- * You should plan your revision.
- * You could/should have taken more breaks.

Modal verbs of necessity, prohibition and lack of necessity

الأفعال الناقصة المعبرة عن الضرورة، التحريم وعدم الضرورة

1. الضرورة في المضارع

The form of the verb صيغة الفعل	Usage الاستخدام	Meaning المعنى
You + must + مصدر	a warm invitation دعوة حارة	ادعوك إلى
مصدر + must + فاعل	a strong reminder / تذكر / a rule قاعدة / a law قانون لائحة / an order أمر / a direct command مباشر / inner obligation إلزام داخلي strong feelings مشاعر قوية / wishes آمانيات / strong advice نصيحة قوية لتجنب خطر أو ضرر important or necessary هام وضروري	يجب أن
مصدر + have to + فاعل جمع مصدر + has to + فاعل مفرد	الضرورة (في المضارع) - إلزام خارجي (ليس للفرد اختيار) التزام بقوانين وقواعد	بمضطر أن
مصدر + need to + فاعل جمع مصدر + needs to + فاعل مفرد	الضرورة (في المضارع) شيء يجب فعله (ضروري)	بححتاج أن
مصدر + am/is/are + to + فاعل	الضرورة (في المضارع) / مضطر لفعل الشيء	يجب أن

- * You must come and see us at the weekend. (دعوة)
- * We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (تذكير)
- * We must follow traffic rules. (قاعدة - قانون - لائحة - أمر مباشر)
- * I must work hard for the exams next week. (الإلزام داخلي)
- * I must buy a present for my mother. (مشاعر داخلية - إلزام داخلي)
- * You must wash your hands before you eat. (نصيحة قوية)
- * You must stop smoking. (نصيحة قوية)
- * We have to go to school every day. (ليس لنا اختيار)
- * My father has to work six days a week. (ليس لديه اختيار)
- * I have no money - I need to get some from the bank. (ضروري فعل هذه الشيء)
- * Mona needs to study hard to pass the test. (ضروري فعل هذه الشيء)
- * I am to leave now. (مضطر لذلك)

2. عدم الضرورة في المضارع

The form of the verb صيغة الفعل	Meaning المعنى
مصدر + doesn't have to + فاعل مفرد / مصدر + don't have to + فاعل جمع	ليس مضطر أن
مصدر + doesn't need to + فاعل مفرد / مصدر + don't need to + فاعل جمع	ليس مضطر أن
مصدر + needn't + فاعل	ليس مضطر أن

- * I don't have to work on Fridays.
 * Mona doesn't have to work today because it is a holiday.
 * I don't need to buy a new pen. I've already got one.
 * Samy doesn't need to do the shopping as his mother has done it.
 * You needn't buy sugar. I have already bought some.

3. الضرورة في الماضي

صيغة الفعل	The form of the verb	المعنى	meaning
مصدر + had to + فاعل		اضطر أن	
مصدر + needed to + فاعل		اضطر أن	
مصدر + was/were + to + فاعل		كان يجب أن	

- * Yesterday I had to take a taxi home because it was raining.
 * Mona needed to revise well last night. It was necessary for today's exam.
 * Last week I was to stay with my ill father in hospital.

4. عدم الضرورة في الماضي

لاحظ وجود فروق في الدلالة بين الصيغ التالية:

صيغة الفعل	The form of the verb	المعنى	Meaning
مصدر + didn't have to + فاعل		لم يضطر أن (لم أفعل هذا الشيء لأنه لم يكن ضروري)	
مصدر + needn't + have + P.P.		لم يضطر أن (فعلت هذا الشيء رغم أنه لم يكن ضروري)	

- * I didn't have to buy more bread. We already have a lot. (I didn't buy bread.)
 * I needn't have bought more bread. We already have a lot. (I bought bread.)

5. الضرورة في المستقبل

صيغة الفعل	The form of the verb	المعنى	meaning
مصدر + must + فاعل		سيكون ضروري	
مصدر + has to + فاعل مفرد / مصدر + have to + فاعل جمع		سيكون ضروري	
مصدر + will have to / will need to + فاعل		سوف يضطر أن	

- * Tomorrow I must leave home early to catch the bus.
 * I have to go to the library tomorrow to return the book.
 * I will have to arrive at the station early next morning.
 * I will need to pay a visit to the library next Saturday.

6. عدم الضرورة في المستقبل

صيغة الفعل	The form of the verb	المعنى	Meaning
مصدر + won't have to + فاعل		أن يضطر أن	
مصدر + won't need to + فاعل		أن يضطر أن	
مصدر + won't have to + فاعل		أن يضطر أن	
مصدر + won't need to + فاعل		أن يضطر أن	

- * Mum will do the housework. Soha won't have to do it.
 * You won't need to buy a calculator. I will get one for you.

(prohibition) التحريم

الجزء الثاني: الطرق التي يتم بها التعبير عن التحريم

- * للتعبير عن شيء ممنوع أو محرم أو غير مسموح أو ضد القانون نستخدم الصيغ التالية:
 لا يجب أن يفعل (في جميع الأحوال)
 لا يجب أن يفعل (في حالة معينة)
 لا يُسمح له أن يفعل
 ليس مسموحاً بـ.....

- مصدر + mustn't + فاعل
 مصدر + can't + فاعل
 مصدر + am/is/are + not permitted to + فاعل
 مصدر + am / is / are + not + allowed to + فاعل
 مصدر + to + مفعول + It's not allowed for
 مصدر + V.ing + isn't allowed.
 مصدر + It's forbidden (prohibited – banned) to
 مصدر + V.ing + is + forbidden / prohibited / banned.
 مصدر + It's illegal to
 مصدر + It's against the law to

- من الممنوع أن
 ممنوع
 من غير القانوني أن يفعل ...
 إنه ل ضد القانون أن يفعل

- * You mustn't park your car here.
 * You can't park here unless you have a licence.
 * You aren't allowed to park your car here. = Parking your car here isn't allowed.

Note (1)

هام جداً: الفرق بين (must) و (have to / has to)

1. مصدر + must + جميع الضمائر (مضارع / مستقبل)
 مصدر + I/ We/ You/ They + have to + (مضارع جمع)
 مصدر + He/ She/ It + has to + (مضارع مفرد)
 مصدر + had to + جميع الضمائر (ماضي مثبت)
 مصدر + didn't have to + جميع الضمائر (ماضي منفي)
 مصدر + will have to + جميع الضمائر (مستقبل مثبت)
 مصدر + won't have to + جميع الضمائر (مستقبل منفي)

- * I must/ have to wear a uniform to work.
 * She must/ has to work hard to reach her goal.
 * We had to stay home last night as the weather was bad.

2. مصدر + must (رغبة من الفاعل) (أنت موافق)
 مصدر + have to/ has to (إلزام من جهة غير الفاعل) (ليس لدينا اختيار) (أنت مجبر)

- * I must practise well to win the next match.
 * I have to wear a helmet while driving.

3. مصدر + have to/ has to (إعطاء نصائح و أوامر)

- * You have to apologize to Ali. You don't want to lose him as a friend.
 * You can't go out. You have to do your homework first.

الفرق بين (can't) و (mustn't) في التحريم وعدم السماح

ليس مسموحاً	تحريم في حالات خاصة / عند وجود كلمات مثل (till/ until/ unless/ without)	مصدر + can't
لا يجوز	تحريم في العموم (على الجميع وفي أي وقت)	مصدر + mustn't

- In Britain, you can't take your driving test until you're 17 years old.
- You mustn't use your mobile while you are driving.
- You can't park your car here until you pay for it.
- You mustn't park your car here. It's a no-parking zone.

Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams' Exercises

- Writing this report is not important. You bother yourself. (دور اول 2020)
a. oughtn't b. mustn't c. needn't d. can't
- We mustn't park here. We are not to park here. (1982)
a. forbidden b. prevented c. allowed d. accepted
- You smoke in the theatre because smoking is forbidden. (1982)
a. mustn't b. needn't c. don't have to d. haven't got to
- It was very kind of her to bring me some flowers, but she have done it. (1984)
a. needn't b. doesn't need c. hadn't to d. oughtn't
- He has plenty of money, he earn his living. (1986)
a. needn't b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. couldn't
- She already had some green shoes, so she new ones to go with her new green dress. (1987)
a. had to buy b. needn't buy c. didn't have to buy d. needed to buy
- He has a car so he take a bus. (1987)
a. needn't b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. oughtn't
- I can hear you very well. You shout. (1988)
a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. couldn't
- The school bus broke down, so the pupils walk to school. (1990)
a. must b. ought to c. had to d. should
- We have to buy the clothes that designers think we should wear. We buy these clothes. (1991)
a. should only b. can only c. ought to d. must have
- The mother said to her child, "You can come with me to the shops but you if you don't want to." (1992)
a. mustn't b. haven't c. can't d. needn't
- The public observe the rules of traffic. (1992)
a. has to b. have to c. dare d. shall
- This is a one-way street. You go that way. (1993)
a. mustn't b. needn't c. shouldn't d. aren't
- He said to his guest, "If you don't like the tea, you drink it. I'll bring you orange juice." (دور ثان 97)
a. must b. should c. have to d. needn't

My new Friend

- You brought such heavy clothes. It's not that cold in Aswan. (دور اول 98)
a. mustn't have b. can't have c. needn't have d. ought to have
- You follow the doctor's prescription to get well soon. (دور ثان 2004)
a. may b. would c. need d. have to
- When we were children, we didn't have e-mails so we write letters. (دور اول 2013)
a. must b. had to c. have to d. has to
- You don't need add more salt to this dish. (دور اول - ن-ح - 2015)
a. for b. on c. to d. of
- Riders of motorcycles wear helmets. (دور ثان - 2017)
a. may b. can't c. mustn't d. must

Longman Exercises

- I my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.
a. don't have to tidy b. didn't have to tidy c. had to tidy d. must have tidied
- I'm sorry for not visiting you last night; I see my doctor.
a. needn't b. didn't have to c. had to d. must
- You are wasteful; you more sugar. We already have a lot at home.
a. can't have bought b. had to buy c. didn't have to buy d. needn't have bought
- Ali isn't late for school; he hurry.
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. has to
- Children wear a uniform in primary schools.
a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. shouldn't
- You worry, still you have a lot of time to catch the train.
a. don't have to b. must c. should d. have to
- You take photos here; it's a military area.
a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. shouldn't
- You try my sister's cake now. It's really delicious!
a. needn't b. had to c. must d. mustn't
- I really buy my mother a present on her birthday. One should be grateful!
a. needn't b. have to c. mustn't d. must
- At an airport, I show my passport.
a. can't b. don't have to c. have to d. shouldn't
- In England, most people work until they are 67; it's a work law there.
a. mustn't b. have to c. needn't d. shouldn't
- Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and go to hospital where he received proper treatment.
a. had to b. should have gone c. has to d. didn't have to
- Mona is really economical; she more bread; she actually has much in the fridge.
a. needn't have bought b. didn't have to buy c. should have bought d. had to buy

33. You pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt.
a. mustn't b. needn't c. have to d. must
34. Is it a/an to take this medicine?
a. advice b. unnecessary c. necessary d. must

My new Friend Exercises

35. You stop doing hobbies. There's a chance that this will happen.
a. will b. might c. must d. should
36. You should to learn better time management skills.
a. trying b. tried c. to try d. try
37. You could 'no' to playing on the school basketball team.
a. have been said b. said c. have to said d. have said
38. Why don't you some snacks with you, so you aren't so hungry?
a. taking b. take c. to take d. taking
39. Have you considered to your family about your feelings?
a. to talking b. to talk c. talk d. talking
40. How about to some music to help you to relax?
a. listen b. to listen c. listening d. listened
41. You shouldn't television for so long.
a. watched b. watching c. have been watched d. have watched
42. How about no more often?
a. say b. to say c. saying d. to saying
43. What about sport four times a week instead of six?
a. done b. doing c. do d. to do
44. Have you considered to bed a bit earlier?
a. going b. gone c. go d. to go
45. start studying for that exam in February?
a. You could b. You should c. Why don't you d. What about
46. You do your homework with other students.
a. could have b. should have c. should to d. could
47. You plan your revision. That's my suggestion.
a. have to b. must c. might d. should
48. You could/should have taken more breaks. It was advisable to do.
a. should have been taken b. should be taken c. should have taken d. should taken
49. You wash your hands before eating to get rid of germs.
a. need b. must c. must d. could

50. I go to the dentist yesterday as I had a toothache.
a. had to b. have to c. must d. should

Advanced Exercises

51. The pupils who escaped yesterday
a. can't punish b. must have punished c. must be punished d. might have punished
52. You take it or leave it, as you like.
a. can b. must c. have to d. should
53. Do I take my passport to the airport when we go to Greece?
a. have b. need to c. must d. should
54. She have seen them if she had attended the meeting.
a. must b. would c. should d. need
55. Is it for us to make the plan first?
a. necessity b. a must c. have to d. must

Part 2: Lessons (3-4)

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
positive	إيجابي	good or useful.
negative	سلبي	harmful or bad; not wanted.
teenager	مراهق	someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.
sign	علامة / إشارة	something which shows that something else exists, is true, or will happen.
routine	روتين يومي	the normal order and way in which you regularly do things.
management	إدارة	the act or skill of dealing with people or situations in a successful way.
get together	يتقابل	to meet with somebody socially or in order to discuss something.
meet up	يتفق على لقاء	to meet somebody, especially by arrangement.
upload	يرفع على النت	to send data to another computer.
impact	تأثير / صدى	the powerful effect that something has on

Reading and Critical Thinking

teenagers	مراهقين	signs	علامات / إشارات	follow	يتبع
identify	يتعرف على	exhaustion	إرهاق	whether	إنما
efficient	كفاء	imagined	خيالي	marks	درجات
routine	روتين	specific	محدد	join	ينضم إلى
notice	يلاحظ	extract	مقتبس / يستخرج	upload	يرفع على النت
normal self	حالة طبيعية	helpful	متعاون	social media	رسائل التواصل
energy	طاقة	wet	مبلل	news alerts	تنبيهات اخبارية
schoolwork	عمل مدرسي	remain	يبقى	anxious	قلق
athletics club	نادي رياضي	medicine	دواء	trust	يثق في / ثقة
possible signs	علامات محتملة	offer	يعرض	talk soon	تحدث الي قريباً

Prepositions

aware of	واع لـ	control over	يسيطر على	happy with	سعيد بـ
get together	يجمع / يتقابل	think about	يفكر في	sit at my desk	أجلس في مكتبي
meet up	يتقابل	focus on	يركز على	grateful for	ممنون لشيء
go on	يستمر في	around town	حول المدينة	grateful to	ممتن لشخص
example of	مثال لـ	as a problem	كمشكلة	on his own	بفرد
for example	على سبيل المثال	move to	ينتقل إلى	set up phone	بضبط الهاتف

Important Collocations & Expressions

make notes on	يدون ملاحظات عن	take action	تخذ إجراء
make changes	يحدث تغيير	get worse	يزداد سوء
stop you getting to sleep	تمنعك من الوصول للنوم	share your feelings with	تشارك مشاعرك مع
make a study plan	يقوم بعمل خطة دراسة	look exhausted	يبدو منهكا
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	plan my study time	اخطط وقت دراستي
identify the reasons	يتعرف على الاسباب	have a talk about	يحدث عن
notice signs of	يلاحظ علامات	perceive change	يترك تغيير
feel (remain) positive	يشعر بإيجابية / يظل إيجابي	keep you warm and dry	يجعلك دافئ وجاف
have fun	يستمتع	face life's difficulties	يواجه صعوبات الحياة
accept change	يقبل بالتغيير	send me news alerts	يرسل الي تنبيهات اخبارية

upload photos and videos

get good results in

get stressed / wet

يحصل على نتائج جيدة في

يصبح مضغوط / مبلل

at a very bad time

out of our control

يرفع صور وفيديوهات على النت

في وقت سي جدا

خارج عن سيطرتنا

My new Friend

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	synonyms	Antonyms
teenagers	مراهقون	teens / adolescents / teeners	elder / senior / middle agers
efficient	كفاء	effective / fruitful / adept	incapable / ineffective / useless
identify	يتعرف علي	distinguish / pinpoint / finger	camouflage / conceal / disguise
routine	روتين	habit / method / typical / customary	rare / irregular / untypical
exhaustion	إرهاق	burnout / tiredness / weariness	refreshment / strength
anxious	قلق	agitating / disturbing / tense	calming / peaceful / quiet

Reading Texts

1. Skills for Life

It's important to be aware of the signs of burnout. Then you can take action so the situation doesn't get any worse. It's also important to share your feelings with people you trust, like your family or teachers because so they can help.

2. Some advice from a teacher

When I talk to teenagers who are suffering from burnout, I start by talking to them about the negative effects of their mental health problems. It's a good idea to ask how they're feeling, for example, they may feel exhausted or they may not have any time for self-care. Then I ask them about their routine because I want find out how much time they spend doing their homework and how much time they spend on other activities. After that, we can find out if there's anything we can change, for example to have better time management. A final important thing to look at is what activities the student really enjoys. We can talk about these and think about how the student can make more time for them.

3. An email

To: Mohammed@mail.com

From: Karim@mail.com

Subject: Advice on how to improve mental health.

I wanted to write because I've noticed that you don't seem to be your normal self at the moment. You used to have so much energy, but now you look exhausted a lot of the time at school. I think I can understand how you are feeling because I was suffering from a lot of stress last year too. I couldn't cope with all of the homework I had. Instead of doing the work, I used to just sit at my desk and worry about it for hours. I remember that I was exhausted all the time and my teachers weren't very happy with my schoolwork. Time management was something I didn't know anything about back then, but I asked my sister for help and she showed me how to plan my study time better.

Is there something that you're worrying about which is stopping you getting to sleep? Or maybe you're doing too many things at the moment. Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes, so don't worry about it. When you understand that, you can start to identify the reasons for your problems.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you make the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together to have a talk about what's going on if you want. Just let me know when.

Talk soon,
Karim

4. Three emails

(1)

For the last three weeks, I've been feeling I can't cope with everything in my life. My friends are getting great marks at school and after school they meet up. But I don't have time to join them. On social media they always upload photos and videos of themselves having fun at the park and around town. I don't know how they find the time to do all these things and study too.

(2)

I like to know what is happening in the world and I have set up my phone to send me news alerts. Recently though, there have been so many problems happening around the world and it's making me feel stressed. It's having a big impact on my well-being. I often feel quite anxious and don't want to leave the house.

(3)

I have just started doing sport to calm down because recently I've been quite angry. We have just moved to a new city because of my dad's new job. I had to leave all my best friends, the athletics club I was in and all this happened during an important

year at school. I want to study medicine, so I have to get good results in my exams. I often get angry about small things.

Language Notes

1. may be / maybe:

- may be (فعل بمعنى: ربما يكون) / maybe = perhaps (ظرف بمعنى: ربما - من المحتمل):
* Ali is absent today. He may be ill.

* Ali is absent today. Maybe (Perhaps) he is ill.

2. insist / decide / suggest:

- insist + insist on + V.ing (يصر على - يصمم على):
- insist (that) (يقرر أن... مصدر + فاعل آخر):

- decide to + مصدر (يقرر أن):

- decide that + جملة (يقرر أن):

- decide on + اسم (يحدد - يختار):

- suggest + V.ing:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

- suggest + (that) + فاعل + (should) مصدر:

* He insisted on mending the bike himself.

* He insisted that he would mend the bike.

* She decided to reserve a place on the plane.

* She decided that she would do a sport to keep fit.

* Finally, she decided on the red dress.

* She suggested going to the cinema.

* She suggested that we (should) go there.

* Be quiet! I've got a headache.

* Although they are twins, they are quite different.

* He quit smoking a year ago.

3. quiet / quite / quit:

- quiet هادئ = calm:

- quite تماما = fairly / completely:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

- quit (quit / quit) يتوقف عن شيء / يغادر / يترك:

4. consider:

- consider + consider + V.ing (يفكر في) / فاعل + consider + مصدر + to (يعتبر):

* FIFA experts are considering giving Messi the Player of the Year Award this year.

* People consider Messi to be the most brilliant player in the world.

5. 'd better / 'd rather:

- 'd better (had better) + مصدر (من الأفضل له):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

- 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يفضل):

6. learn / teach / show / know:

- learn + learn + مصدر (يتعلم) / فاعل + learn + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- teach + teach + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + teach + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- show + show + مصدر (يُظهر) / فاعل + show + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

- know + know + مصدر (يعلم) / فاعل + know + مصدر + (how) to + مصدر (يُعلم):

7. More notes:

angry at / about	غاضب من شيء	angry with	غاضب من شخص
athlete	لاعب	athletes	لاعبون
athletic	صفة بمعنى (رياضي)	athletics	ألعاب القوى

athletics competition	مسابقة ألعاب قوى	athletic competition	مسابقة رياضية
identify	يحدد هوية لأول مرة	recognize	يُعرف شخص يعرفه من قبل
member	عضو في أسرة أو جماعة	organ	عضو في الجسم
routine	روتين شخصي	red-tape	روتين حكومي
weather	طقس	whether	أو
influenced by	متأثر بـ	influential	مؤثر / هام / فعال / ذو مكانة
upload to / on	يرفع على الانترنت	upload from	يرفع (ينقل) من
download onto / on	يحمل على	download from	يحمل من
load	يحمل شحنة	unload	يخرج شحنة
custom	عادة مجتمع كامل	habit	عادة فردية
customs	عادات	traditions (conventions)	تقاليد
costumes	الملابس الخاصة بمناسبة	costumes	ملابس خاصة بمناسبة
remember	يتذكر	remind	يذكر شخص بشيء
move in	ينتقل لمكان (لا يتبعها مفعول)	move into	ينتقل لمكان (يتبعها مفعول)
agree	يوافق على فكرة أو أن يفعل شيء	accept	يقبل (دعوة / اعتذار / عرض)
agree on / about	يوافق على شيء	agree with	يتفق مع شخص / يوافق على فكرة



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Be about your future and get on with living a normal life.
a. positive b. positivity c. negative d. negativity
- The telecoms sector had the biggest negative on the market.
a. attract b. impact c. index d. interact
- We received a/an answer to our request. They refused to help.
a. affirmative b. negative c. positive d. regular
- It was a wonderful match; both teams played
a. negatively b. positively c. negativity d. positivity
- The novel tells the story of a driven to despair by the hypocrisy of the adult world.
a. grown-up b. mature c. teenager d. teenage
- Gratitude is the of noble souls
a. signal b. sign c. slang d. swing
- I don't have a fixed daily; I do whatever I like whenever I want.
a. red-tape b. costume c. routine d. rather
- Let's get next Friday to discuss the matter.
a. gather b. together c. up d. meter
- Shall we meet at the same time tomorrow?
a. off b. up c. on d. meter
- I want to data to the computer network storage from my office computer.
a. load b. unload c. overload d. upload

- My sister always music from the internet.
a. downloads b. allows c. crowns d. processes
- The outside the motel said "No Vacancies".
a. resign b. design c. sing d. sign
- The duckling its mother everywhere.
a. frowned b. followed c. flown d. fried
- The moon is a moon it shines or not.
a. whatever b. whoever c. whether d. whom
- The restaurant's atmosphere is elegant, and understated, with quiet but service.
a. efficient b. inappropriate c. unsuitable d. regrettable
- The manager knows that her and intelligence are beyond question.
a. fatigue b. efficiency c. vulgarity d. commence
- Can you your umbrella among this lot?
a. identity b. identify c. fortify d. fly
- that you have just won a million pounds, what would you do with it?
a. Imagine b. Image c. Immigrate d. Migrate
- He gained full in the examination.
a. scars b. dots c. marks d. makes
- There was no plan in my mind. I asked him to suggest one.
a. specific b. sparty c. dusty d. wasted
- Hundreds of miners the breakaway union.
a. applied b. attached c. joined d. grown
- The scientist's observant eye the slightest details.
a. hovelled b. noticed c. detained d. rated
- You should apply to the publisher for permission to reprint an of the book.
a. export b. extract c. exact d. exist
- She looked defeated, quite unlike her normal
a. self b. width c. face d. spiritual
- Social is something we have to keep a watch on because it can eat into your life.
a. media b. motion c. drain d. crane
- I've set up my phone to send me news all the time.
a. alters b. alerts c. lanterns d. wonders
- There is no reason to be about the result. Everything will be OK.
a. notorious b. waxed c. essential d. anxious
- Speed is the essential ingredient of all
a. athletic b. athletics c. athlete d. athletes
- They have been given college scholarships purely on ability.
a. athlete b. athletes c. athletics d. athletic
- If some use drugs, it is unfair to the others.
a. athletes b. athlete's c. athletic d. athletics

31. We enrolled him as a/an of our new society.
a. member b. organ c. limp d. limb
32. The of the game was five-nil.
a. reason b. cause c. result d. assault
33. Children who have had bad fear rejection.
a. experts b. exerts c. experiences d. experiments
34. Several people were passing but nobody to help.
a. offered b. suffered c. referred d. fared
35. Everybody should be made of the risks involved.
a. weird b. weary c. aware d. war
36. I asked help from every channel and reorganized my life.
a. on b. for c. in d. with
37. It is bad for kids to be on their so much.
a. self b. private c. special d. own
38. Though he was tired, he working.
a. stopped b. paused c. went on d. deprived
39. We are deeply grateful you and your family.
a. on b. to c. for d. with
40. Research has on improving the car's aerodynamics.
a. mocked b. laughed c. noticed d. focused
41. All organisations need to adapt changed circumstances.
a. with b. on c. for d. to
42. I've set my phone to send me news alerts all the time.
a. on b. up c. off d. down
43. Plenty of foreign firms have up factories here.
a. witnessed b. sat c. set d. sunset
44. While the teacher was explaining, the students on the lesson.
a. did notes b. made notes c. notes d. took tunes
45. If the symptoms worse, consult your doctor.
a. do b. get c. make d. give
46. Social media allow you to your feelings with others.
a. cheer b. share c. shade d. check
47. You have to a study plan if you want to achieve good results.
a. take b. do c. make d. bake
48. Managing an allowance helps children feel about their ability to take care of themselves.
a. negative b. positive c. posted d. reluctant
49. It was the high-school students who found a to the problem.
a. donation b. solution c. commission d. mission

50. Kids can have and learn about music at the same time.
a. funny b. fun c. frying d. laughing
51. Parents should bring their children up to be able to face life
a. dimensions b. priorities c. difficulties d. witnesses
52. Please, don't stressed; everything will be right.
a. make b. give c. get d. take
53. The lorry veered control, overturned and smashed into a wall.
a. down b. under c. in d. out of
54. you are right and I am wrong.
a. May b. Probable c. Maybe d. May be
55. Funeral vary with different religions.
a. cosmetics b. habits c. accustoms d. customs
56. Her father's death her that she was mortal.
a. called b. reminded c. remembered d. ventured
57. When she saw him, she insisted calling to him.
a. that b. to c. in d. on
58. The suggestion seemed rational to me.
a. quite b. quit c. quietly d. quiet
59. She offered him a lift and he
a. excepted b. exempted c. accepted d. expected
60. The underground is considered the most modern engineering project in Egypt.
a. being b. been c. to be d. has been
61. "Many students have burnout after taking exams." A synonym for "burnout" is
a. tiredness b. revitalization c. burning d. strength
62. An antonym for "exhausted" is
a. tired b. energetic c. powerless d. wearied
63. To "cope with" means to with.
a. get along b. overcome c. conquer d. invade
64. "Techniques of deep meditation help people under stress." A synonym for "stress" is
a. pressure b. reassure c. creature d. mature
65. "We seek to improve relations between our two countries." "Improve" means
a. enhance b. lessen c. deteriorate d. estimate
66. "She scolded the child for being late for school." A synonym for "scolded" is
a. encouraged b. belittled c. knocked d. praised
67. "She pouted and looked at him angrily." A synonym for "pouted" is
a. growled b. mentioned c. smiled d. cheered
68. "Teenagers and their parents rarely agree." A synonym for "teenagers" is
a. children b. elders c. infants d. adolescents

69. "He has an efficient business setup." A synonym for "efficient" is
 a. relevant b. equivalent c. effective d. deteriorated
70. "We cannot identify happiness with wealth." A synonym for "identify" is
 a. distinguish b. conceal c. camouflage d. hide
71. "Make exercise a part of your daily routine." A synonym for "routine" is
 a. discipline b. masculine c. feminine d. habit
72. "We are all anxious about his health." A synonym for "anxious" is
 a. happy b. relaxed c. worried d. encouraged
73. "She has a comprehensive grasp of the subject." A synonym for "comprehensive" is
 a. overall b. little c. limited d. lotion
74. "She was filled with a sense of well-being." An antonym for "well-being" is
 a. suffering b. motion c. welfare d. movement
75. "I was afraid of being scolded." An antonym for "scolded" is
 a. praised b. estimated c. wept d. cried
76. "He seemed anxious about the meeting." An antonym for "anxious" is
 a. worried b. tension c. stressed d. confident
77. "They can suffer from burnout." An antonym for "burnout" is
 a. tiredness b. weariness c. fatigue d. strength

Grammar

Modal verbs: Part 2

Modal verbs of deduction, advice and regret

الأفعال الناقصة المعبرة عن الاستنتاج، النصيحة والندم

الجزء الأول: الطرق التي يتم بها التعبير عن الاستنتاج (deduction)

هناك درجات مختلفة للاستنتاج تتوقف على درجة تأكيد المتحدث من المعلومة التي يستنتجها:

هذه الدرجات هي:

أولاً: التأكيد بنسبة 90 بالمائة (90% certainty) ونستخدم فيها الفعلين (must/can't).

ثانياً: التأكيد بنسبة 70 بالمائة (70% certainty/probability) ونستخدم فيها الفعلين (may/may not).

ثالثاً: التأكيد بنسبة 30 بالمائة (30% certainty/possibility) ونستخدم فيها الفعلين (might/might not).

تتكون صيغ الأفعال المعبرة عن كل درجة من درجات الاستنتاج كما يلي:

صيغة الفعل

المعنى والدلالة التي تعطيها الصيغة

must + مصدر

must + have + P.P.

can't + مصدر

أكد يفعل (مضارع)

أكد قُتِلَ (ماضي)

أكد لا يفعل (مضارع)

can't + have + P.P. / couldn't + have + P.P.
 may + مصدر
 may not + مصدر
 may + have + P.P.
 may not + have + P.P.
 might + مصدر
 might not + مصدر
 might + have + P.P.
 might not + have + P.P.
 could + have + P.P.

My new Friend

أكد لم يفعل (ماضي)

ربما يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)

ربما لا يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)

ربما قُتِلَ (ماضي)

ربما لم يفعل (ماضي)

من الممكن أن يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)

من الممكن ألا يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)

من الممكن أن يكون قد فعل (ماضي)

من الممكن أن يكون لم يفعل (ماضي)

كان بإمكانه أن لكنه لم يفعل.

Examples

- * He must be English. He speaks English well.
- * I hate snakes. A snake must have frightened me when I was a child.
- * He can't be Egyptian. He doesn't speak Arabic.
- * It's only four o'clock. The match can't have finished already.
- * The boy was asleep. He couldn't have drunk your tea.
- * They may visit us tomorrow. That's probable.
- * He may have seen them last night. I'm not really sure.
- * He might be French, but he is probably Italian.
- * Azza wasn't at school yesterday. She might have had a doctor's appointment.
- * The patient could have died, but the doctor saved him.

يمكن استخدام كل من (may) و (might) بالتبادل نظراً للتقارب بينهما في المعنى والوظيفة ودرجة اليقين من المعلومة.

- * Ali may have missed the bus. It's possible.
- * Mona might have heard some bad news. It's probable.
- * Perhaps Samy passed the exam. = Samy might have passed the exam.

الاستنتاج في المبني للمجهول

(مضارع - مستقبل) he + P.P. + الفعل الناقص *

(ماضي) have + been + P.P. + الفعل الناقص *

- * I'm very uncertain. She might be invited to the party.
- * The car isn't outside. It must have been stolen.
- * The house must have been built before 2000.
- * The child might have been kidnapped.

صيغة الفعل	الاستخدام Usage	المعنى meaning
The form of the verb		
مصدر + (had better) (should)	تقديم نصيحة مثبتة في الحاضر	ينبغي أن
مصدر + (had better not) (shouldn't)	تقديم نصيحة منفية في الحاضر	لا ينبغي أن
مصدر + P.P. / ought to + have + P.P.	اللوم على ما لم يحدث في الماضي	كان ينبغي أن
مصدر + P.P. / ought not to + have + P.P.	اللوم على ما حدث في الماضي	ما كان ينبغي أن ...

* You should read this book. It's great!

* You shouldn't sit on that wall. It isn't safe.

* In summer, tourists ought to wear a hat and ought not to sit in the sun.

* I should have phoned my friend yesterday, but I didn't.

* Mona shouldn't have left the door open. The thief got through it.

* I'm sorry! I ought to have come on time.

* I ought not to have been angry with you. I'm sorry.

زود معرفتك بالأفعال الناقصة بدراسة الأفعال التالية

صيغة الفعل	المعنى والدلالة التي تعطيها الصيغة
مصدر + can	يستطيع
مصدر + can't	لا يستطيع
مصدر + could	استطاع
مصدر + couldn't	لم يستطع
مصدر + could	قد يحدث (في المستقبل)

مصدر + We/ You could

لم لا تفعل (تفعل)؟ (لتقديم الاقتراحات)

* I can see very well without glasses.

* I can't speak French.

* I could speak English when I was seven.

* In the past, women couldn't vote in elections.

* It could rain tomorrow.

* I have a suggestion. We could put off the party till they return.

الفرق بين (could) وبقيّة تعبيرات المقدرة في الماضي

* للتعبير عن المقدرة بشكل عام في الماضي: مصدر + could + فاعل
(قدرة عامة في الماضي)

* I could speak German when I was eight years old.

* I could swim at the age of six.

مصدر + was / were + able to + فاعل
مصدر + was / were + capable of + V.ing
مصدر + managed to + فاعل
مصدر + succeeded in + V.ing

* I'd been trying to send that email all day. Finally, I succeeded in sending it at six o'clock in the evening.

* The exam was hard but I was able to pass it.



Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams' Exercises

- It very windy during the night. There are leaves all over the ground. (دور أول 2012)
a. must have been b. must be c. can't have been d. can't be
- Ramy has a broken arm, he off his bicycle in the race. (دور ثان 2012)
a. must have fallen b. can't fall c. might fall d. can't have fallen
- Winning the first prize last year Ali very happy. (دور أول - 2015)
a. will have made b. must have made c. can't make d. mustn't make
- I can't remember where I had left my mobile phone. I'm not sure, I it at home. (دور أول - 2015)
a. must have left b. might have left c. can leave d. must leave
- She didn't see her brother this morning. He the flat very early. (دور ثان 2013)
a. must have left b. can't have left c. must leave d. can't leave
- That watch have cost a lot of money. It is made of plastic. (دور أول - 2014)
a. must b. might c. can't d. can
- You the door. It was open when I got home. (دور أول 2014)
a. can't have locked b. can't lock c. can lock d. can have locked
- He can hardly walk. He be very ill. (دور ثان 2014)
a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. should
- He left his keys on the table. He have remembered them. (أزهر 2012)
a. can't b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must
- The cup is empty. Mr. Hassan drunk his orange juice. (السودان 2013)
a. must have b. must have been c. can't have d. can't be

11. The cargo ship has sunk in the ocean. So, these cars have been brought on it. (2014 أ.زهر)
a. can't b. must c. shouldn't d. wouldn't
12. The man in a white coat who was examining the patient a doctor. (2014 أ.زهر)
a. might have been b. can't have been c. should be d. must have been
13. There's water all over the floor. You to turn off the tap. (السودان 2014)
a. must forget b. must have forgotten c. can't have forgotten d. can't forget
14. The light is on. He have forgotten to turn it off. (أ.زهر 2015)
a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. should
15. His watch have cost a lot of money. It's made of gold. (أ.زهر 2015)
a. must b. can't c. might d. should
16. I traveled by train, but I by car. (دور ثان 2011)
a. might have travelled b. could travel c. could have travelled d. can travel
17. It began to rain and there were no taxis. At last I arrive home. (دور ثان 2011)
a. was able to b. couldn't c. wasn't able to d. managed
18. My father go to USA next summer. He hasn't decided yet. (دور ثان - 2015)
a. must b. might c. need d. should
19. You apologize to your friend when you do something unpleasant. (دور ثان - 2015)
a. would b. needn't c. should d. shouldn't
20. No seats remained. You booked the tickets at least two days before. (أ.زهر 2012)
a. must have b. should have c. have to be d. shall have
21. I cannot find my handbag. Someone it by mistake. (دور ثان - 2016)
a. must take b. cannot take c. must have taken d. cannot have taken
22. Nothing is kept in the fridge. He have eaten all the food. (دور أول - 2016)
a. can't b. must c. might d. may
23. Sherif isn't here. He have gone home to study for the next test. (السودان - 2017)
a. must b. can c. ought d. would
24. He left his glasses at school yesterday, I'm hoping someone found them. (دور أول - 2017)
a. must have b. might have c. can't have d. can have
25. Retirement be an unhappy event. (دور أول - 2017)
a. need b. ought c. shouldn't d. mustn't
26. He was rewarded. He have worked hard. (أ.زهر - 2017)
a. must b. can't c. should d. mustn't
27. Samy didn't take his keys, he have seen them. (السودان - 2018)
a. must b. can c. can't d. may

28. In "The Prisoner of Zenda", what do you think if the king hadn't been poisoned?
a. might happen b. might have happened c. should happen d. must have happened
29. The flight coming from New York was postponed; there have been a problem with the plane engine. Do you think it is due to bad weather conditions?
a. mustn't b. should c. might d. must
30. This temple be important; it's visited by hundreds of people every day.
a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. must
31. - May I use your calculator? - Of course, you; I don't need it now.
a. may b. can't c. can d. may not
32. The car broke down again; it repaired well yesterday.
a. can't have been b. can't have c. mustn't have been d. shouldn't have been
33. Everyone is putting their umbrellas up; it raining.
a. to start b. must have started c. shouldn't have started d. can't have started
34. You work to a plan; it's my best tip for you!
a. oughtn't to b. mustn't c. needn't d. should
35. Adel travelled to Alexandria by bus. He by train as usual.
a. could have travelled b. had to travel c. must have travelled d. needn't have travelled
36. Look! The sun is very hot. I an umbrella. I think I must buy one now.
a. might have bought b. must have bought c. had to buy d. ought to have bought
37. - Who sent this parcel? - I don't know. He be Adel.
a. should b. has to c. might d. must
38. I tried hard to repair my car, but I , so I got a mechanic to check it.
a. was able to b. had to c. can't d. couldn't
39. Omar be happy; he has just won the gold medal.
a. had to b. must c. can't d. ought not to
40. The composition is full of mistakes. You it well.
a. needn't have checked b. must have checked c. should have checked d. had to check
41. Oh! These are my father's keys. He left for work. He to take them.
a. mustn't have remembered b. had to remember c. must have remembered d. can't have remembered
42. Ali was punished. He more mistakes.
a. mustn't make b. had to make c. must have made d. can't have made

My new Friend Exercises

43. Hany ill yesterday. I saw him in the club.
a. must have been b. could have been c. can't have been d. may have been
44. - What shall we do this evening? - We go to the cinema.
a. have to b. could c. must d. need

45. Mona forgot that we have a test tomorrow. She have started revising last week.
a. might b. should c. must d. didn't
46. There a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
a. can't have been b. must have been c. should have been d. mustn't have been
47. Ali forgotten. He has got a very good memory.
a. shouldn't have b. might have c. must have d. can't have
48. Nadia lived in England for 20 years, so she English well.
a. must be spoken b. can't speak c. must speak d. should speak
49. It cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.
a. can have been b. must have been c. can't have been d. mustn't have been
50. I can't find my book. I it at home.
a. might have left b. can't have left c. need have left d. should have left
51. You have arrived late for your exam. That was wrong.
a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. can't d. needn't
52. A: Look, Hesham's keys are on the table.
B: He have seen them when he left this morning.
a. wouldn't b. can't c. can d. must
53. My friend told me the homework was on page 41, but there isn't a page 41. She
a. mistake. b. must have made c. should have made d. can't make
54. You the door of the house open. A thief broke in through it.
a. can't have left b. couldn't have left c. mustn't have left d. ought not to have left
55. You told me you were coming. I didn't expect you.
a. needn't have b. would have c. should have d. may have
56. We didn't go out last night. We to the cinema but we decided to watch TV.
a. must have gone b. couldn't have gone c. could have gone d. may have gone
57. Ali have travelled to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
a. must b. might c. can't d. may
58. Hassan thinks that he did very well in the exam. He get the best results in the class!
a. can't b. should c. must d. might
59. She lost her mobile phone. She called me from a friend's phone.
a. might have b. can't have c. would have d. didn't have
60. It been very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.
a. should have b. can't have c. must have d. needn't have

Writing an email

The format of the e-mail كتابة البريد الإلكتروني شكل البريد الإلكتروني

1. Recipient	المستلم	To:
2. Sender	المرسل	From :
3. Subject line	شريط العنوان	Subject / About:
3. Opener / Greeting / Salutation	الفتحة / التحية	Dear, sir / Ms / Nada / Mohamed I'm pleased to write this email to you.
Body	جسم الايميل	the body will consist of as many paragraphs as ideas you are asked to discuss.
Closing	الخاتمة	I look forward to hearing from you soon. Talk soon / see you later / see you soon
Signature / Sign off	التوقيع	Best Wishes, Yours,

How to Write an Informal Email

We usually write informal emails to friends, family, or people we know really well.
نكتب عادة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الغير رسمية إلى الأصدقاء أو العائلة أو الأشخاص الذين نعرفهم جيداً.

We also write informal emails to quickly communicate a piece of information or share things with our coworkers.
نكتب أيضاً رسائل بريد إلكتروني غير رسمية لإبصار جزء من المعلومات بسرعة أو مشاركة الأشياء مع زملائنا في العمل.

A. Subject line شريط العنوان

The subject line still matters in an informal email, but you can use a friendlier tone:
[Here's the schedule] [Here's the video you asked about] [Check out this article!]
[Read this!]

B. Greeting التحية

We can use a much more informal "hey," or "hi," or we can just address them by name.
We can also use more exclamation points or things that emoticons to express excitement and friendliness:

يمكننا استخدام كلمة "مرحباً" أو "مرحباً" بشكل غير رسمي أو يمكننا توجيه الكلام بالاسم فقط. يمكننا أيضاً استخدام المزيد من علامات التعجب أو الأشياء التي تمثل المشاعر للتعبير عن الإثارة والود:

-Hey [Name], / Hi [Name], / Hey there! / Hi! / Hey!

C. Body الجسم

We can write as much or as little as we want. But, in terms of practicality, think about your reader. You still want to save them time, so it's best to be as brief as you can.

يمكننا أن نكتب كثيراً أو قليلاً كما نريد. لكن، من الناحية العملية، فكر في القارئ. ما زلت ترغب في توفير الوقت لهم، لذلك من الأفضل أن تكون مختصراً قدر الإمكان.

- Here's the schedule you asked for. / - Here's the video. Hope you enjoy it!
- The meeting's at 5:00 pm. See you there! / - Can you send me that file again? Thanks!

D. Closing الخاتمة:

- In an informal email, don't worry too much about the closing! You can use these friendly sign-offs:

- See you later (soon), / Take care, / Thanks, / Happy Friday, / Have a good weekend!

Useful Expressions for an Informal Email

- **Greetings:** Dear Sarah, / Hello Sara, / Hi Sara,
- **Introductory paragraph:** How's it going? / How are you doing? / How are things? / How are things going? / It's great to hear from you! / Long time, no see! /

Sorry I haven't written for ages, but I'm really sorry it's taken me so long to get back to you.

- **Reacting to good news:** I'm glad to hear that / I'm so happy that / Great news about your / I'm very happy to hear about / It's so great that

- **Reacting to bad news:** I'm so sorry to hear about / Sorry to read about ... / I can't tell you how sad I am that / I'm extremely sorry to hear about ... / It's just awful to hear that

- **Introducing paragraphs:** Oh, by the way, / Hey, did you hear about...? / One more thing, / As for / By the way, tell me about

- **Ending the email:** Well, I gotta go now. / Anyway, I should get going. / I've got to leave you now. / I'd better get going. / Well, it's time to go. / Make sure you write soon. / Don't forget to drop me a line soon. / Look after yourself. / Take care.

- **Closing the email:** All my love, / Love, / Lots of love, / All the best, / Take care, / Best wishes, / Best regards / Kind regards.



Exercises on Writing Skills

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We use "Hi" in a/an email.
a. spoken b. written c. informal d. formal
- A/An is a digital message.
a. email b. essay c. letter d. paragraph
- A header is part of an email that contains the address of the.....
a. recipient and sender b. receiver and recipient c. sender and poster d. article and review
- Before you click the 'send' button, you should
a. reread the email b. enclose the email into an envelope c. check the paragraphs d. greet your friend

- In an email, the line is where you type what the email is about.
a. FROM b. TO c. SUBJECT d. ATTACHMENT
- can't be used in a formal email.
a. Slang b. Formal words c. Descriptions d. Unity
- are used only in an informal email.
a. Collocations b. Abbreviations c. Attachments d. Greetings
- In a formal email, you will conclude it with ".....",
a. Yours sincerely b. See you later c. Bye d. See you soon
- In an informal email, you can conclude with
a. Your mind b. Later c. Yours sincerely d. Bye
- On the "TO" line, we write the address of the
a. sender b. recipient c. culture d. subject
- On the "From" line, we write the
a. subject of the email b. sender of the email c. address of the sender d. address of the recipient
- "Dear" is called
a. an opener b. salutation c. greeting d. all of these
- A is part of an email that contains the address of the sender and the recipient.
a. conclusion b. header c. greeting d. body
- We write the information we want to tell the recipient in the
a. introduction b. conclusion c. header d. body
- "I look forward to hearing from you." is a/an
a. closing b. header c. address d. greeting
- After "Best wishes", we write the
a. address b. signature c. header d. greeting
- The body of the email consists of
a. greetings b. paragraphs c. addresses d. headers
- We usually write informal emails to
a. officials b. friends c. family d. both b and c
- "Hey" and "Hi" are forms of
a. greetings b. addresses c. headers d. conclusions
- We can use "Best wishes" in the
a. conclusion b. introduction c. header d. body

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The actor doesn't match the image I had of the character.
a. brain b. mind c. head d. mental
- The company's top-down style made decision-making slow and inflexible.
a. management b. attachment c. agreement d. involvement
- Questions on health, and education were all highly rated by the respondents.
a. self-assured b. self-confident c. self-trusted d. self-care
- It's a high-pressure job and you could burn young.
a. out b. down c. into d. within
- Outsiders attention to slum conditions only when they burned and a black family died.
a. gained b. paid c. said d. spent
- This work is physically and emotionally draining.
a. exhausted b. exhaust c. exhaustion d. exhausting
- I'm sorry! I have come on time.
a. ought to b. must c. may d. might
- You have got a nasty cough. You smoke.
a. don't have to b. wouldn't c. needn't d. shouldn't
- He cold. He isn't wearing a jacket.
a. must be b. can't be c. should be d. ought not to be
- I to the office yesterday. It was Friday.
a. can't have gone b. must have gone c. didn't have to go d. should have gone
- In summer, tourists wear a hat.
a. may b. should c. ought d. need
- You come and see me tomorrow!
a. might b. need c. should d. must
- I remember to visit my sick friend in hospital.
a. might b. must c. ought d. need
- You park here. It is not allowed.
a. shouldn't b. ought not to c. might not d. mustn't
- Yunis do the maths exercise again because he got it all wrong.
a. had to b. needed c. needn't d. didn't need to
- You leave at once. The boss is coming.
a. had to b. can't have c. must d. might

B. Reading Comprehension

My new Friend

2. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

The Nile crocodile is an African crocodile and the second largest extant reptile in the world, after the saltwater crocodile. It lives in different types of aquatic environments such as lakes, rivers and marshlands.

Although it is capable of living in saline environments, this species is rarely found in saltwater, but occasionally inhabits deltas. The Nile crocodile is an opportunistic predator and a very aggressive species of crocodile that is capable of taking almost any animal within its range. Nile crocodiles are generalists, taking a variety of prey. Their diet consists mostly of different species of fish, reptiles, birds and mammals. It has an extremely powerful bite that is unique amongst all animals and sharp conical teeth that sink into flesh allowing for a grip that is almost impossible to loosen.

Adult Nile crocodiles have a dark bronze colouration above, with faded blackish spots and stripes across the back and a dingy off-yellow on the belly, although mud can often hide the crocodile's actual colour. Their flanks are yellowish-green in colour and have dark patches. Nile crocodiles have green eyes. As it matures, Nile crocodiles become darker.

Nile crocodiles are very social crocodiles. They share basking spots and large food sources such as schools of fish and big carcasses. They also lay eggs to reproduce, which are guarded by the female. They are one of the most dangerous species of crocodile and are responsible for hundreds of deaths of humans every year.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is known about Nile crocodiles?
a. They never live in deltas. b. They only live in deltas.
c. They no longer live in deltas. d. They sometimes live in deltas.
- Why do Nile crocodiles share schools of fish?
a. Because they are aggressive. b. Because they are deadly.
c. Because they are social. d. Because they are conical.
- When do Nile crocodiles become darker in colour?
a. When they eat. b. When they mature. c. When they are hungry. d. When they are angry.
- Where do you rarely see a Nile crocodile?
a. In seas b. In rivers c. In deltas d. In saltwater
- What does the underlined word "their" refer to?
a. Foods. b. Nile crocodiles. c. Prey. d. Reptiles.
- What is meant by the underlined word "predator"?
a. An animal that eats plants. b. An animal that lives in space.
c. An animal that lives on land. d. An animals that eats other animals.
- hides the real colour of Nile crocodiles.
a. Water b. Mud c. Sand d. Spine
- The teeth of Nile crocodiles sink into allowing for a grip that is almost impossible to loosen.
a. flesh b. flash c. flask d. fuss

9. Nile crocodiles in saltwater.
 a. usually live b. live usually c. seldom live
 10. Nile crocodiles are responsible for hundreds of of humans every year.
 a. accidents b. deaths c. losses d. gains

3. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

While in the army there was nothing I disliked so much as the map-reading course, for the simple reason that I always feel lost even with a map in my hand. For weeks I had lain awake a night thinking of the practical test I would have to face at the end of the course. At last, the evil day arrived. It was to be my responsibility to lead a small band of soldiers back to camp from the middle of nowhere. We were driven out in a closed lorry and left in a ploughed field with instructions to get back to camp as quickly as possible.

Well knowing my abilities, the soldiers smiled as they saw me looking at the map and they made all sorts of helpful suggestions. I folded the map up, put it in my pocket, and said that we would head east. After walking through cornfields for over an hour we came to a wide stream. I again looked at the map. It seemed to be covered with masses of thin blue lines, but which particular line was this stream? In despair, we sat down in the cool shade and I felt like throwing the map into the water. About fifteen minutes later, a boat passed and I asked the boatman if he could give us a lift to the nearest village. I pretended that we had been out for a walk and somehow got lost. The boatman invited us on board and I felt very foolish when he told me that he had helped hundreds of soldiers to pass their map-reading test! When we got back to camp, the Commanding Officer congratulated me on having led the men back so quickly!

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why couldn't the writer sleep properly for weeks?
 a. Because he was ill. b. Because he was in the army.
 c. Because he was to be tested. d. As he was lost in a store.
- Why did the soldiers smile?
 a. Because they were sure of the writer's good abilities.
 b. Because they were doubtful of the writer's abilities.
 c. Because they were confident of the writer's success.
 d. Because they were ready to offer every helpful suggestions.
- What evil day did the writer mean?
 a. The day he joined the army. b. The day he couldn't sleep.
 c. The day he received a map. d. The day of the test.
- Why did the writer want to throw the map in the water?
 a. It was heavy. b. It was useless.
 c. It was useful. d. It had no colours.
- What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?
 a. The soldier. b. The officer. c. The boatman. d. The writer.
- What is a "stream"?
 a. An area full of grass. b. A very small river. c. A farmland. d. A mountain.

- How did the writer and the soldiers reach the ploughed field?
 a. In an open van b. In a closed lorry c. In an open lorry d. In a closed ship
- What lie did the writer tell the boatman?
 They were lost while walking b. They were hunting when they got lost
 c. They were lost while sleeping d. They were attacked by pirates
- What would the writer have to do at the end of the map-reading course?
 a. To read out what he understood for the soldiers
 To get back to the camp as quickly as possible.
 c. To send a message to the main camp.
 d. To give a report to his boss.
- What surprised the writer when he returned to the camp?
 a. He was punished b. He was sent away c. He was beaten d. He was congratulated

C Writing

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- An important part of your CV is your
 a. details b. achievements c. relatives d. agreements
- A blue sky thinking is when you try to think of creative ideas, it's like thinking outside the box.
 a. , b. ! c. _ d. /
- An adverb is a word that
 a. expresses feelings. b. expresses actions.
 c. gives more details about a group of people. d. gives more details about verbs or adjectives.
- Which of the following is correct?
 a. A paragraph must include at least three sentences.
 b. Two sentences are enough for being called a paragraph.
 c. It doesn't really matter how many sentences are there in a paragraph.
 d. A paragraph must include five sentences.

D Translation

5. Choose the best Arabic Translation:

- Air travel has advantages and disadvantages. Though it's comfortable, some accidents take place now and then.
 أ. للسفر جوا مزايا وعيوب فهو مريح وبعض الحوادث تحدث بين الحين والحين.
 ب. للسفر جوا مزايا وعيوب فبرغم أنه مريح إلا أن بعض الحوادث تحدث بين الحين والحين.
 ج. للسفر جوا مزايا وعيوب برغم أنه مريح وبعض الحوادث تحدث بين الحين والحين.
 د. للسفر جوا مزايا وعيوب لأنه مريح وبعض الحوادث تحدث بين الحين والحين.
- Our hunger for land, wood and water is growing, therefore the future of life itself is in danger.
 أ. يزداد احتياجنا للأرض والخشب والماء لأن مستقبل الحياة نفسها في خطر.
 ب. يزداد احتياجنا للأرض والخشب والماء لذا فإن الحياة نفسها في مستقبل خطر.
 ج. يزداد جوع الأرض والخشب والماء لذا فإن مستقبل الحياة نفسها في خطر.
 د. يزداد احتياجنا للأرض والخشب والماء لذا فإن مستقبل الحياة نفسها في خطر.

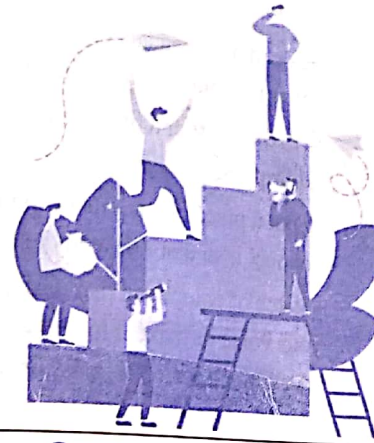
6. Choose the best English Translation:

١. أصبحت جودة التعليم في المدارس والجامعات ضرورة ملحة في عالم المعرفة والمعلوماتية.

- a. Achieve the quality of education in schools and universities has become an urgent necessity in the world of knowledge and information.
- b. Achieving the quality of education in schools and universities has become an urgent necessity in the world of knowledge and information.
- c. Achieving the quality of education in schools and universities become an urgent necessity in the world of knowledge and information.
- d. Achieving the quality of education in schools and universities has become an urgent necessity in the world knowledge and information.
٢. لا يجب أن يبقى الناس معرضين للشمس لفترات طويلة لأن الأشعة فوق البنفسجية قد تضر بالبشرة.
- a. People shouldn't to stay in the sun for long periods because the sun's ultraviolet rays may harm the complexion.
- b. People shouldn't stay in the sun for long periods but the sun's ultraviolet rays may harm the complexion.
- c. People shouldn't stay in the sun for long periods because the sun's ultraviolet rays may harm the complexion.
- d. People shouldn't stay in the sun for long periods because the sun's ultraviolet rays may be harmed the complexion.



Unit (5)



The future of work

مستقبل العمل

Objectives

- Reading** Text messages between a student and an IT Support worker.
- Writing** A letter of application for a job;
An email asking for clarification about study tips.
- Listening** A podcast about the future of work.
- Speaking** A discussion about new ways of studying.
- Language** Verb patterns with the gerund and infinitive; Phrasal verbs.
- Life skills** Problem solving.

Unit 5: The future of work

Part 1: Lessons (1-2)

Definitions

Definition

Word	Meaning	Definition
virtual	افتراضي	made, done, seen etc. on the Internet or on a computer, rather than in the real world.
mute	صامت/ يجعله صامت	to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely.
install	يثبت / يحمل	to put a piece of equipment somewhere and connect it so that it is ready to be used.
microphone	ميكروفون	a piece of equipment that you speak into to record your voice or make it louder when you are speaking or performing in public.
sound	صوت	the sound produced by a television or radio programme, a film etc.
possibility	امكانية / احتمالية	if there is a possibility that something is true or that something will happen, it might be true or it might happen.
interpersonal	شخصي	relating to relationships between people.

Vocabulary

Important Expressions

install software	تثبيت نظام التشغيل	turn the sound up	يرفع الصوت
join a virtual meeting	ينضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي	turn the sound down	يخفض الصوت
leave a virtual meeting	يترك الاجتماع الافتراضي	catch up with your work	يسير عملك
turn microphones on	يضع الميكروفونات	share your screen	تشارك شاشة هاتفك
switch cameras on and off	يغير ويوقف الكاميرات	mute microphone	يتم صامت الميكروفون
touch microphone	يلمس الميكروفون	check internet connection	يُفحص من وصلة الإنترنت
look into possibilities	ينظر في الاحتمالات	close the meeting	يغلق الاجتماع
look into other ways of	يبحث في طرق أخرى لـ	stay in touch with	يظل على اتصال بـ

Reading and Critical Thinking

document	وثيقة	employ	يوظف	working hours	ساعات العمل
by accident	بالصدفة	employment	توظيف	interview	مقابلة شخصية
technical problems	مشاكل تقنية	unemployment	البطالة	interviewer	مُحاور
instant messaging	رسالة فورية	employer	صاحب عمل	interviewee	مُحاور معه
responding	استجابة	employee	موظف	environment	البيئة
colleagues	زملاء عمل	unemployed	عاطل	recent changes	تغييرات حديثة
definitely	بالتأكيد	employable	صالح للعمل	trend	اتجاه / توجه
spaces	أماكن مفتوحة	unemployable	غير صالح للعمل	headphones	سماعات آذن
coffee shops	مقاهي	plug	قابس كهرباء	latest	أخر
forum	منتدى	delay	تأخير	online	متصل بالإنترنت
race	سباق	connect	يوصل	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
tools	أدوات	connected to	متصل بـ	destroy	يدمر
human beings	البشر	connection	اتصال	destruction	دمار
apply	يطبق / يقدم	risk	يخطر / مخاطرة	destructive	مدمر
applicant	مقدم وظيفة	download	يحمل من الت	version	إصدار / نسخة
application	تقديم وظيفة	position	وظيفة	stressful situation	موقف عصيب
applicable	قابل للتطبيق	suited to	مناسب لـ	appear	يظهر / يبدو
applied	تطبيقي	faithfully	بأمانة	decline	انخفاض / يفض
high level	مستوى عال	maybe	ربما	logical	منطقي

Grammar and Communication Skills

make predictions	يتنبأ	used together	تستخدم معا	efficiently	بكفاءة
consist of	يتكون من	noun	اسم	followed by	متبوع بـ
prepositions	حروف الجر	separated	مفصول / منفصل	form	تشكل / تكون
meaning	معنى	stay the same	تبقى كما هي	in my opinion	في رأيي
according to	وفقا لـ	verb pattern	نمط الفعل	think / believe	يعتقد

Prepositions

easy for	سهل لـ	deal with	يتعامل مع	on their own	بفردهم
excited by	مثار بـ	apply for	يتقدم لـ	replaced by	يُستبدل بـ
think of	يفكر في	at the same time	في نفس الوقت	at least	على الأقل

Important Collocations & Expressions

stopped responding	توقف عن الاستجابة	show a document	عرض الوثيقة
miss school work	بفوته عمل مدرسي	share documents online	بشارك الوثائق على النت
have a virtual meeting	لديه اجتماع افتراضي	do a project	يقم بمشروع
become even more important	تصبح أكثر أهمية	none at all	لا أحد على الإطلاق
have the choice	لديه الاختيار	It was still on	كنت لا أزال متصلا
on my way home	في طريقي للمنزل	install the latest version	يحمل أحدث إصدار
on a call	في مكالمة	lose the race	يفسر السباق
slow internet connection	اتصال إنترنت بطيء	take control of	يسيطر على
cause a change in	يسبب تغيير في	destroy jobs	يدمر الوظائف
cause so many problems	تسبب الكثير من المشاكل	offer me the position	يعرض علي المنصب
IT Support worker	عامل دعم تكنولوجيا المعلومات	interpersonal skills	مهارات التعامل مع الآخرين
video conference call	مكالمة جماعية عبر الفيديو	suited to the role	مناسب للدور
welfare office	مكتب الرعاية الاجتماعية	student welfare officer	ضابط رعاية الطلاب
the meaning changes	المعنى يتغير	phrasal verbs	أفعال مصحوبة بحرف جر
difference in meaning	اختلاف في المعنى	have a memory of	لديك ذكرى لـ
for the first five minutes	لمدة الخمس دقائق الأولى	The way I see it	في رأيي

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	synonyms	Antonyms
virtual	افتراضي	so-called / assumed / supposed	actual / real / true
mute	صامت	speechless / voiceless / wordless	talkative / communicative
install	يثبت / يشغل	lodge / settle / set / operate	discharge / terminate
possibility	احتمالية	capability / potentiality / probability / likelihood	actuality / reality / certainty
personal	شخصي	private / unique / individual	general / public / shared
available	متاح	accessible / obtainable / reachable	limited / restricted / unavailable
consequences	نتائج	conclusions / results / sequences	reasons / causes
contact	اتصال	connection / communication	disconnection / losing touch
instant	فوري	immediate / fast / emergent	former / past / finished
decline	انخفاض	deterioration / setback	progress / development

My new Friend

position	مكانة / وظيفة	job / post / occupation	unemployment / joblessness
trend	اتجاه	new wave / novelty	classic / standard
risk	يخطر	adventure / hazard / confront	guard / protect / save

Reading Texts

1. A chat conversation between a student called Carla and an IT support worker at her school.

Carla : Hi, can you help us?

IT Support: Yes, sure. Can you tell me what the problem is?

Carla : Sure. We wanted to have a virtual meeting with a group of students in Egypt for a project. We installed the software for the meeting and that was fine. Everyone joined the meeting. We turned our microphones on and switched our cameras on. We could hear and see everyone without any problems for the first five minutes.

IT Support: OK and what happened then?

Carla : Then, I shared my screen and everything stopped working.

IT Support: So the other students couldn't hear or see you and you couldn't see or hear them either?

Carla : That's right. We were talking to them, but they stopped responding. It was clear that they couldn't hear us. We turned our sound up, but it seems that they still couldn't hear anything we said or see us. We can only see the document I wanted to show them now.

IT Support: Did you mute your microphone?

Carla : No, I didn't touch my microphone. It was still on.

IT Support: Did you check your internet connection?

Carla : Yes, I did. The internet connection is fine.

IT Support: That's strange. Are you definitely still in the meeting? Could it be that you left the meeting and you didn't realise it?

Carla : I'll check. Oh, you're right. I closed the meeting by accident! Sorry.

IT Support: Don't worry. It happens. Maybe you can look into other ways of staying in touch with the students during your meetings if there are technical problems, like email or instant messaging.

Carla : Yeah, good idea. Thanks for your help. I'll go and email the students.

2. A Conversation

Nevine: I've bought some new headphones and have plugged them in but now I can't mute my microphone and everyone can hear me all the time.

Hana : I'm having problems with a video conference call. I can't hear anything when people are talking to me. I've just downloaded and installed the latest version of the software but nothing is happening. I've tried turning off the computer and turning it on again. Any other ideas?

Mazin : I need to show someone what's on my computer when we're on a call, but I don't know how to share my screen.

Ziad : There's a long delay when I'm playing games online and I can never keep up with my friends. I always lose the races in the games. Do I need to look into getting a better internet connection?

Malak : When I join a meeting online, I can't turn on my camera. So people can hear me, but they can't see me!

3. A letter for a job application

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing this letter to apply for the position of student welfare officer.

I believe that I am suited to the role because I enjoy helping people feel more positive. At school, I have learned to deal with stressful situations. I like to use my weekends and evenings to help other students. I always appear to be calm which helps the person I am speaking to.

I am very excited by this role and I hope you decide to offer me the position. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Mariam

Language Notes

My new Friend

1. and so / and neither:

(إثبات) فاعل + فعل مساعد + and so + جملة

(نفي) فاعل + فعل مساعد + neither / and neither + جملة منفية

* Ahmed is hardworking and so are his friends.

* Malak doesn't go to the club, and neither do her friends.

2. too / either

أيضا: جملة + too / as well + جملة مثبتة

- either + جملة منفية + جملة منفية

* Ali is fond of rap music. Mona is fond of rap music too. (Mona is too)

* My brother doesn't prefer tea. I don't prefer tea either. (I don't either)

3. lose / miss / waste:

يخسر منافسة / يفقد (شيء مادي أو معنوي أحيانا) lose / lost / lost

* Egypt lost the last match.

* I lost my briefcase yesterday.

- get lost = be lost = go missing = lose + صفة ملكية + way (يفضل الطريق):

* His son got lost / was lost / went missing / lost his way in the forest.

- miss يفقد شخص

* My father is abroad, we miss him very much.

- miss يفوته حدث / يتغيب عن حدث

* He missed 20 games after breaking a bone in his wrist.

- miss لا يلحق وسيلة مواصلات

* He was unfortunate, he missed the bus.

- Important expressions with (MISS):

miss the mark	يفشل في تحقيق هدف	miss the boat	يفشل في انتهاز فرصة
miss the point	لا يفهم شيء ما	miss class/ lesson/ school/ exam	يتغيب
miss the record	يفقد الرقم القياسي	miss the chance	تضيع عليه الفرصة
miss the goal (the target)	يخطئ الهدف	miss the opportunity	تضيع عليه الفرصة

- a waste of (مضيعة لـ / إهدار لـ) اسم +

* Being unemployed is such a waste of your talents.

* Do you think watching TV is a waste of time?

- go to waste يُصبح فضلات / لم يعد يُستخدم

* Don't let all this food go to waste.

- waste الفضلات (اسم لا يعد)

* People should recycle waste.

- waste يهدر / يضيع (مال - وقت - جهد - طاقة)

* Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity.

4. AS: Different meanings and uses

as + صفة + as	مثال (في المقارنة)	Ali is as tall as Ahmed.
(just) as - while	بينما	He ran into the road just as a car was coming.
as - because	لأن	He went to hospital as he was ill.
as if / as though	على الرغم من	Poor as he is, he is happy.
as + صفة + صفة	كما لو	He walks as if he were a king.
as + صفة + صفة	كأن	He works as a teacher. / Write as I write.
as + صفة + صفة	كأنما	He arrived late as usual.
as usual	بالإضافة إلى	I as well as Ali am clever.
as well as	بمجرد أن	As soon as he arrives, he will watch TV.
as soon as	طالما	You can take my car as long as you are careful.
as long as	مثل (لإعطاء أمثلة)	They need basic foods such as sugar and bread.
such as	بالنسبة لـ	As for me, he is brilliant.
As for	بداية من (وقت)	The shop will reduce prices as from Saturday.
as of / as from		

5. apply / enroll / join:

- apply for: الخ. - كلية - جامعة - جامعة - جنسية ... الخ.

* Do you think I should apply for this job?

* He will apply for university next month.

- apply to + مصدر (لـ):

* He will apply to join the army after he finishes university.

- apply to + مكان - شخص - مكان:

* I applied to the manager of the bank to have a loan.

- enroll in (on) = join = get a place at = apply for: يتقدم اسمه في - يتقدم

* I enrolled on (in) an evening course in computer programming.

- enroll (be enrolled) in (on): تم إدراج اسمه - تم إدراج اسمه

* He has enrolled on a course. = He has been enrolled on a course.

6. More notes:

off	مغلق للأجهزة والنور	closed / shut	مغلق (باب / شباك / محل)
personal	شخصي / ذاتي	interpersonal	مع الآخرين
connect ... with	يوصل ... بـ	connect to	يتصل بـ
brain / mind	المخ / العقل	brains	الدماغ
memory	ذاكرة - ذكرى	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
memorial	نصب تذكاري	memento	تذكارات
destiny	مصير / قدر	destination	جهة السفر / المقصد
sight	البصر	site	موقع بناء - موقع أثري
suit	مناسب - يلائم	suite	جناح في فندق
applicant / candidate	متقدم لوظيفة / مرشح	nominee	مرشح لجائزة أو منصب



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It's a certainty that petrol will go up in price.
a. vice b. virtual c. virtue d. value
- She knew the answer, but she decided to remain
a. mutual b. common c. mute d. mate
- They covered their ears to the sound of the guns.
a. cute b. mute c. motive d. muse
- The computer comes with the software already
a. insulated b. installed c. insulted d. isolated
- The cable company offers lower prices and free
a. insulting b. isolation c. instilment d. installation
- A is a device into which people speak or sing in order to record their voices or to make them sound louder.
a. microwave b. microphone c. microscope d. microorganism
- The film was good, but the was poor.
a. sound b. voice c. hear d. listen
- The movie as though it might be good.
a. likes b. sounds c. voices d. mounts
- There is a strong that I will not be chosen for the job.
a. possible b. impossibility c. possibility d. possibly
- Something which is is relating to or involving relations between people.
a. personal b. interpersonal c. private d. own
- Parking is for people staying at the hotel.
a. access b. available c. detainable d. vulnerable
- The decrease in sales was a of some bad publicity about the company.
a. consequence b. deprivation c. cause d. reason
- The desire to develop is very
a. humanity b. mankind c. humane d. human
- You need to install some new on your computer.
a. software b. malware c. warrior d. excavator
- Please, the sound up; I can't hear.
a. learn b. turn c. vent d. verb
- He the company as a graduate trainee.
a. enrolled b. gained c. joined d. applied

Unit 5: The future of work

17. The sound is very loud. Could you turn it?
a. out b. on c. up d. down
18. A message flashed up on my computer
a. skin b. screen c. scene d. leather
19. Internet via broadband offers many advantages.
a. conviction b. connection c. contamination d. conversion
20. the hose to the tap and turn on the water.
a. Connect b. Communicate c. Comment d. Convert
21. The dispute is not directly to the negotiations.
a. counted b. measured c. connected d. continued
22. They set up a working party to look the issue.
a. on b. onto c. into d. to
23. The internet allows me to in touch with people all over the world.
a. stay b. sit c. set d. seem
24. I sent him the original, not a photocopy.
a. duckling b. duck c. dock d. document
25. How many workmen do you at your factory?
a. take b. employ c. work d. task
26. he touched the hot metal, and yanked his hand away with a cry of pain.
a. Accidental b. By accident c. Accident d. In accident
27. Graduates are finding it more and more difficult to find
a. employer b. employment c. employee d. unemployment
28. messaging enables users to exchange messages from mobile devices.
a. Instant b. Constantly c. Anonymous d. Notorious
29. I asked him his name, but he didn't
a. respond b. report c. port d. import
30. Many women earn less than their male
a. colleges b. colleagues c. leagues d. ligulas
31. The latest event changed the of public opinion.
a. trend b. tend c. tension d. attend
32. This cable should have a at one end and a socket at the other.
a. plug b. smuggle c. bug d. bag
33. The conference provides a useful for the exchange of views and ideas.
a. frame b. firm c. form d. forum

My new Friend

34. I'll send you my email address once I'm
a. line b. lined c. disconnected d. online
35. This message cannot be moved while Communicator is
a. online b. connected c. offline d. disconnect
36. My brother will be the youngest runner in the
a. truce b. race c. crisis d. crises
37. The frying company apologised for the and any inconvenience caused.
a. late b. delay c. develop d. ally
38. The plane is overdue and has been by the bad weather.
a. deleted b. delayed c. developed d. deployed
39. The railway line will the two cities.
a. collect b. link c. shrink d. sink
40. Primitive man made himself primitive from stones and bones.
a. tails b. tools c. trials d. attempts
41. The quake mud buildings in many remote villages.
a. established b. destroyed c. cooperated d. operated
42. The enemy mad bombardment caused unprecedented death and in the country.
a. destruction b. construction c. institution d. constitution
43. Human need food, clothing and shelter.
a. begins b. pings c. beings d. beans
44. The restaurant for a licence to sell wine.
a. implied b. replied c. applied d. compiled
45. The successful for the job will have excellent interpersonal skills.
a. implement b. applicant c. apparatus d. opponent
46. Smoking can increase the of developing heart disease.
a. task b. risk c. quick d. splash
47. A future of the camera is currently being developed.
a. nutrition b. tension c. intention d. version
48. Each person in this situation must always sustain hope.
a. stressful b. stressed c. stress d. pension
49. The area is well to road cycling as well as off-road riding.
a. suited b. suite c. site d. sighted
50. The old nurse had served the family for thirty years. They all love her.
a. regrettably b. regretfully c. faithfully d. sincerity
51. "Consumption of oil has declined in recent years." A synonym for "declined" is

- a. enhanced b. increased c. raised d. decreased
52. The company has gone into a/an because of falling demand.
a. offline b. declare c. announce d. decline
53. Running marathons requires a high of physical fitness.
a. stand b. install c. level d. line
54. We go to the museum once or twice a month.
a. may be b. probable c. maybe d. possible
55. Unable to defeat him by discussion, she criticized his speech.
a. logical b. legal c. literate d. legible
56. Whenever economists predictions or offer advice, they use principles.
a. make b. do c. take d. give
57. to my watch, it is already 2 o'clock.
a. Applying b. Replying c. According d. Decorating
58. The child showed a normal of development.
a. platter b. layer c. pattern d. patron
59. He'll never manage such a big garden on
a. himself b. him c. his own d. his private
60. Some of dog are bred for aggression.
a. types b. firms c. firs d. fogs
61. Lifeguards are trained to with emergencies.
a. deal b. trade c. treat d. hand
62. Doctors are very by the new discovery.
a. excitement b. exciting c. excite d. excited
63. Knowledge can't friendship, I'd rather be an idiot than lose you.
a. place b. take place c. replace d. release
64. You should visit your dentist at twice a year.
a. lost b. less c. least d. waste
65. We the beginning of the movie because we were late.
a. got lost b. missed c. lost d. wasted
66. I was ill so I sent my representative to the
a. meet up b. meet down c. get together d. meeting
67. He hasn't ended the chat; he's still
a. away b. off c. on d. down
68. The police are very concerned for the of the missing child.
a. welfare b. interfere c. affirm d. flare

69. They run their own lives with the assistance of a worker.
a. suppose b. support c. sport d. export
70. There is great between word and deed.
a. different b. difference c. differ d. differently
71. Nothing improves the more than trying to forget.
a. monument b. memorial c. souvenir d. memory
72. I don't eat meat and my husband doesn't
a. too b. neither c. either d. rather
73. I never learned to swim and did they.
a. either b. too c. so d. neither
74. We know not what is good until we have it.
a. missed b. won c. gained d. lost
75. Life is like a journey with an unknown
a. position b. site c. location d. destination
76. "Our deputy manager is the virtual head of the business." A synonym for the word "virtual" is
a. assumed b. real c. factual d. normal
77. "Make sure the equipment is properly installed." An antonym for the word "installed" here is
a. discharged b. connected c. operated d. working
78. "The possibility of war is too horrifying to contemplate." A synonym for the word "possibility" here is
a. likelihood b. manhood c. childhood d. womanhood
79. "She is blunt about her personal life." A synonym for the adjective "personal" here is
a. general b. public c. private d. well-done
80. "Work expands so as to fill the time available." An antonym for "available" is
a. accessible b. obtainable c. reachable d. limited
81. "I'm sorry the boss isn't available at the moment." A synonym for "available" is
a. busy b. occupied c. accessible d. limited
82. "There's always a possibility that he might go back to his town." An antonym for the word "possibility" here is
a. probability b. actuality c. likelihood d. potentiality
83. "He was mute, distant, and indifferent." An antonym for "mute" here is
a. silent b. communicative c. speechless d. voiceless
84. "Nobody can tell what the consequences may be." A synonym for "consequences" is
a. reasons b. factors c. causes d. conclusions

85. "Have you kept in contact with any of your friends from college?" A synonym for the noun "contact" here is

- a. addiction b. communication c. contamination d. disconnection

86. "There is no instant cure for this condition." A synonym for the adjective "instant" here is

- a. fast b. slow c. later d. dimensional

87. "Her daughter was mute after a serious illness." A synonym for the adjective "mute" is

- a. speechless b. talkative c. loud d. communicative

88. "I'm having a shower installed." A synonym for "installed" is

- a. insulated b. fixed c. isolated d. distanced

89. "Please, mute the children; I can't concentrate." A synonym for "mute" here is

- a. raise b. breed c. bring up d. silence

90. "We keep in contact by phone but we rarely see each other." An antonym for "contact" is

- a. connection b. link c. communication d. disconnection

91. "Have you considered the possible consequences?" An antonym for "consequences" is

- a. sequences b. causes c. results d. conclusions

92. "Without a wheelchair, she is a virtual prisoner in her own home." An antonym for the word "virtual" is

- a. assumed b. supposed c. real d. so called

Grammar

Phrasal verbs

Kinds of phrasal verbs:

1. بدون مفعول + حرف جر (ظرف) + فعل:

* She grew up in Paris.

* Look out, a snake is coming.

أمثلة لهذا النوع الأول:

take off	تقلع (الطائرة)	run out	ينتهي / ينفذ	go out	يخرج
hurry up	يسرع	go out	ينطفئ	grow up	يكبر / ينمو
pull up	يتوقف	shut up	يخرس	watch out	يحترس
stand up	يقف	sit down	يجلس	look out	يحترس
wake up	يستيقظ	go on	يستمر	set off	ينطلق في رحلة

2. (غير مرنة) مفعول + حرف جر + فعل:

- لا بد أن يوضع المفعول بعد حرف الجر أو الظرف.

- لا تستطيع فصل الفعل عن حرف الجر أو الظرف.

* Egypt is able to cope with developed countries.

* Dr. Aisha was known as Bint El Shatei.

أمثلة لهذا النوع الثاني:

listen to	يستمع إلى	think about	يفكر في	fall for	يسقط فريسة لخداع
part with	يشارك مع	believe in	يؤمن بـ	go into	يدخل
pay for	يدفع سعر	wait for	ينتظر كذا	go with	يناسب / يمتاشي مع
rely on	يعتمد على	run after	يطارد	lead to	يؤدي إلى
run into	يقابل بالصدفة	sort out	يحل (مشكلة / نزاع)	talk about	يتحدث عن
see to	يدير / ينظم	call for	ينادي بـ	ask for	يطلب
send for	يرسل إلى	care for	يعتني بـ	ask after	يطمن على صحة
stand for	يرمز إلى	come across	يقابل	turn into	يتحول إلى
stick to	يلتزم بـ	cope with	يساير / يجاري	hope for	يامل لـ
adhere to	يتمسك بـ	deal with	يتعامل مع	set up	يشي / يقيم
be aimed at	مهدف	be considered as	يعتبر كـ	be used as	يستخدم كـ
be derived from	مشتق من	be regarded as	يعتبر كـ	be based on	معتمد على
be based in	مقيم في	be applied to	منطبق على	be known as	معروف كـ

3. مفعول + حرف جر + ظرف + فعل:

- لا بد أن يوضع المفعول بعد الظرف و حرف الجر.

- لا تستطيع فصل الفعل عن الظرف و حرف الجر.

أمثلة لهذا النوع الثالث:

come down from	يغادر	back out of	يعود من
catch up with	يساير / يجاري	come up with	يخترع
face up to	يواجه	cut down on	يقلل

stand up for	يدافع عن	be made up of	يتكون من
go back on	يخلف (وعد)	run out of	ينفذ ما لديه / يستهلك

- * You shouldn't go back on your promises.
 * I'm looking forward to the school summer holiday.

* He caught up quickly with me as he ran fast.

4. Flexible phrasal verbs: أفعال شبيهة الجملة للمرنة: تسمى بالأفعال المرنة لأن المفعول يمكن وضعه في موقعين كما يلي:

* Please, turn on the radio.
 * Please, turn the radio on.

منفعل كتم + حرف جر (أقرب) + فعل -
 حرف جر (أقرب) + مفعول كتم + فعل -

حرف جر (أقرب) + مفعول كتمير + فعل -

* Can you reach the radio over that shelf and turn it on?

put on	يركبي	pull down	يهدم	put off	يؤجل
act out	يوضح	setup	يؤسس / يثني	carry out	ينفذ
bottle up	يخفي شعور	turn down	يرفض	fix up	يرتب
find out	يكشف	turn down	يخفض الصوت	make up	يخترع / يؤلف
leave out	يستبعد / يزيل	turn (switch) on	يشق	pay back	يمسك شخص
pick up	يوصل شخص بسيارة	drive away	يعد / يفر	point out	يوضح
throw away	يلقى / يرمي	burn down	يحرق	run down	ينتقد شخص

أهم الأفعال المصحوية بحرف جر التي ورننت بلوحدة:

switch on	يشق جهاز	look into	يفحص / يدرس بعناية
switch off	يغلق جهاز	catch up with	يساير / يجاري
turn on	يشق	stay in touch with	يصل بـ
turn off	يغلق	thank for	يشكر على
turn up	يرفع الصوت	plugin	يوصل بالكهرباء
turn down	يخفض الصوت	keep up with	يساير / يلاحق

- In some phrasal verbs, the noun comes in between the verb and the preposition:
 * Turn your sound up.

- In some phrasal verbs, the noun comes after the phrasal verb:
 * We can look into other ways of staying in touch.

- Some phrasal verbs can either be separated or not separated by a noun:
 - Please turn your camera off / turn off your camera.

Exercises on Grammar

My new Friend

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Turn your sound I can't hear you.
 a. down b. off c. up d. with
- We can look other ways of staying in touch.
 a. on b. into c. by d. away
- Please turn your camera I want to see your face.
 a. down b. on c. off d. out
- We no longer need the camera. You can
 a. turn off it b. turn it off c. turn it of d. turn of it
- We're going to look other ways of sharing documents online.
 a. onto b. within c. into d. in
- You don't have to turn your camera if you don't want to. Leave it on.
 a. on b. down c. off d. into
- At least I have this weekend to catch with the school work I missed!
 a. down b. up c. in d. into
- I asked her to turn her sound, but then it was much too loud.
 a. up b. off c. on d. down
- We told her the sound was too loud so she turned it
 a. out b. down c. off d. on
- The plane will take in twenty minutes.
 a. up b. down c. off d. on
- Watch; a snake is getting closer to you.
 a. down b. out c. up d. off
- While I was studying, the light went; I couldn't complete.
 a. off b. up c. about d. out
- I wish you'd shut for a moment and listen to what the rest of us have to say.
 a. in b. out c. off d. up
- The explorers set to conquer new territories.
 a. on b. off c. down d. into
- Do you?
 a. believe in magic b. believe magic in c. believe on magic d. believe magic on
- The toy was free. I didn't
 a. pay it for b. pay it c. pay for it d. pay it off
- He is trustworthy. You can
 a. rely him on b. rely him c. rely in him d. rely on him

10. These are my children. Please, care
 a. of them b. them of c. for them d. them for
11. Discriminating stands the denial of individual freedom.
 a. in b. for c. with d. to
12. Some people are brave enough to cope their losses.
 a. with b. in c. at d. by
13. You walk on and I
 a. catch you up with b. catch up with you c. catch up you with d. catch you up with
14. We've I need to go to the shops to buy some.
 a. run out sugar of b. run out of sugar c. run sugar out of d. run sugar of out
15. You're walking too fast. I can't you.
 a. keep down b. keep in c. keep out of d. keep up with
16. Keep your promises and never
 a. go back on them b. go them back on c. go back them on d. go them on back
17. The radio is blaring:
 a. turn it off b. turn off it c. turn it of d. turn of it
18. Your shoes are really muddy - before you come in.
 a. take them on b. take on them c. take them off d. take off them
19. You take the apron and
 a. put it on b. put it off c. put on it d. put off it
20. This story is false; I'm sure he
 a. made it off b. made it up c. made up it d. made off it
21. He thanked me helping him during his crisis.
 a. on b. about c. for d. in
22. Through the internet, we can stay in people everywhere.
 a. touch with b. contact c. touching d. touch to

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
highlight	برز	to mark written words with a special coloured pen, or in a different colour on a computer.
old-fashioned	قديم	not considered to be modern or fashionable anymore.
link	ربط بصفحة	to set up a link to a website or webpage.
background	خلفية	the area that is behind the main thing that you are looking at, especially in a picture.
technique	أسلوب / طريقة	a special way of doing something.
shocked	مصدوم	feeling surprised and upset by something very unexpected and unpleasant.

Vocabulary

Reading and Critical Thinking

classmates	زملاء الدراسة	points	نقط	effective	موثر
coloured	ملون	cards	بطاقات	order	ترتيب / يربط
specific	محدد / معين	similar	مشابه	identify	يتعرف على / يحدد
mind maps	خرائط ذهنية	highlight	يبرز / يوضح	in advance	مقدما
study system	نظام دراسة	click on	ينقر على	explanation	تفسير / شرح
Maths exam	امتحان رياضيات	link	رابط صفحة الانترنت	simply	ببساطة
topics	موضوعات	presentation	عرض تقديمي	each other	كلا منهما الآخر
slides	شرائح	sound like	يبدو مثل	technique	أسلوب / تقنية
school book	كتاب مدرسي	PowerPoint	برنامج باور بونت	session	جلسة / حصّة
lines	خطوط	correctly	بشكل صحيح	mark	درجة
notes	ملاحظات	feel free	يشعر بحرية	preparation	إعداد / تجهيز
text	نص	call	يتصل / مكالمة	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
old-fashioned	قديم	mind	بمع / عقل	video calls	مكالمات فيديو
tend to	يميل إلى / يني	results	نتائج	differently	بشكل مختلف
essential	ضروري	details	تفاصيل	certain	محدد

Unit 5: The future of work

background	خلفية	notes	ملاحظات	record	يسجل / سجل
guess	يخمن	wonder	يتعجب / يتساءل	shocked	مصدوم
helpful	مفيد / مساعد	attach	يرفق	option	خيار

Essay vocabulary

study techniques	درس أساليب	summary	ملخص	apply	يطبق
chat box	صندوق الدردشة	clip icon	أيقونة الكليب	share	يشارك
email address	عنوان بريد	camera icon	أيقونة الكاميرا	plus sign	علامة زائد +
settings	إعدادات	window	نافذة	image	صورة

Prepositions

with colours	بالألوان	in different colours	بألوان مختلفة	at the bottom of	في قاع
give up	يقع عن	sure about	متأكد بشأن	talk through	يتحدث خلال
meet up with	يجمع مع	concentrate on	يركز على	on the right	على اليمين
in one place	في مكان واحد	surprised by	متدهش من	on the left	على اليسار

Important Collocations & Expressions

draw mind maps	رسم خرائط ذهنية	create a study system	ينشئ نظام دراسة
introduce an explanation	يقدم تفسير	make short notes about	يدون ملاحظات قصيرة عن
make a list of	يعد قائمة بـ	different coloured pens	أقلام ملونة مختلفة
plan a reply to	يخطط لرد على	prepare a presentation	يعد عرض تقديمي
identify specific things	يتعرف على أشياء محددة	give a presentation	يقدم عرض توضيحي
get stressed	يصبح مضغوط	present your ideas to	تقدم أفكارك لـ
share documents	يشارك الوثائق	have a quick call	يجري مكالمة سريعة
take a break	يأخذ راحة	do another session	يقوم بجلسة أخرى
ask for study tips	يطلب نصائح للدراسة	for the same amount of time	لنفس كمية الوقت
how the studying goes	كيف تسير المذاكرة	every twenty-five minutes	كل 25 دقيقة
get my final results	أحصل على درجتي النهائية	make a summary of	يقوم بعمل ملخص لـ
spend more time doing	سقتضي وقت أكثر في فعل	all the best	كل خير
attach the document	يرفق الوثيقة	add a virtual background	يضيف خلفية افتراضية
at the bottom of the screen	في أسفل الشاشة	in a different place	في مكان مختلف
in the centre of	في مركز	in a different order	بترتيب مختلف

My new Friend

write on cards	يكتب على بطاقات	in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة
bring information about a topic together			يجمع معلومات عن موضوع ما معا
draw lines from the centre			يرسم خطوطاً من المركز
highlight different types of words			يبرز الأنواع المختلفة للكلمات
summarise important information			يلخص المعلومات الهامة
avoid sitting at his desk for so long			يتجنب الجلوس في مكتبة لمدة طويلة
reduce the essential information into			يقلل المعلومات الأساسية إلى
makes revising more (a lot) interesting			يجعل المراجعة أكثر إثارة
do you mind me emailing you for?			هل تمانع أن أرسلك بريد إلكتروني لـ

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
highlight	يبرز	feature / illuminate / spotlight	belittle / minimize
old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	historic / traditional / out of date	fashionable / up to date
technique	أسلوب	approach / method / manner	
shocked	مصدوم	amazed / astonished / stunned	relaxed
effectively	بكفاءة	efficiently / aptly / neatly	unsuitably / incorrectly / poorly
creative	إبداعي	imaginative / innovative	imitative / unimaginative
tend	ينوي	incline / trend / run	avoid / disregard
essential	ضروري	necessary / vital / required	compulsory / obligatory
details	تفاصيل	items / particulars / points	sums / totals / wholes
simply	ببساطة	mainly / primarily / purely	besides / additionally / likewise
session	جلسة	assembly / workshop / seminar	
reduce	يقلل	lessen / lower / decline / cut down	increase / enhance
option	خيار	supplement / accessory	essential / necessity
grateful	ممنون	appreciative / thankful	rude / thoughtless / ungrateful

1. Three study tips

TIP 1: Make a study plan before you start studying.

Start by thinking what you need to learn. For example, if you need to study for a Maths exam, make a list of all the topics you need to know. Then, decide how much time you'll need to learn about each one. Finally, decide which topics are the most important and plan to spend more time on these.

TIP 2: Draw mind maps

This is a creative way of bringing information about a topic together in one place. You start by writing the topic in the centre of the page and then draw lines from the centre. At the end of each line, you write a different part of the topic and make short notes about it. You could even use pictures instead of text in your mind map too.

TIP 3: Create a study system with colours

For example, if you write the most important points about a topic on cards, you could use the same colour cards for similar topics. This will help you to find information more quickly. You could also get some different coloured pens and highlight different types of words (verbs, nouns, adjectives, etc.) in different colours.

2. An email asking about virtual meetings

To: Monica@email.com

From: Iman@email.com

Hi Minica,

Thank you for your email about virtual meetings. I understand how to join the meeting by clicking on the link in an email and turning my microphone and camera on and off, but I'm not sure about how to give a presentation during a meeting. It sounds like you have to share your screen if you want to show other people a document or PowerPoint slides, is that right? So I need to join the meeting, share my screen and then stop sharing when I've finished showing the thing I wanted to show. Have I understood that correctly? If I haven't, feel free to let me know how I should be doing it. Maybe we could have a quick call so you can talk to me through it.

Thanks very much in advance for your help. I'm sure I'll be able to give presentations in our meeting without any problems very soon.

Talk to you soon,

Iman

3. An email giving study tips

Hi there,

You asked for some study tips and I have two good ones for you. Try using the Pomodoro technique. You concentrate on your work for 25 minutes, then take a break, then do another session for the same amount of time, then take another break. After few of these, you take a longer break.

Try teaching another student something you find difficult to understand. Prepare something before you meet up with them. Then explain it to your friend as well as you can.

Let me know how the studying goes.

Talk to you soon!

4. Studying on my head

I was never very good at concentrating, so my dad gave me a book called, "Study skills for you." I discovered lots of new ideas.

The first message in the book is that we all learn differently. So, the first thing I did was to learn how I best remember things. I tried making a summary of each unit of the schoolbook, then a summary of the summary until I reduced the essential information into a small mind map. Highlighting important details in different colours helped me so much that I was even able to remember where on the map certain information was.

History was my worst subject. So while I was making my notes, I played the same song in the background. When I went to sleep, I used to listen to the song again to make me think about the history notes. To avoid too much sitting on my desk, I got up every twenty minutes and walked around my room or went and studied in the park. I also recorded my notes on my phone and listened to them while walking in the park.

So, I guess you're wondering whether all these experiments worked? Well, it certainly helped me discover how I remember things best and it made revising a lot more interesting. This meant I spent more time doing it. When I got my final results, I was shocked but very happy to tell my dad that the highest mark I got was in History!

5. An email about thanking for advice

Hi Eman,

Thanks so much for your help with sharing documents while in a virtual meeting. I think I've understood everything, but I'd just like to check.

I read your email carefully and from your explanation I understand that there are different ways to share documents. The first is to send each person an email with the document attached. That's a good idea but there are 25 people in my class, and I don't have all their email addresses.

The other option is to attach the document in the chat box. Am I right in thinking that I have to click on the clip icon to do this? After that I need to choose the option which says "everyone" and click on the arrow to send it to everyone in the video call. Have I understood that correctly?

Thanks again for all your wonderful advice which has been really helpful. If I have any more questions, do you mind me emailing you again for help?

All the best,

Heba

6. An email about adding a virtual background

Hi there,

Adding a virtual background is great fun and quite easy to do when you know how. Let me explain.

First, look for the arrow next to the camera icon at the bottom of the screen. Click on that and then click on "settings". Another window will open, and you have to find the option on the left that says "video and image backgrounds". You have to click on that. If you don't have any images, you can add them by clicking on the plus sign which you can find on the right. Choose the image you want and then click on "apply" and that's it.

I hope you have lots of fun but let me know if you have any problems.

Speak soon,

Basel

Language Notes

1. help / assist / aid:

يساعد على أن مصدر / to + مصدر + (مفعول) + help + فاعل -

يساعد في اسم + in/with + (مفعول) + help + فاعل -

* I helped her (to) carry her cases up the stairs.

* She was coming to help clean the machines.

* My father has helped me with my homework.

* He helped in the reform of education.

- give + شخص + a hand = lend a hand يقدم العون

* Can you give me a hand moving these boxes?

- assist يساعد شخص في أداء عمله (رسمياً)

* He was employed to assist the manager in his duties.

- aid يساعد شخص أو عضو في الجسم على القيام بشيء

* These materials can aid a teacher.

1. find / found / find out / discover / establish:

يجد / يكتشف / يحدد

* If I found a book, I would give it to the teacher.

عريق / يرفع شأن / يثبت / يكتشف / يحدد

* Thomas Edison founded an electrical company of his own.

* The council has decided to establish five new schools in my town.

* This promotion will help establish you at work.

* Our company is an established one. It was founded 100 years ago.

يكتشف شيء جديد / يكتشف / يكتشف - يعرف عن / find out (about)

* Let's log on the internet so that we can find out about this event.

* Dr. Zewail discovered the femto second.

3. similar / the same:

يشابه جزئياً / similar to

* Your car is similar to mine except for the colour.

* The two suits are similar.

يشابه كلياً / نفس الشيء بالضبط / the same as

* Your car is the same as my car.

* These two books are the same.

as + صفة + as = as + اسم + the same

* Your flat is the same size as mine. = Your flat is as big as mine.

نفس الشيء يتم مع / the same with

* I've lost my car. It's the same with my friend.

4. More Notes:

human	انسانى (بشرى) (خاص بالبشر)	humane	انسانى (عطوف)
human	بشرى - انسانى	inhuman	وحشى - غير انسانى
human beings	البشر	humans	البشر
personal	شخصى	personnel	خاص بشئون الافراد العاملين
personal	شخصى	public	عام
personally	شخصياً (بعد صفة أو be)	in person	شخصياً (بعد فعل عادي)
persons / people	أشخاص	peoples	جماعات / شعوب



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My dance class is the of my week. It was the best event.

a. sunlight

b. plight

c. highlight

d. moonlight

2. She challenged him on his views with her modern opinions.

a. convenient

b. old-fashioned

c. temporary

d. permanent

3. Click on this to visit our online bookstore.
a. tank b. wink c. link d. shrink
4. The chameleon survives by blending in with its
a. backward b. background c. forward d. surround
5. It was a new production aimed at minimizing wastage.
a. technique b. technical c. typing d. typist
6. He was too to give an account of what had happened.
a. relaxed b. shocked c. shaken d. checked
7. The judges awarded both finalists equal
a. paints b. points c. plains d. pains
8. Antibiotics are to cure throat infection.
a. effect b. affectionate c. effective d. defective
9. The two approaches are basically very They have many things in common.
a. systematic b. similar c. varied d. variable
10. Please any terms that are unfamiliar to you.
a. sunlight b. moonlight c. allocate d. highlight
11. Can you the man by his picture?
a. identity b. identify c. clarify d. personify
12. The project must be completed within a time span.
a. spicy b. specific c. sustain d. suspect
13. Students are advised to make mind while studying.
a. maps b. caps c. tops d. scrapes
14. Please ensure that you purchase your ticket in
a. adverb b. advice c. advance d. device
15. I on the link to the next page of the web site.
a. kicked b. knocked c. crooked d. clicked
16. The speaker ended by suggesting some for discussion.
a. tops b. topics c. troops d. tribes
17. The trial was adjourned following the of new evidence to the court.
a. presentation b. communication c. connection d. prevention
18. The secretary a presentation before the board of directors.
a. took b. gave c. played d. realised
19. The programme contains some and visually stimulating material.
a. creative b. creator c. creation d. create
20. Listen! That like somebody crying for help.
a. sounds b. sends c. receives d. hear
21. She has a weekly at the health club on Saturdays.
a. section b. session c. recession d. depression

22. His lecture was illustrated with taken during the expedition.
a. sledges b. rises c. slides d. scolds
23. If you have any questions, please to contact us.
a. let me know b. feel free c. freedom d. letting
24. You'll find these meals quick and convenient to
a. pretend b. prepare c. reappear d. disappear
25. I've translated three from English into Arabic.
a. texts b. taxis c. contexts d. textures
26. Would you repeating what you just said?
a. mind b. brain c. head d. skull
27. The internet allows making voice or video to other computers.
a. calls b. cellars c. ... d. sales
28. People to confuse bad decisions with bad luck.
a. trend b. attend c. tend d. tension
29. The of the experiment were inconclusive.
a. results b. causes c. affects d. reasons
30. Even in small companies, computers are an tool. They are indispensable.
a. trivial b. essential c. minor d. insignificant
31. The document supplies of the proposed changes.
a. details b. deletes c. attains d. traits
32. The bank robbery was on video; it was easy to identify the robbers.
a. recorded b. imported c. exported d. ventured
33. The registry holds of all major operations.
a. records b. decors c. accords d. cords
34. She who'd sent her the mysterious email.
a. wandered b. wondered c. warned d. guaranteed
35. Don't forget to the label to your luggage.
a. attract b. attach c. indict d. addict
36. The government has two; to reduce spending or to increase taxes.
a. options b. counts c. octopuses d. stresses
37. Before I, I'd like to thank you all for coming.
a. summary b. result c. conclude d. reload
38. In the chat, people write emails to each other.
a. dot b. box c. cartoon d. carton
39. Enter your password, then click on the 'proceed'
a. icon b. falcon c. tachyon d. techno
40. He bowed as a of respect to his father.
a. sign b. slight c. slice d. trend

41. The engineer modified some of the of the machine.
a. settings b. swipes c. sweets d. strips
42. She has acquired an email and a site on the World Wide Web.
a. title b. headline c. address d. location
43. His public is very different from the real person.
a. image b. imagine c. margin d. migraine
44. He closed his letter with expression of thanks.
a. regretful b. careful c. grateful d. dutiful
45. Whenever we meet them, they always end up talking shop.
a. down b. down on c. up d. up with
46. I couldn't concentrate my work - my mind was on other things.
a. in b. for c. on d. out
47. Teachers can notes about students for their own personal use.
a. give b. do c. make d. spend
48. I've a list of places I'd like to visit while we're in Paris.
a. done b. made c. wiped d. wrapped
49. He always stressed easily.
a. makes b. gets c. does d. has
50. We recently the government with a petition signed by 4,500 people.
a. gave b. handed c. presented d. offered
51. My father gave me some useful on organizing my time.
a. taps b. tips c. tops d. troops
52. The World Cup Competitions are held four years.
a. all b. either c. every d. whole
53. It can be useful to write a short of your argument first.
a. summary b. salary c. wage d. describe
54. this document with your email. It's necessary to send it.
a. Attract b. Detach c. Attach d. Index
55. After writing this composition, it into only five lines.
a. summarize b. organize c. sterilize d. recognize
56. The internet has made communication interesting.
a. a lot b. a lot of c. lots of d. lots
57. Do you mind me you for more information?
a. emailing b. to email c. emailed d. email
58. people are considerate of animals.
a. Human b. Cruel c. Savage d. Humane
59. A synonym for the word 'help' is
a. detect b. attract c. assist d. consist

60. She refused to answer questions about her finances.
a. personal b. personnel c. interpersonal d. intrapersonal
61. "There has been a decline in the size of families." A synonym for "decline" is
a. deterioration b. progress c. enhancement d. development
62. "Can you find our position on this map?" A synonym for "position" here is
a. job b. location c. post d. occupation
63. "The data indicates a trend towards earlier retirement." A synonym for "trend" is
a. connection b. direction c. infection d. injection
64. "The whole future of the company is at risk." A synonym for "risk" is
a. danger b. novelty c. safety d. security
65. "I've highlighted the important passages in yellow." A synonym for "highlight" is
a. belittle b. reduce c. minimize d. spotlight
66. "He had old-fashioned ideas and was easily shocked." An antonym for "old-fashioned" is
a. conventional b. ancient c. traditional d. modern
67. "Our sales technique needs polishing up." A synonym for "technique" is
a. cancellation b. approach c. attachment d. intrusion
68. "I was shocked by the realization of what I had done." A synonym for "shocked" is
a. stunned b. grown c. streamed d. steamed
69. "You dealt with the situation very effectively." A synonym for "effectively" is
a. improperly b. unsuitably c. efficiently d. vulgarly
70. "Patience is an essential attribute for a teacher." An antonym for "essential" is
a. vial b. necessary c. minor d. basic
71. "The trick is done simply by sleight of hand." A synonym for "simply" is
a. hardly b. plainly c. easy d. difficultly
72. "I'd like to know more details." A synonym for "details" is
a. particulars b. generals c. motions d. detains
73. "The older drugs didn't deal effectively with the malaria parasite." An antonym for the adverb "effectively" is
a. properly b. poorly c. positively d. inefficiently
74. "His mother was shocked at the news." An antonym for "shocked" is
a. stunned b. astonished c. relaxed d. surprised
75. "The study highlighted three problem areas." An antonym for "highlight" is
a. illuminate b. pay attention c. neglect d. spotlight

76. "He risked all his money on a game of cards." A synonym for "risked" is
 a. adventured b. saved c. guarded d. protected
77. "He has always clung onto old-fashioned ideas." A synonym for the adjective "old-fashioned" is
 a. modern b. novel c. terminal d. up-to-date
78. "He risked his life helping others to escape." An antonym for "risked" is
 a. deprived b. endangered c. protected d. enlarged

Grammar

Verb patterns with the gerund and the infinitive

agree	يرافق	fail	يفشل	promise	يعد
disagree	يرفض	afford	يتحمل نفقات	threaten	يهدد
arrange	يرتب	aim	يهدف	need	يحتاج
decide	يقرر	deserve	يستحق	wish	ينبغي
plan	يخطط	offer	يعرض	pretend	يدعي - يتظاهر
intend	ينوي	want	يريد	attempt	يحاول
expect	يتوقع	learn	يتعلم	prepare	يعد - يجهز
afford	يتحمل نفقات	predict	يتنبأ	propose	يقترح
dare	يجرؤ	hope	يأمل	determine	يقرر - يحدد

- * Everyone agreed *to meet* at the airport.
 * The boys have arranged *to play* football after school.
 * Ali has decided *to study* science at university.
 * I expect *to finish* my homework later this evening.
 * Do you want *to come* to the party?

admit	يعترف	dislike	يكره
deny	ينكر	miss	يفتقد
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	avoid	يتجنب
finish	ينهي	mind	يماح
appreciate	يقدر	delay/postpone/put off	يوجل
detest	يكره بشدة	fancy / imagine	يتخيل

- * Karim admitted *borrowing* my pen without asking me.
 * The children enjoyed *playing* in the sea.
 * The driver of the car avoided *hitting* the motorbike.
 * He dislikes *sleeping* during the day.

2. أهم الأفعال التي تتبع بـ (V.ing):

practice	يكره
suggest	يفتقد
risk	يتجنب
spend	يماح
resist	يوجل
prevent	يتخيل

1. remember

remember + V.ing
 remember + to + مصدر

(يتذكر أنه فعل الشيء)
 (يتذكر أن يفعل الشيء)

3. أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) دون اختلاف في المعنى:
 start / begin / continue 1

- * It has started to rain (raining).
 * Let's continue to work (working).
 * They are starting *to export* their goods abroad next month.

2. أفعال العاطفة:

like	يحب	love
prefer	يفضل	hate

مصدر + love + like + prefer + hate + V.ing / to + مصدر
 مصدر + would ('d) + love + like + prefer + to + مصدر

- * I like to do / doing exercise every day. * He prefers to fly / flying to Europe.
 * I hate to get / getting water in my eyes. * I'd love to go for a swim this evening.

* أحياناً يكون هناك فرق طفيف بين (V.ing) و (to + مصدر) بعد أفعال العاطفة الرئيسية الأربعة، كما يلي:
 * نستخدم بعدهم (V.ing) عند الحديث عن شيء عام.
 * نستخدم بعدهم (مصدر + to) عند الحديث عن شيء خاص - يموعد معين أو مكان معين أو مع شخص معين.

- * I like drinking coffee.
 * I like to drink coffee in the morning.

* التعبير عن التفضيل:

اسم (V.ing) more than (better than) اسم (V.ing)	love/ like + فاعل
اسم (V.ing) to	prefer + فاعل
مصدر + (to)	rather than + مصدر
اسم (مصدر) than	would rather + فاعل

- * I like running more than swimming. * I prefer running to swimming.
 * I'd prefer to run rather than (to) swim. * I'd rather run than swim.
 * I'd rather have tea than coffee.

* لاحظ ما يلي:

مصدر + would rather ('d rather) + فاعل
 ماضي بسيط + فاعل آخر + would rather ('d rather) + فاعل

- * I'd rather *have* a cup of tea, please.
 * I'd rather you *didn't use* my calculator.

4. أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) مع اختلاف في المعنى:

1. remember

remember + V.ing
 remember + to + مصدر

(يتذكر أنه فعل الشيء)
 (يتذكر أن يفعل الشيء)

Unit 5: The future of work

- * I remember *meeting* this man before.
- * I must remember *to phone* dad when I reach the airport.

2. forget

forget + V.ing (ينسى أنه فعل الشيء)
forget + to + مصدر (ينسى أن يفعل الشيء)

- * She forgot *taking* the medicine so she took it again unnecessarily.
- * He forgot *to take* the medicine so he became seriously ill.

3. regret

regret + V.ing (يندم على شيء ماضي)
regret + to + مصدر (يأسف لقول شيء ماضي)

- * I regret *making* friends with these bad people.
- * I regret *to tell* you that your son has had an accident.

4. stop

stop + V.ing (يتوقف عن فعل شيء)
stop + to + مصدر (يتوقف ليفعل شيء)

- * I stopped *smoking* five months ago.
- * When we reached a restaurant, we stopped *to have* a meal.

5. try

try + V.ing (يجرب وسوف يري النتيجة)
try + to + مصدر (يحاول فعل شيء صعب) (غالباً يفشل)

- * Try doing an individual sport to keep fit.
- * I tried to contact you many times but the line was engaged.

6. go on

go on + V.ing (يستمر في عمل نفس الشيء)
go on + to + مصدر (ينتقل من شيء إلى شيء آخر)

- * My grandfather goes on *working* though he is seventy.
- * After writing the novel, he went on *to write* a short story.

5. أفعال تتبع ب (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) اعتماداً على بناء الجملة:

suggest	يقترح	advise	ينصح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يرشح - يوصي
permit	يسمح	encourage	يشجع
forbid	يمنع - يحرم		

- * ثلاثة حالات تتحدد وفقاً صيغة الفعل الذي يلي تلك الأفعال:
إذا جاء بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول به فاتها تتبع ب (مصدر + to).
إذا لم ياتي بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول به فاتها تتبع ب (V.ing).

My new Friend

- إذا جاءت تلك الأفعال في صيغة المبني للمجهول فاتها تتبع ب (مصدر + to).
- * They won't allow you to park here.
- * He advised buying a new car.

- * They don't allow parking here.
- * You aren't allowed to park here.
- * He advised me to buy a new car.

- * I was encouraged to accept that generous offer.
- * The play is suggested to be cancelled because the main actor is ill.

help + مصدر / مصدر + to / مصدر + مفعول + فاعل

6. الفعل (help)

- * I helped my mother cook/ to cook/ cooking dinner.

7. صيغ خاصة بالأفعال (suggest / recommend / insist):

suggest/ recommend/ insist on + V.ing. فاعل
suggest/ recommend/ insist that + فاعل آخر + مصدر الفعل + (should)
suggest + for + مفعول + to + مصدر الفعل + فاعل

- * He suggested *going* to Turkey for our holiday.
- * He suggested that we *go* (should go) to Turkey for our holiday.
- * He suggested for us *to go* to Turkey for our holiday.

8. بعض الأفعال والصفات والأسماء التي تتبع بحرف جر ويلها (V.ing):

accuse of	يُتهم بـ	thank for	يشكر على
congratulate on	يهنئ ... على	blame for	يلوم على
keen on	متحمس لـ	interested in	مهتم بـ
fond of	مغرم بـ	good at	جيد في
cause of	سبب لـ	reason for	سبب لـ

- * She accused him of stealing her watch.
- * The teacher blamed the boys for making a lot of noise.
- * I'm not keen on playing squash.
- * He explained the reason for making such a dangerous journey.

9. مجموعة من التعبيرات تتبع ب (V.ing):

I can't help/ I can't stop/ I can't resist	لا أقاوم (أحب)	I can't stand / I can't bear	لا أتحمّل (أكره)
Fancy (Imagine)	من المدهش	be busy	مشغول
what (how) about	ماذا عن	It's fun	من الممتع
It's no use/ It's no help	لا فائدة من	I feel like	أشتهي

- * I can't stand *eating* ice cream.
- * It's no good (no use) *wasting* time.
- * I can't help *eating* sweets.

Unit 5: The future of work

10. مجموعة من التعبيرات التي تنتهي بـ (to) لكنها تتبع بـ (V.ing):

contribute to	يساهم في	due to / owing to / thanks to	بسبب - بفضل
am / is / are + used to	معتاد علي	admit / own up (to)	يعترف بـ
am / is / are + accustomed to	معتاد علي	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
take to	يعتاد علي	object to	يعترض علي
look forward to	ينتظر إلى	be opposed to	معارض لـ

* He has admitted (to) breaking the window.

* She is used to watching TV at night.

مصدر + (how) to + مفعول + teach

مصدر + (how) to + learn

مصدر + how to + مفعول + show

مصدر + how to + know

* We should teach our children (how) to depend on themselves.

* I'd like to know how to answer this question.

* Can you show me how to use the computer?

11. الأفعال (teach/ learn/ show/ know):

12. التثني والمبني للمجهول:

* يتفني (V.ing) أو (مصدر + to) بوضع (not) قبلهما:

* Mona suggested not giving them any money.

* Ali decided not to take part in the race.

* المبني للمجهول للصيغتين:

V.ing	being + P.P.
to مصدر	to be P.P.

* He denied being helped by foreigners.

* She wanted to be lent some money.

13. مصدر / not to + مفعول + فعل:

force	يُجبر	invite	يُدعو
oblige	يُجبر	order	يأمر - يطلب
ask	يطلب	expect	يتوقع
tell	يأمر	want	يريد
instruct	يُعلم	warn	يحذر
urge	يحث - يشجع	cause	يسبب
remind	يذكر	persuade	يقتنع
get	يُجبر	wish	يتمنى

* Ali's father advised his son to work hard.

* Parents often warn their children not to run across busy roads.

* We invited our neighbours to have tea with us.

مصدر + to / in order to / so as to + مصدر (بمعنى لكي)

My new Friend
14. استخدام هم جدا لـ (مصدر + to):

* I study hard to get good marks.

* I went to the library to borrow some books.

15. الأفعال التالية تتبع بـ (مصدر):

let	يسمح	see	يرى
make	يجعل	hear	يسمع
'd better	ينبغي		

* My mother made me tidy my room.

* Let me use your mobile for a while, please.

* You'd better start revising now.



Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams' Exercises

- In 1954, the government decided the High Dam. (دور ثان 2011)
a. built b. building c. to build d. had built
- On my way to the station, I stopped about Fatma. (دور أول 2012)
a. asking b. ask c. to ask d. asked
- We expect the English test this year. (دور أول 2013)
a. pass b. to passing c. passing d. to pass
- They suggested for a picnic in the park. (دور ثان 2013)
a. to go b. goes c. has gone d. going
- She often avoids with strangers as she is very shy. (دور أول 2014 - ن.ق.)
a. speaks b. to speak c. speak d. speaking
- The lazy student admitted his homework at home. (دور أول - ن.ج - 2015)
a. leaving b. to leave c. left d. leaves
- I still remember Alexandria when I was young. It was really amazing. (دور ثان - 2015)
a. to visit b. being visited c. visit d. visiting
- It's no use We've missed the train. (أزهر 96)
a. hurries b. hurried c. hurrying d. to hurry
- He stopped a long time ago. (أزهر 2013)
a. smoking b. to smoke c. smoked d. had smoked
- I always avoid with bad people. (أزهر 2014)
a. treat b. to treat c. treating d. to have treated
- Huda admitted my book without asking me. (السودان 2014)
a. borrow b. borrowed c. borrows d. borrowing
- My teacher promised me. (السودان 2016)
a. visit b. would visit c. to visit d. visiting

Unit 5: The future of work

13. I was advised by a doctor, but it was not possible. (دور أول 2014)
 a. seeing b. to be seen c. to see d. being seen
14. The heavy rain forced me at home the last weekend. (دور ثان - نقي - 2015)
 a. staying b. stay c. to stay d. stayed
15. He never allows in his office. (أزهر 2013)
 a. smoke b. to smoke c. smoking d. smokes
16. My sister hates by air. (دور ثان - 2016)
 a. flying b. to fly c. flies d. flew
17. What do you expect her to? (دور أول - 2016)
 a. did b. done c. do d. does
18. Although my question was easy, he refused it. (السودان - 2017)
 a. answering b. for answering c. to answer d. answer
19. The employee promised better next time. (دور ثان - 2017)
 a. did b. doing c. to do d. will do
20. The naughty boy promised the school principal well in class. (دور أول - 2018)
 a. behaving b. to behave c. behave d. to have behaved

Longman Exercises

21. Do you think one day people will stop newspapers?
 a. reading b. read c. to read d. to reading
22. My teacher advised me to practice a lot of sport.
 a. to do b. doing c. to doing d. do
23. I've to build a new country house.
 a. allowed b. encouraged c. planned d. suggested
24. The thief failed to escape without
 a. recognizing b. recognize c. he recognized d. being recognized
25. Mother always asks me on myself.
 a. to depending b. depend c. to depend d. for depending
26. Would you like me to the club with you?
 a. go b. to go c. going d. gone
27. You can't deny the window; all the boys said you did it carelessly.
 a. breaking b. to break c. break d. to breaking
28. Experts expect thousands of tourists Cairo museum this week.
 a. visited b. to visit c. visit d. to visiting
29. My friend allowed me his mobile.
 a. to using b. use c. using d. to use
30. I regret this old car; it usually breaks down.
 a. buying b. to buy c. for buying d. buy
31. Flour bread.
 a. is used to making b. is used to make c. used to make d. used making

My new Friend

32. Have you finished the final report?
 a. writing b. from writing c. to writing d. to write
33. My friend was made the composition again.
 a. writing b. to write c. write d. writes
34. It's no good a lot of sweets; you will gain more weight.
 a. ate b. to eating c. eating d. eat
35. I can't help when I speak with my little grandchild.
 a. to laugh b. laugh c. to laughing d. laughing

My new Friend Exercises

36. My father prefers his fish grilled.
 a. have b. had c. being had d. having
37. I know this festival. I remember a TV programme about it on TV.
 a. see b. to see c. seeing d. to seeing
38. Oh dear! I forgot my letter.
 a. posting b. to post c. post d. posted
39. I fancy some of my dresses to South Africa.
 a. export b. exports c. to export d. exporting
40. Look after yourself and don't forget to me.
 a. write b. to write c. writing d. writes
41. The band stopped and there was silence.
 a. to play b. played c. playing d. play
42. I'd rather something to eat now.
 a. had b. have c. to have d. having
43. Please, don't forget this letter before noon.
 a. posting b. posted c. post d. to post
44. I'd to run rather than swim.
 a. like b. love c. prefer d. rather
45. I remember the letter. I have a memory of the event.
 a. to post b. posting c. being posted d. to be posted
46. I regret that I was tired. I wish I hadn't said it.
 a. saying b. said c. to say d. say
47. My little son isn't used ice cream.
 a. to eat b. to eating c. for eating d. eating
48. She doesn't mind in the house.
 a. help b. to help c. helping d. to helping
49. Please, don't forget me when you reach the airport.
 a. calling b. call c. to calling d. to call
50. The coach advised me more.
 a. training b. train c. to train d. trained

Unit 5: The future of work

51. I'd like something on this for our project.
a. do b. to do c. be do d. doing
52. I've arranged to the theatre with my family.
a. to go b. to going c. be gone d. gone
53. We like tennis.
a. be watched b. being watched c. to watch d. watch
54. I stopped a newspaper. I stopped in order to do that.
a. buying b. buy c. be bought d. to buy
55. I stopped a newspaper. I no longer buy one.
a. buy b. to buy c. buying d. bought
56. I study hard good marks.
a. getting b. to be got c. get d. to get
57. It's no good time.
a. wasting b. to waste c. waste d. wasted
58. I can't help sweets.
a. eat b. eating c. to eat d. cats
59. I am used to the holidays in Sharm.
a. spend b. spent c. spending d. spends
60. When the children stopped, everyone clapped.
a. sing b. to singing c. singing d. to sing

Advanced Exercises

61. I'm considering a new car. My old one is no longer good.
a. bought b. to buy c. buying d. buy
62. Can you tell the driver down, please?
a. slowing b. slow c. slowed d. to slow
63. I can't afford this car. It's too expensive.
a. buy b. buying c. to buy d. bought
64. The manager made all the staff over time to finish early.
a. working b. to work c. work d. worked
65. The thief was seen down the street.
a. to running b. run c. to run d. ran
66. Stop this bad news. I don't want to hear any more.
a. telling b. to tell c. to telling d. be told
67. If you can't remember an English word, try a dictionary.
a. used b. to use c. uses d. using
68. I'm terribly sorry, father. I forgot the e-mail.
a. sent b. to send c. sending d. send

My new Friend

69. I needn't go to the post office again. I remember the parcel.
a. posted b. to post c. post d. posting
70. The ministry has delayed the economic conference.
a. to hold b. to holding c. hold d. holding

Writing Skills (Lesson 4)

Formal and informal email

الإيميل الرسمي والغير رسمي

	Formal	informal
To	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - An email to a customer. - A job application. - An email to your manager. - A complaint to a shop. - An email from one company to another company. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - A birthday greeting to a colleague. - Email to a colleague who is a good friend. - An invitation to a friend at your workplace. - An email with a link to a YouTube clip.
Greetings: salutation	Dear Sir/Madam/ professor ..., Dear Mr/Ms اسم,	Hi/ Hey / Hello / Dear اسم المرسل اليه
Reason for writing:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I am writing to ask for further information about - I am writing regarding the meeting we have arranged - I am writing with regard to the complaint you made - With reference to our conversation this morning, I would like to let you know 	<p>Just a quick question about ... I was wondering if ... I wanted to let you know that.. (In contrast, informal emails are sent to someone you know and the introduction isn't needed.)</p>
Making a request:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Could you please let me know if you are available? - I would appreciate it if you could send me the document ... - Could we arrange a meeting later? - Please let me know if this will be possible. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I was just wondering if you were around later - Would you mind coming earlier? - Can you call me back ASAP (As soon as possible)?
Ending	Yours sincerely, / Yours faithfully, / Kind regards, / Best wishes, / Thank you	Thanks, / Take care, / Love, / Catch up soon, / See you later, / See you soon, / Bye, / Talk to you later / Cheers,

Language	Avoid using abbreviations, contractions, slang, emoticons, and other informal terminology	The language is informal: - Contractions: It's great, I'm, you'll have, etc. - Common phrasal verbs: put you up, check out - Colloquial language: How are you doing?, you should totally, you can't miss, drop me a line, etc. - Writing as we think: Oh, By the way, Anyway, - Flexible punctuation: ... viewpoint – you'll have the best ...
Body text	This section explains the main message of the email. For a formal email, use proper grammar and complete sentences.	Informal language may not even use complete sentences or proper grammar.
Signature	Use your first and last name. If you're writing on behalf of an organization and you know the title of the person you're sending the email to, use it.	Your sign off may not be so influential, and it may even go unnoticed. In that case you could simply skip a sign off altogether and go about your day with a sound mind.



Exercises on Writing Skills

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Which of the following is an example of a formal email?
a. An email to a friend b. An email to a relative
c. An email on a colleague's birthday d. An email to a customer
- Emails of job applications are ones.
a. unofficial b. formal c. former d. informal
- To express that we are grateful, we say "....."
a. Do you mind me emailing you in the future?
b. I'd just like to check I've understood everything.
c. Thanks so much for your advice and help.
d. Am I right in thinking you are coming to visit?
- To expect our needing help in the future, we say "....."
a. Thank you so much for your tips. b. Am I right in thinking so?
c. Do you mind me emailing you again? d. Have I understood that correctly?
- Which of the following emails is a formal one?
a. An email to your manager b. An email to your sister
c. An email to you key pal d. An email to your family
- "Dear Sir." is a/an
a. body b. greeting c. header d. recipient

- To state the reason for writing the email, you use "....."
a. I'm waiting for your reply in due course.
b. I'm sure you won't regret employing me.
c. I am writing to ask for further information about
d. See you soon.
- We avoid in formal emails.
a. words b. sentences c. slang d. unity
- When you send a complaint to a shop, you write
a. slang b. formally c. informally d. unofficially
- With which of the following can we finish a formal email?
a. Thanks b. Love c. See you soon d. Bye
- Avoid using in a formal email.
a. contradictions b. abbreviations c. statements d. phrases
- Emails between are formal emails.
a. friends b. companies c. relatives d. companions
- are used in informal language.
a. Statements b. Words c. Sentences d. Contractions
- "How are you doing?" is language.
a. colloquial b. formal c. official d. spoken
- In the, we write what the email is about.
a. subject line b. header c. conclusion d. signature
- The explains the main message of the email.
a. conclusion b. header c. body d. recipient
- Adding your name is the
a. greeting b. signature c. header d. address
- When you sign a formal email, use
a. only your surname b. your last name only
c. your first and last names d. just your first name
- In a formal email, use
a. proper grammar b. colloquial words
c. complete sentences d. both a and c
- You can use a/an in an informal email only.
a. emoji b. sentence c. word d. preposition

A Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When we the central heating, we put a radiator in every room.
a. isolated b. installed c. insulted d. instilled
- He remained; he said nothing.
a. spoken b. loud c. mute d. cute
- The Web site provides a tour of the stadium. You travel while in your house!
a. real b. factual c. true d. virtual
- The company has more than 2,000 worldwide.
a. employees b. unemployment c. employable d. employs
- If they'll lend us the money we need, all our problems will be
a. solved b. dissolved c. sorted d. dimensioned
- Don't ever interfere into my affairs again.
a. personal b. person c. personnel d. interpersonal
- When you want a bath, you turn the tap.
a. down b. up c. on d. off
- Could you in the electric kettle, please?
a. switch b. turn c. plug d. fog
- I don't feel like tea now.
a. have b. has c. having d. am having
- Mona suggested that to the park for recreation.
a. go b. to go c. going d. we go
- He threatened the police if we annoyed him again.
a. telling b. to tell c. tell d. told
- Most people avoid during rush hours.
a. to driving b. drive c. to drive d. driving
- Most smokers say they find it hard to stop
a. to smoke b. smoke c. smoked d. smoking
- She's busy her room.
a. cleaning b. clean c. cleans d. to clean
- I couldn't talk to him. He couldn't help his homework.
a. do b. to do c. doing d. done
- He'd prefer there on his bike.
a. to go b. go c. going d. goes

2. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

On Wednesday, February 28, two monkeys escaped from their cage at Flintstone Zoo. The eighth-graders here at Turnbull Middle School saw the event. They were at Flintstone Zoo that day on a field trip. The monkeys got away because one of their feeders forgot to lock the door when he left the monkey cage. About an hour after feeding, the monkeys discovered the unlocked door and escaped.

"I was at the monkey cage when it happened," said Rachel Slater. "It was crazy! The monkeys looked like experts!" Rachel described what it looked like as they opened the door to their cage. "At first, I didn't think it was a big deal," she said. "I thought they were playing and that the zookeepers knew about it."

It turned out it was a big deal. The zookeepers panicked when they saw that the monkeys were missing. They made everyone leave the zoo so that they could find the monkeys. It took them over two hours to catch them. By the time they were caught, the monkeys had stolen hot dogs from children and played with the zebras. "I was sad that we had to leave the zoo early," said Sarah Johnson, "but it was super exciting to see the monkeys running around is like crazy kids!"

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What would be the most suitable headline for the article?
a. It Was a Big Deal b. Zookeepers Are Worried
c. Monkeys Act like Crazy Children d. Monkeys Escape at Flintstone Zoo
- Why were the monkeys able to escape?
a. Rachel Slater helped them get out. b. The monkeys are good with locks.
c. The zookeepers forgot to lock the cage. d. One of the bars on the cage was broken.
- The underlined word "experts" is closest in meaning to
a. animals b. workers c. humans d. professionals
- What does the author imply about the monkeys?
a. They are evil. b. They smile a lot. c. They are playful. d. They hurt people.
- The underlined word "they" refers to
a. everyone b. the children c. the monkeys d. the zookeepers
- Which of the following is NOT true?
a. A monkey stole Sarah's hot dog. b. The monkeys looked like experts.
c. The monkeys played with the zebras. d. Rachel Slater saw the monkeys escape.
- When did the monkeys manage to escape?
a. when the children arrived at the zoo b. an hour after being fed
c. when the monkeys arrived at the zoo d. when the monkeys played with the lions
- How did the zookeepers feel when they discovered the escape of the monkeys?
a. anxious b. happy c. frightened d. fool

9. What did the zookeepers do to find the missing monkeys?
 a. they called the police
 b. they made the people leave the zoo
 c. they searched for them outside the zoo
 d. they made the children look for them
10. Why was Sara sad at the end?
 a. as she didn't see the monkeys
 b. as the zoo closed early
 c. as the children weren't happy with monkeys
 d. as they had to leave the zoo early

3. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

The mystery of Everest

Were Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay really the first people to reach the top of Mount Everest? Some believe British climbers George Mallory and Andrew Irvine reached the summit previously in June 1924. Unfortunately, this is hard to prove because both men vanished on the mountain.

Recently a team of climbers visited Everest, hoping to solve this mystery. Near Everest's First Step, on their way to the summit, the team found Mallory's oxygen tank—evidence that he and Irvine were near the top. Close by, a member of the team, Conrad Anker, discovered Mallory's body.

When the team examined Mallory's body, they found items like a knife and matches, but no photos. Why is this significant? Mallory carried a photo of his wife with him. He planned to leave it at the top of Everest, if he reached the summit.

Did Mallory and Irvine achieve their goal and reach the top? Probably not, says Anker. Here's why:

Difficult path/Poor equipment: Mallory and Irvine were last seen near Everest's Second Step. This is a 27-meter (90-foot) wall of rock. Climbing this section of Everest is extremely difficult, even with modern climbing equipment. Without the right tools, it is doubtful Mallory and Irvine were able to proceed to the top.

No frostbite: Mallory and Irvine were near the summit late in the day. Climbers who reach the summit at this time need to camp at the top. If you do this, it is common to suffer from frostbite. But Mallory's body had no sign of frostbite.

So what happened to Mallory and Irvine? Anker thinks they probably turned back just after the First Step. When Mallory was going down, perhaps he accidentally fell. Irvine's body has never been found. Whatever happened, they will always be remembered as early Everest heroes.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The reading is mainly about two climbers who
 a. solved a mystery about Everest
 b. vanished on Everest
 c. recreated Hillary and Norgay's climb
 d. invented new climbing tools
2. Which statement is true?
 a. Mallory and Irvine were last seen near Everest's First Step.
 b. Conrad Anker's team found two bodies on Everest.

- c. Mallory and Irvine were near the top of Everest in the morning.
 d. Anker's team found some of Mallory's things on the mountain.
3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
 a. the body
 b. the oxygen tank
 c. the summit
 d. the picture
4. If Mallory and Irvine turned back they the mountain.
 a. stopped and went down
 b. went around
 c. tried to walk up
 d. stayed in one place on
5. Which statement would Conrad Anker probably agree with?
 a. Mallory and Irvine definitely reached the top of Everest.
 b. Mallory and Irvine never got close to the summit.
 c. Mallory and Irvine got close, but didn't reach the top.
 d. Andrew Irvine probably reached the top, but not Mallory.
6. If today is Monday, the previous day is/was
 a. Tuesday
 b. Sunday
 c. Wednesday
 d. Friday
7. A is a brave person, someone who does something great.
 a. mountaineer
 b. scientist
 c. hero
 d. climber
8. If you proceed in a direction you
 a. continue in that direction
 b. avoid that direction
 c. change the direction
 d. take another direction
9. Why do we think that Mallory and Irvine are heroes?
 a. as they traveled a great distance alone
 b. as they tried to climb Everest
 c. as they managed to live on the mountain
 d. they discovered great objects on Everest
10. We can infer from the passage that Everest's second step is
 a. easy to get through
 b. difficult to get through
 c. the narrowest point in Everest
 d. the widest point in Everest

C Writing

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. An adjective is a word that
 a. refers to a person, place, thing, or idea.
 b. gives more details about verbs.
 c. describes a noun or a pronoun.
 d. expresses an action or a state of being.
2. The final sentence of a paragraph is called
 a. the first sentence.
 b. the closing sentence.
 c. a topic sentence.
 d. an introductory sentence.
3. A tells the reader what to expect in the paragraph.
 a. thesis
 b. conclusion
 c. support
 d. topic sentence
4. are necessary when writing a descriptive essay.
 a. Articles
 b. Contractions
 c. Adverbs
 d. Adjectives

5. Choose the best Arabic Translation:

1. Everyone needs education suitable for the age, its changes and its requirements.
 أ. يحتاج كل فرد إلى تعليم العصر المناسب وتغيراته ومتطلباته.
 ب. يحتاج كل فرد إلى التعليم العصري المناسب وتغيراته ومتطلباته.
 ج. يحتاج كل فرد إلى مناسبة تعليم العصر وتغيراته ومتطلباته.
 د. يحتاج كل فرد إلى التعليم المناسب للعصر وتغيراته ومتطلباته.
2. The flow of inventions has resulted in a feverish race among nations to obtain advanced technology.
 أ. تسببت زيادة المخترعات في سرامة بين الأمم المتسابقة للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.
 ب. نتج عن تدفق المخترعات سباق شرس بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.
 ج. تدفق النتاج المخترعات مع سباق شرس بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.
 د. نتج عن زيادة المخترعات سباق شرس بين الأمم لانتاج التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.

6. Choose the best English Translation:

1. تسهم الرياضة في تأصيل القيم الهامة للمجتمع وتلبية كليات الشرف والعمل الجماعي.
 a. Sports contribute to originating values which are important for the society and life such as honest competition and team work.
 b. Sports contribute to originating values whom are important for the society and life such as honest competition and team work.
 c. Sports contribute to originating values which are important the society and life such as honest competition and team work.
 d. Sports contribute to originating values which are important for the society and life such as honest competition and team work.
2. يجب على الشباب إبداء مزيد من الاحترام والتقدير لكبار السن وكثرت تراث الأجداد.
 a. Youth should to show more respect and appreciation for older people and also the heritage of our ancestors.
 b. Youth should show more respect and appreciation for older people and also the heritage of our ancestors.
 c. Youth should show more respect and appreciation older people and also the heritage of our ancestors.
 d. Youth should show more respect and appreciation for older people and also the heritage our ancestors.



Unit (6)

Let's
Get it
Done!

Let's get it done!

هيا نجعل أحدهم يقوم بها!

Objectives

Reading

A report on a study into productivity.

Writing

A reflective text.

Listening

An interview with an expert on productivity.

Speaking

Brainstorm and discuss ideas to improve productivity.

Language

Get something done; Causative verbs.

Life skills

Productivity; Self-management.

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
assess	يقيم	to judge or decide the amount, value, quality, or importance of something.
decline	ينخفض / يتقلص	to gradually become less, worse, or lower.
efficiency	كفاءة	the good use of time and energy in a way that does not waste any.
productive	إنتاجي	managing your study or work time so that you get all your work done in the time you have.
productivity	إنتاجية	the rate at which a person, company, or country does useful work.
progress	تقدم	movement to an improved or more developed state, or to a forward position.
raise	يرفع	to lift something to a higher position.
vary	يتنوع / يختلف	if things of the same type vary, they are different from each other, and if you vary them, you cause them to be different from each other.
procrastination	إرجاء / تأجيل	the act of delaying something that must be done, often because it is unpleasant or boring.

Vocabulary

Listening

on time	expert	raise
exactly	believe	increase
	في الوقت المحدد	خبر
	بالضبط	يعتقد / يصدق

Reading and Critical Thinking

schoolwork	memory	procrastinate
period	analyse	procrastination
	عمل مدرسي	ذاكرة
	فترة	يحلل

My new Friend

task	awareness	وعي	error	خطأ
report	pollution	تلوث	delay	تأخير
researcher	electricity	كهرباء	common	شائع
mention	effectiveness	فعالية	excuse	عذر
recent study	honest	أمين	cause	يسبب / سبب
amongst	progress	تقدم	brain	مخ
research study	sort of	نوع من	even better	أفضل حتى
situations	interrupt	يقطع الحديث	notice	يلاحظ
increase in	distracted	مشتت الذهن	significantly	بشكل هام
increase by	state	يحدد / حالة / يصرح	efficient	كفاء
aim	factors	عوامل	decline	ينخفض
repeated	analysis	تحليل	hand to	يسلم ... إلى
process	depend on	يعتمد على	finding	نتائج
result in	data	بيانات / معلومات	individual	الفرد
result from	earlier	مبكرا	endings	نهايات
conclusions	diary	مفكرة / يوميات	study habits	عادات المذاكرة
causative verbs	permission	إذن / تصريح	force	يجبر

Prepositions

in a short period	في فترة قصيرة	lead to	يؤدي إلى	for the rest of	لباقى
plan to	يخطط لـ	in conclusion	في الختام	stop ... from	يمنع .. من
get up	يستيقظ	find out	يكتشف	at the start of	في بداية

Important Collocations & Expressions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	do good work	يقوم بعمل جيد
find it easiest to work	تجد أنه من الأسهل العمل	make more progress	يحجز المزيد من التقدم
make a change to	يجري تغيير على	work somewhere else	العمل في مكان آخر
repeat this process	يكرر هذه العملية	the aim was to find out	كان الهدف هو معرفة
in different places	في أماكن مختلفة	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
draw conclusions	يستخلص استنتاجات	at different times	في أوقات مختلفة
get the same results	يحصل على نفس النتائج	share diaries	يشارك اليوميات
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	productivity levels	مستويات الإنتاجية

make it harder for you to study
raise their productivity levels
manage your study or work time
make you more productive
keep a diary over a six-month period
result in some interesting conclusions
another interesting finding was that
had a very positive effect on
change the way they study

تجعل من الصعب عليك الدراسة
يرفعون مستويات إنتاجيتهم
تدير وقت الدراسة أو العمل
تجعله أكثر إنتاجية
يحتفظ بمفكرة لمدة ستة أشهر
يسفر عن بعض الاستنتاجات المثيرة للاهتمام
اكتشاف آخر مثير للاهتمام كان
كان له تأثير إيجابي للغاية على
يغيرون طريقة دراستهم

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	synonyms	Antonyms
assess	يقيم / يقيس	estimate / evaluate / rate / value	diminish
efficiency	كفاءة	effectiveness / productiveness	inability / incompetence
decline	يخض	descend / deteriorate / worsen	enhance / upgrade / develop
productive	إنتاجي	constructive / formative / fruitful	barren / sterile / infertile
productivity	إنتاجية	fertility / inventiveness	dryness / dullness
progress	تقدم	advancement / progression	recession / regress / retreat
raise	يرفع	boost / ascend / elevate / uplift	drop / lower
vary	يتنوع	contrast / differ / separate	compare / match / accord
procrastination	إرجاء	avoidance / delay / waiting	readiness / eagerness / determination
increase	يزيد	accelerate / boost / expand	shorten / contract / reduce
task	مهمة	enterprise / project / mission	
recent	حديث	current / contemporary / latest	dated / early / past
habits	عادات	customs / practices / modes	
process	عملية	course / operation / procedure	
distracted	مشتت الذهن	agitated / hysterical / nervous	calm / peaceful / composed
common	شائع	normal / regular / constant	unnatural / uncommon
excuse	عذر	apology / justification / reason	
regularly	بانتظام	commonly / habitually	occasionally / episodically

1. A dialogue

Eman : I try hard to finish my homework on time, but I can never get it all done. After just a few minutes my productivity levels start to decline and I start looking at my phone.

Amany: It sounds like you need to raise your productivity so you can get more homework done.

Eman : So I need to become more productive?

Amany: Yes, exactly. You need to do good work, but get it done faster by increasing your efficiency. First, assess when and where you find it easiest to work. You could try to vary the time and place where you work and see what happens at different times and in different places.

Eman : That's a good idea. I'll try doing that and hopefully I'll soon be making more progress with my homework.

2. A report on a recent study into productivity amongst students

In our research study, we assessed the productivity levels of sixteen to eighteen-year-old students. The aim was to find out which situations led to an increase in the students' productivity levels while they are studying. We chose a group of 250 students and asked them to keep a diary over a six-month period. In these diaries they wrote down how much time they spent studying every day and what they achieved.

At the start of the study, we asked all the students to make a change to their study habits. We wanted to find out what effect this change would have on the students' productivity. We repeated this process at the start of every month for the rest of the study to look at the effects of varying study habits.

Our analysis of the students' diaries resulted in some interesting conclusions. We noticed that most students' productivity levels increased significantly when they got up earlier to study before school. This was even true for students who had said they weren't very efficient when they studied early in the morning. On the other hand, most students' productivity levels declined significantly when they regularly studied until late into the evening. Another interesting finding was that studying with other students had a very positive effect on some students' productivity levels, but a very negative effect on other students' productivity levels.

In conclusion, we can state that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive, but the effects of other factors, like whether or not students study alone, vary, depending on the individual.

3. A dialogue

Sherif : You said last week your revision was going slowly. Are you getting more done now?

Hisham: To be honest, my progress is going well this week. My dad will get some changes made to my room to help me raise my efficiency.

Sherif : Really? Wow! What sort of changes?

Hisham: Well, he's going to put a desk under my window. The desk will be big enough for two people, so I can study with friends. Do you want to come over on Saturday and we can study together?

Sherif : That sounds great. We need to get our English project done and then we can revise for Science.

Hisham: Great. I usually get a lot more work done when I study with friends. What time do you want to come?

Sherif : Well, I prefer to study in the morning. I got a lot of work done when I studied yesterday morning. How about 9 o'clock?

Hisham: Great, see you then.

4. Things to avoid when studying

1. Don't procrastinate

There is one common error which stops students from being productive: procrastination. Procrastination is when we delay doing something important. Students often look for an excuse to do other things, such as tidy their bedrooms, when they should be studying. Make a study plan and then let yourself follow it!

2. Don't study all night

Another bad habit that some students have is studying all night. (Sometimes this is because they have been procrastinating in all day!) Studying at night instead of sleeping does not allow the body and brain to rest. It's important to switch off to study effectively the next day.

3. Put the phone away

Some teachers allow students to keep their phone with them in class. But students shouldn't let themselves be distracted by their phones. Even better, hand it to the teacher at the beginning of the class – they will let you have it back at the end!

1. **The + فعل + صفة مقارنة + فعل**, **the + فعل + صفة مقارنة + فعل** (كلما كلما)
 * The more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become.
 * The harder you study, the higher marks you will get.

2. result in / result from:

- **result in = lead to = bring about = cause** بسبب
 * Smoking may lead to / result in / cause death.

- **result (come) from** ينتج من / يأتي من / يحدث بسبب
 * Wars result from the conflict between ideologies.

3. customary / accustomed:

- **customary** صفة بمعنى معتاد

* Terrible weather has become customary recently.

* **be accustomed to + V.ing / اسم = be used to + V.ing / اسم** (معتاد على القيام بشيء ما)

* I'm accustomed to getting up early.

* I'm not accustomed to spicy foods.

4. **alone = on + possessive + own = (by) reflexive** (بمفرده) / **lonely** / **only** فقط / **only** وحيد

* I did all the washing alone / on my own / (by) myself. * I go to school alone.

* He feels lonely. No one visits him.

* Ahmed was the only one who came late.

5. arrive / get / reach:

- **arrive** (بدون مفعول)

* He arrived yesterday.

- **arrive in** مكان كبير

* They arrived in Cairo at 7 P.M yesterday.

- **arrive at** مكان صغير

* They arrived at Cairo Airport at 7 P.M yesterday.

- **reach** (بدون حرف جر) مفعول (مكان كبير أو صغير)

* They reached the airport after the plane took off.

- **get to** يصل إلى (مكان كبير أو صغير غالباً بصعوبة)

* At last, He got to the peak of the mountain.

6. **hardly / hard:**

- **hardly** (صعب / صلب / جاد / مجتهد) - **hard** (بجد / باجتهاد) - **hard** (بجد / باجتهاد)

* The exam was hard but he managed to pass.

* Steel is a hard metal.

* My brother is hard working.

* We have to work hard to reconstruct our country.

Unit 6: Let's get it done!

- hardly نادراً / بصعوبة / بالكاد (تفيد النفي):

* There are hardly any moving parts, so nothing much can go wrong.

* I could hardly hear her shouting as the TV sound was loud.

7. the / some / every / each / any / number + other:

* I love my son like any other mother.

8. More Notes:

increasing	متزايد	on the increase	متنامي - متزايد
decrease in	نقص في	decrease by	ينقص بنسبة كذا
on time	في الوقت المحدد بالضبط	in time	قبل الوقت المحدد
continual	مستمر على فترات	continuous	مستمر بلا توقف
continuously	باستمرار بدون توقف	continually	بإستمرار بتوقف
find / found / found	يكتشف / يجد	found / founded / founded	يؤسس / ينشئ
findings	نتائج بحثية	foundations	أساسات
permission	تصريح - إذن - موافقة	permit	تصريح (مكتوب)
licence	برخص / رخصة	license	برخص - يسمح
plan to + مصدر	يخطط أن	plan for + V.ing / N	يخطط لـ



Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Prices widely from shop to shop.
a. vary b. collect c. contact d. clear
- This is no time for - we need decisive action.
a. starvation b. association c. procrastination d. domination
- Technological has been so rapid over the last few years.
a. delay b. recession c. progress d. backward
- your hand if you have a question, please.
a. Arouse b. Arise c. Rise d. Raise
- Mona got through her work with speed and
a. procrastination b. fluency c. introduction d. efficiency
- Exams are not the only means of a student's ability.
a. persisting b. insisting c. possessing d. assessing
- His interest in the project after his wife died.
a. declined b. increased c. introduced d. deduced
- In order to turn the deserts into fertile and land, engineers built an 800-mile canal.
a. production b. product c. productive d. produce
- The study will be carried out over a six-month
a. period b. place c. spot d. area

My new Friend

- We usually ask interviewees to perform a few simple on the computer just to test their aptitude.
a. plays b. situations c. tasks d. changes
- Finding a cure for cancer is one of the biggest challenges facing medical
a. authors b. researchers c. beggars d. borrowers
- The doctor the possibility of going to Nairobi for special treatment.
a. produced b. gave c. hated d. mentioned
- We need to bring in an to deal with this problem.
a. experience b. experienced c. experiment d. expert
- The water in the lake is much higher after heavy rain.
a. label b. level c. thermal d. quarrel
- Studies show that if a working environment is pleasant, increases.
a. productivity b. captivity c. collectivity d. absorptivity
- Sales have by 10%, so the manager was happy.
a. reduced b. lessened c. increased d. declined
- The Prime Minister discussed the issue during his most visit to Poland.
a. percent b. percentage c. recent d. certain
- The government is at a 50% reduction in unemployment.
a. changing b. assessing c. varying d. aiming
- Water samples taken from streams were for contamination by chemicals.
a. pressurized b. analysed c. paralyzed d. capitalized
- We've achieved some marvelous with this new drug.
a. reasons b. causes c. results d. shapes
- Be careful not to introduce new ideas in the of your essay.
a. middle b. introduction c. hook d. conclusion
- She has an excellent for names.
a. memory b. memorize c. memorial d. monumental
- It's all right to borrow money occasionally, but don't let it become a
a. habit b. custom c. tradition d. customs
- Each time we have to go through the whole decision-making again.
a. procession b. process c. possess d. possession
- We made the decision based on our of the situation.
a. analyze b. analytic c. analyst d. analysis
- The writer's letters and are being published next year.
a. dairies b. dears c. diabetes d. diaries
- The rate of inflation increased 2 percent.
a. in b. off c. by d. on
- There is no doubt that the current is very serious.
a. excuse b. progress c. productivity d. situation

Unit 6: Let's get it done!

29. Environmental has increased dramatically over the past decade.
a. awareness b. strictness c. loneliness d. selectness
30. Car exhaust is the main reason for the city's
a. pollute b. pollution c. populate d. population
31. The study will review the of reading and mathematics software products.
a. affects b. effectiveness c. effective d. affect
32. They are anxious to any further misunderstandings.
a. avoid b. avoidance c. avoidable d. avoids
33. Would you mind not with questions all the time?
a. interpreting b. interpret c. interrupting d. interrupt
34. It is a good idea to change where you study as it can help your memory. "Change" here means
a. increase b. raise c. assess d. vary
35. Remember that your concentration tends to reduce after 30 minutes. "Reduce" here means
a. increase b. conclude c. allow d. decline
36. Heavy snow was a contributing in the accident.
a. sector b. instructor c. factor d. reactor
37. We need some sort of graph on which we can chart our
a. laziness b. progress c. regress d. congress
38. He was afraid of being with his thoughts.
a. lane b. loan c. alone d. loneliness
39. To be with you, I don't think it will be possible to do all that.
a. mean b. honest c. destitute d. agree
40. I hope that they will stop and that something will be done about reducing the period from five years to four.
a. procrastinating b. praising c. contaminating d. demonstrating
41. We welcome applications from suitably qualified
a. conclusions b. individuals c. papers d. interviews
42. Flights to New York may be subject to because of the dark clouds.
a. clay b. decay c. portray d. delay
43. Some birds that were once a sight are now becoming rare.
a. common b. rare c. scarce d. bare
44. I know I missed the deadline, but I have a/an
a. result b. conclusion c. excuse d. excavator
45. He admitted that he'd made an
a. interior b. emperor c. equator d. error
46. Smoking is the leading of lung cancer.
a. reason b. cause c. result d. conclusion

My new Friend

47. The human is a complex organ.
a. character b. personality c. figure d. brain
48. Using less electricity will improve the energy effectiveness in your house. "Effectiveness" here has the same meaning as
a. reflectivity b. objectivity c. productivity d. sensitivity
49. This form must be to all employees.
a. admitted b. confessed c. handed d. progressed
50. Profits have increased over the past few years.
a. significance b. significantly c. significant d. signify
51. There are no differences between the two groups of students.
a. significant b. significance c. signify d. significantly
52. The city's transport system is one of the most in Europe.
a. terrible b. horrible c. inefficient d. efficient
53. There was a very response to our new design - people seemed very pleased with it.
a. negative b. positive c. negatively d. positively
54. Experts say that the product, if eaten , could be harmful.
a. regularly b. regular c. regularity d. regularize
55. Professional athletes make appearances on TV.
a. regular b. gradually c. gradual d. regularly
56. The report's on the decrease in violent crime supports the police chief's claims.
a. finding b. reason c. cause d. conclude
57. The warm winter has had a very negative effect the ski industry.
a. in b. on c. at d. up
58. Knowing the already didn't spoil my enjoyment of the film.
a. beginning b. middle c. centre d. ending
59. The samples in quality but were generally acceptable.
a. varied b. produced c. repeated d. concluded
60. We had problems on our journey, including a flat tyre.
a. vary b. various c. variety d. varies
61. Would you mind what you just said?
a. forcing b. planning c. repeating d. making
62. All this is a performance of what happened last year.
a. repeat b. defeat c. treat d. sweat
63. Listen to the tape and each word.
a. repeat b. repeated c. repetitious d. repeatable
64. You will need from your parents to go on the trip.
a. announcement b. advertisement c. permit d. permission
65. Did you find whether there are any seats left?
a. out b. in c. off d. upon

66. Reducing speed limits should lead fewer deaths on the roads.
a. on b. onto c. to d. at
67. Investments are certain to increase value.
a. to b. into c. in d. for
68. Food prices increased 10% in less than a year.
a. in b. by c. at d. down
69. The length of time spent exercising depends the sport you are training for.
a. on b. at c. by d. over
70. We've had to some changes to the design.
a. give b. carry c. make d. lend
71. At the start of the study, we asked all the students to make a change to their study
a. custom b. customs c. traditions d. habits
72. We repeated this at the start of every month for the rest of the study to look at the effects of varying study habits.
a. access b. assess c. process d. recess
73. Our analysis of the students' diaries resulted some interesting conclusions.
a. for b. to c. in d. by
74. Most students' productivity levels significantly when they regularly studied until late into the evening.
a. increased b. raised c. rose d. declined
75. conclusion, we can state that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive.
a. Over b. In c. To d. Down
76. What data did the researcher use to his conclusions?
a. draw b. run c. walk d. push
77. The verb "assess" has the same meaning as
a. state b. contain c. evaluate d. enclose
78. The opposite of "productivity" is
a. dullness b. pollution c. darkness d. motion
79. Dad's health has been decline since his heart attack.
a. on b. at c. by d. in
80. The rain has been since this morning.
a. monotonous b. continuous c. vulgar d. delicious
81. "Exams assess students' abilities." A synonym for "assess" here is
a. evaluate b. illuminate c. eliminate d. eradicate
82. "His supporters fell away as his popularity declined." A synonym for "declined" is
a. deteriorated b. improved c. enhanced d. developed
83. "The meeting was productive of several good ideas." A synonym for "productive" is
a. fruitful b. poor c. barren d. infertile

84. "The movie helped boost her screen career." A synonym for "boost" is
a. worsen b. lessen c. enhance d. grant
85. Another word for "habits" is
a. costumes b. cosmetics c. practices d. records
86. "We must continue to strive for greater efficiency." A synonym for "efficiency" is
a. effectiveness b. attachment c. engagement d. turmoil
87. "Children are so easily distracted." A synonym for "distracted" is
a. delighted b. agitated c. playful d. joyful
88. Another word for "regularly" is
a. habitually b. occasionally c. sometimes d. rarely
89. "Recent results must give some cause for optimism." A synonym for the word "recent" here is
a. current b. previous c. futuristic d. coming
90. "My time spent in the library was very productive." An antonym for "productive" is
a. interactive b. constructive c. formative d. useless
91. "The party's popularity has declined in the opinion polls." An antonym for "declined" is
a. estimated b. upgraded c. chanted d. reversed
92. "Lack of planning is sapping the company's efficiency." An antonym of "efficiency" is
a. incompetence b. competitiveness c. effectiveness d. activity
93. An antonym for "progress" is
a. recession b. advancement c. development d. promotion
94. To "vary" means to
a. stay the same b. differ c. remain d. sustain
95. "We need to increase productivity." A synonym for "productivity" is
a. dullness b. ignorance c. inventiveness d. deterioration

Grammar

Causative verbs أفعال السببية

تتقسم السببية إلى نوعان: المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول.

البناء السببية في المبني للمعلوم:

تعني أن يقوم شخص بجعل (السماح -) (إجبار) (الطلب من) (إقناع) شخص آخر أن يفعل شيئاً ما:

نستخدم فيها الصيغ التالية:

البناء صيغ أساسية:

..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + have + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)
 مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + get + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)

* The teacher had us do some extra work today.

* The teacher got us to do some extra work today.

البناء صيغ ثانوية:

..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + make + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)
 مصدر الفعل + مفعول + let + فاعل (تعني: يسمح)
 مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + cause + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)

* She made her sister follow her instructions as if she were a child.

* I let them take as much money as possible.

* What caused you to change your mind?

Note (1)

استخدام الفعل (make) بمعنى (يجعل) داخل جملة المبني للمعلوم وجملة المبني للمجهول ..

المبني للمعلوم	المعنى (يجعل)	المصدر + مفعول + make + فاعل
المبني للمجهول	المعنى (يجعل)	المصدر + be + made + to + المفعول
المبني للمعلوم		The colonel <u>made</u> the soldiers fire at the castle.
المبني للمجهول		The soldiers <u>were made</u> to fire at the castle.

ثالثاً: صيغ إضافية:

* يمكن استخدام مجموعة أخرى من الأفعال لتأدية نفس الغرض لكن باختلاف المعاني بالطرق التالية:

..... مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + ask/ order/ tell (تعني: يطلب)
 مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + force/ oblige (تعني: يجبر)
 مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + persuade/ convince (تعني: يقنع)
 مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + want/ need (تعني: يريد)

- The teacher asked Ali to read his essay to the class.
 The mother forced her child to sleep in the dark.
 Can't I persuade you to visit the museum with me?
 I want you to help me.

ثانياً: السببية في المبني للمجهول:

تعني أن يتم عمل (فعل) شيء ما عن طريق شخص آخر وليس عن طريقنا:

نستخدم فيها الصيغ التالية:

..... P.P. + مفعول + have + فاعل (تعني: يحصل علي)
 P.P. + مفعول + get + فاعل (تعني: يحصل علي)

* I had my hair cut yesterday.

(لست أنا من قام بقص شعري)

* We will get our car repaired at the mechanic's.

(لسنا نحن من سيصلح السيارة بل الميكانيكي)

Note (2)

* يتم تصريف (have/ get) في كل زمن ممكن ..

* I have my room cleaned every day.

* I had my car repaired yesterday.

* I will have my hair cut tomorrow.

* Mum is having the food cooked at the moment.

* I have had my hair cut since two o'clock.

* Ali is getting his car repaired today.

Note (3)

* في التعبير عن السببية في المبني للمجهول يمكن إضافة (فاعل + by) عندما نريد أن نذكر الشخص الآخر الذي قام بالفعل لأجل فاعل الجملة.

* I had my car repaired by the mechanic yesterday.

* I'm having my homework checked by the teacher.

Note (4)

* نستخدم السببية في السؤال والجواب كما يلي:
 * مثال:

- A: Did you make this dress by yourself?
 B: No, I didn't. I had my mother make it.
 B: No, I didn't. I got my mother to make it.
 B: No, I didn't. I had it made by my mother.

A: Did you have your meal prepared?

B: No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

Note (5)

الفرق بين: المبنى للمعلوم / المبنى للمجهول / السببية

* أولاً: المبنى للمعلوم:

* نستخدم المبنى للمعلوم عندما نبدأ الجملة بفاعل الحدث نفسه ويمكن أن نضيف (ضمير متعكس) بعد الفاعل مباشرة أو في نهاية الجملة:

* I cooked this meal (by myself).

* Mona made this dress (by herself).

* ثانياً: المبنى للمجهول:

* نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما نبدأ الجملة بالمفعول نفسه ويمكن أن نضيف في نهاية الجملة (فاعل + by).

* This meal was cooked (by me).

* This dress was made (by Mona / by Mona's mother).

* ثالثاً: السببية:

* نستخدم السببية عندما نبدأ الجملة بالفاعل الذي جعل فاعل آخر يقوم بحدث ما ... وهي نوعان:

* نستخدم المعلوم منها كما يلي:

..... مصر الفاعل + مفعول + have + فاعل

(تعني: يجعل)

..... مصر الفاعل + to + مفعول + get + فاعل

(تعني: يجعل)

* I had my mother cook this meal for me.

* Mona got her mother to make this dress.

* نستخدم المجهول منها كما يلي:

..... + P.P. + مفعول + have + فاعل

(تعني: يحصل علي)

..... + P.P. + مفعول + get + فاعل

(تعني: يحصل علي)

* I had this meal cooked (by my mother).

* Mona got this dress made (by her mother).

Note (6)

stop from

* نستخدم الفعل (stop from + V.ing) لنقول أنه من المستحيل لأحدهم فعل شيء ما.
The cold weather stops us from going outside.

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Previous Exams' Exercises

- I a plumber to fix the pipe last week. (تجريبي - 2021)
a. got b. get c. had d. have
- Peeling onions always makes her (أزهر ... أدبي - 2021)
a. to cry b. cry c. cried d. crying
- Do you usually get your room? - No, I clean it myself. (دور أول 2020)
a. clean b. cleaned c. to clean d. cleaning
- Ali got his credit card (تجريبي 2019)
a. change b. to change c. changing d. changed
- My mother has me the shopping every week. (تجريبي 2020)
a. do b. doing c. to do d. done
- Dina last week. (تجريبي 2020)
a. gets her house to decorate b. has her house decorated
c. got her house to decorate d. had her house decorated
- Adel He made it himself. (دور أول 2019)
a. has his dinner cooked b. has his dinner been cooked
c. cooks his dinner d. cooked his dinner
- Wait there and I'll someone to help you with those bags. (السودان 2019)
a. have b. get c. let d. make
- He went to the barber's to his hair cut. (الصف الثاني الثانوي - 1995)
a. make b. do c. have d. take
- Please, don't shout at her. You'll only her cry. (1993)
a. make b. cause c. give d. bring
- It was such a sad story that it me cry. (دور أول 96)
a. caused b. made c. forced d. pushed
- I hope the kidnappers will the hostages go. (دور أول 96)
a. allow b. accept c. permit d. let
- In spite of her protests, her father her train for the race three hours a day. (1992)
a. let b. made c. insisted d. caused
- Your hair looks different. You've (1987)
a. cut b. cut it c. had it cut d. been cut
- I want you to let me your car.
a. using b. to be used c. to use d. use

Longman Exercises

16. My car was repaired. This means that I
 a. had my car repaired b. had to repair my car
 c. had repaired my car d. will have to repair my car
17. We usually our food made as we are busy studying.
 a. cause b. have c. do d. make
18. My car engine doesn't start; I will a mechanic to check it.
 a. let b. have c. get d. make
19. We won't paint our house ourselves. We by a clever painter.
 a. won't paint it b. will have painted it c. will have it painted d. will paint it
20. I'm going to get my hair as it is very long.
 a. shortens b. lengthens c. lengthened d. shortened
21. Are you going to have your shoes polished? - No, I will myself
 a. get it polished b. polish it c. polish them d. have them polished
22. After I at El-Nasr car service, I drove to Ras Elbar.
 a. had serviced my car b. had had my car serviced
 c. have had my car serviced d. serviced
23. Never have your homework; always do it yourself.
 a. done b. doing c. to be doing d. did
24. an air conditioner installed in your room; it's terribly hot there.
 a. Let b. Take c. Have d. Had
25. I had my computer fixed. This means that
 a. it wasn't fixed b. no one fixed it c. I fixed it d. someone fixed it
26. Have you the main road in your town paved?
 a. making b. get c. had d. make
27. I'm my car serviced now.
 a. making b. getting c. allowed d. allowing
28. When I was a child, I; I was too young to do so.
 a. used to have my room tidied b. used to tidy my room
 c. tidied my room d. have tied my room
29. Be careful, you; have a technician check it.
 a. need to check this machine. b. need to have this machine checked
 c. need to have checked this machine d. must check this machine
30. - Have you had your room decorated? - No, I myself yesterday.
 a. have decorated it b. had it decorated c. decorated it d. had decorated it

My new Friend Exercises

1. We will our car repaired at the mechanic's.
 a. go b. has c. take d. get
2. I'll the children to tidy their bedrooms.
 a. get b. have c. make d. let

33. They are by a good painter.
 a. having their house painted b. painting their house
 c. their house being painted d. their house have painted
34. Law doesn't protect those who let others them.
 a. trick b. to trick c. be tricked d. tricking
35. I my car polished by someone else.
 a. gets b. did c. had d. made
36. Parents should get their children the amount of time they spend using mobile phones.
 a. limit b. limiting c. to limit d. limited
37. Scientists believe that we should have mobile phone masts in high or remote areas.
 a. installing b. installed c. install d. to install
38. Mariam by herself.
 a. had the windows washed b. had the windows washing
 c. washed the windows d. the windows washed
39. I Ali to go to the sports club with me, although he didn't want to go.
 a. got b. made c. let d. had
40. Adel always has his computer
 a. fixing b. to fix c. fix d. fixed
41. My brother always has his clothes
 a. to clean b. clean c. cleaned d. cleaning
42. Please get Yasser you.
 a. helped b. help c. to help d. helping
43. I had my teeth yesterday.
 a. check b. checking c. checked d. to check
44. - Did you have your meal prepared? - No, I didn't. I myself.
 a. had it prepared b. it was prepared c. was it prepared d. prepared it
45. Walid had his eyes last week, and now he needs to wear glasses.
 a. testing b. tested c. tests d. to test
46. The manager got a technician a new computer program.
 a. to install b. installing c. installed d. install
47. When my cousins were in England, they had some money for them by their father.
 a. sent b. to send c. sending d. sends
48. My parents the plants watered at the weekend.
 a. go b. has c. get d. give
49. I'm having next week.
 a. serviced my car b. service my car c. my car serviced d. servicing my car
50. Ola the meal. It was delicious.
 a. got b. got cooked c. cooked d. had
51. The teacher got us the whole story before summarizing it.
 a. read b. to be read c. to read d. be read

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
brainstorm	يعصف ذهنيًا	when a group of people all think about something at the same time, often in order to solve a problem or to create good ideas.
session	جلسة / حصّة	a period of time that is spent doing a particular activity.
priority	أولوية	something that you think is more important than other things and should be dealt with first.
logic	المنطق	a way of thinking or explaining something.
alternative	بديل	a thing that you can choose to do or have out of two or more possibilities.
evaluate	يقيّم / يقيس	to form an opinion of the amount, value or quality of something after thinking about it carefully.

Vocabulary

Listening

brainstorm	يعصف ذهنيًا	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب	priority	أولوية
chatting	دردشة	stops	وقفات	make sure	يتأكد
discuss	يناقش	add to	يضيف إلى	practice	ممارسة
discussion	مناقشة	addition	إضافة	healthily	صحيًا

Reading and Critical Thinking

daily life	حياة يومية	logic	منطق	carry on	يستمر في
analyze	يحلل	drawback	عيب	Olympic coach	مدرب أولمبي
experiences	تجارب / خبرات	suppose	يفترض	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
function	وظيفة	naturally	بشكل طبيعي	cyclists	راكبي الدراجات
describe	يصف	unpleasant	غير سار	copies	نسخ
evaluate	يقيم	later	فيما بعد	blog (v)	يُدون

52. She has her children the time they watch TV.
a. to limit b. limited c. limit d. limits
53. Has the secretary the letters already?
a. to type b. type c. typed d. typing
54. The hospital nobody to visit the patient.
a. lets b. makes c. has d. allows
55. Parents should their children to turn off their mobile phones when they go to sleep.
a. make b. have c. let d. get
56. Mariam the windows washed yesterday.
a. have b. has had c. get d. had
57. Mother had Shaimaa her room before she went out.
a. tidied b. to tidy c. tidying d. tidy
58. The park manager watered every day.
a. the plants has b. get the plants c. has the plants d. have the plants
59. I my car checked before I left the garage last week.
a. have had b. had had c. will have d. have
60. We always our clothes washed.
a. get b. do c. give d. go

Advanced Exercises

61. We had to have before we started the journey.
a. checked our car b. our car be checked c. our car checked d. our car was checked
62. Being too ill to do it, he his fields irrigated by a neighbour.
a. had been b. had c. let d. get
63. The Egyptian army had its dignity in 1973.
a. been restored b. was restored c. restored d. had restored
64. What me angry with him is his bad behaviour.
a. takes b. has c. gets d. makes
65. She her daughters do the housework for her.
a. always gets b. gets always c. always has d. has always
66. We don't always We wash it ourselves.
a. wash our car b. do our car washed c. getting our car washed d. have our car washed
- I had yesterday.
a. the mechanic look at my car b. my car looking at
my car looked d. the mechanic to look at my car
- While I was I borrowed my friend's.
a. repaired my car b. having my car repaired c. being repaired my car d. getting my car to repair
- m by the teacher.
a. checking my homework b. having my homework checked
being my homework d. my homework being checked
- Farmer is getting the vet.
a. horse checked b. checked his horse c. his horse to check d. his horse checked by

Unit 6: Let's get it done!

evaluation	تقييم	perform	يؤدي	pillows	الوسائد
absolutely	تماما	performer	مؤدي	a waste of time	مضيعة الوقت
refreshed	مقتش	performance	أداء	reduce	يقل
diet	نظم غذائي	mentally active	نشط ذهنيًا	realize	يرك
strategy	استراتيجية	grades	درجات	increase by	يزداد بمقدار
massive	ضخم	measure	قياس	overall	شامل
massiveness	ضخامة	measurements	إجراءات	ear plugs	سدادات الأذن

Essay vocabulary

study tips	نصائح للدراسة	position	مكان	positive effects	تأثيرات إيجابية
keep going	واصل الدخاب	looking back	بالنظر للوراء	negative effects	تأثيرات سلبية

Prepositions

wake up	يستيقظ	ready to	مستعد لـ	improve by	يتحسن بمقدار
take part in	يشترك في	at least	على الأقل	for short periods	لفتترات قصيرة
in this way	بهذه الطريقة	a fan of	مفتح لـ	in a list	في القائمة

Important Collocations & Expressions

brainstorm ideas	يعصف الذهن لاستقراخ الأفكار	add it to our options	أضفه إلى خياراتنا
I made a better job of	لقد صنعت عملاً أفضل من	do the same	تفعل الشيء نفسه
set an alarm	ضبط المنبه	change the way	بغير الطريقة
I kept looking at the time	ظلت انظر إلى الوقت	get better organised	وكن منظمًا بشكل أفضل
do the task	يقوم بالمهمة	manage my time better	أدير و أقي بشكل أفضل
feel less stressed about	تشعر بتوتر أقل حيال	seem easier	يبدو أسهل
reach a conclusion	يتوصل إلى نتيجة	mention the advantage of	يذكر ميزة
give an evidence	يقدم دليل	show the changes	تظهر التغييرات
feel your best	تشعر بأفضل ما لديك	change their performance	تغير أدائهم
the big drawback for me	العيب الأكبر بالنسبة لي	reduce the amount of	تقليل كمية
feel refreshed	تشعر بالانتعاش	make a big difference to	تحدث فرقًا كبيرًا
I liked the idea of	أحببت فكرة	make a 1% change in	إجراء تغيير بنسبة 1٪ في
This definitely had a positive impact on		هذا بالتأكيد له تأثير إيجابي على	

My new friend

I can understand the logic of doing this
 I was surprised by what a big difference the study plan made
 put the ideas into practice
 raise productivity levels
 have (take) breaks between
 makes the revision more interesting
 main point of the discussion
 make lots of small changes
 pass his most difficult exams
 measure the impact of the changes
 set seven world records in
 I got the second highest marks

أستطيع أن أفهم منطق القيام بذلك
 لقد فوجئت بالفرق الكبير الذي أحدثته الخطة الدراسية
 وضعت الأفكار موضع التنفيذ
 أرفع مستويات الإنتاجية لأدري
 أضع فترات راحة بين
 يجعل المراجعة أكثر إثارة للاهتمام
 النقطة الرئيسية للمناقشة
 أجعل الكثير من التغييرات الصغيرة
 اجتاز أعباءه الأصعب
 أقيس تأثير التغييرات
 حددت سبعة أرقام قياسية عالمية في
 حصلت على أعلى الدرجات

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
brainstorm	يعصف ذهنيًا	communicate / correspond	relieve
alone	بفرده	individually / solo / separately	collectively / jointly
discuss	يتناقش	argue / review / speak	back burner
priority	أولوية	precedence / right-of-way / urgency	
function	وظيفة	benefit / purpose / role / perform	
divide	يقسم	break up / disconnect / decompose	minge / associate / unite
evaluate	يقوم	assess / judge / value	
strategy	استراتيجية	arrangement / scheme / plan	weightless / light / slight
massive	ضخم	heavy / bulky / massy	dead / inactive / nonfunctional
active	نشط	operating / effective / alive	sweet / delicious / pleasant
unpleasant	غير سار	bad / bitter / harsh / nasty	oddy / strangely / radically
naturally	بشكل طبيعي	commonly / normally	advantage / plus
drawback	عيب	downside / disadvantage	little / small / dwarfish
huge	ضخم	colossal / monstrous / gigantic	individual / particular
overall	شامل	general / global / universal	

Reading Texts

1. Trying to raise my productivity levels: Week 1

I tried dividing my study time into twenty-five minute periods and taking breaks between them. I can understand the logic of doing this and I'm sure it helps some people to concentrate better because they only have to concentrate for short periods. However, the big drawback for me was that I kept looking at the time to see when it was time to have a break. Looking back, I suppose I should have set an alarm instead so I didn't have to do that and then it might have been more helpful for me.

I decided to always do the task that I found the most difficult first and, of course, this was quite hard to do at first because it isn't what you naturally want to do. However, I kept going with it and after a few days, I noticed how it was helping me to manage my time better and meant that I made a better job of the unpleasant tasks than I did before. This definitely had a positive impact on my productivity.

I liked the idea of making a study plan because I thought it would help me to get better organised. It definitely helped me to feel less stressed about what I needed to do because I wrote down exactly what I had to do in a list and that made it seem easier to get everything done. I was surprised by what a big difference the study plan made. I'm definitely going to carry on making study plans.

2. Huge benefits from small changes

The last time I blogged, I was worried about my exams. Well, you won't believe what happened!

A teacher told me about a coach called David Brailsford. He helped the British Olympic cycling team set 7 world records in the 2012 London Olympics. But how did this coach change their performance? Well, he analysed absolutely everything and improved each thing by 1%. He made lots of small changes to the cyclists' clothes, their diet and even their pillows! It had a very positive impact on their productivity.

So, I thought I'd do the same to help me study more effectively. I looked into the following areas:

- when I concentrate best
- how long I can concentrate for before I need a break
- where I concentrate best
- how I sleep best
- what food makes me feel my best

At first, I thought it was a waste of time but I kept going with it. I realised I was more mentally active in the morning and after 6 pm so that's when I studied the most difficult subjects. I also reduced the amount I ate for dinner and bought some ear plugs. I now wake up feeling really refreshed and ready to go.

Did it work? Well, I was surprised by what a big difference this strategy made. In Maths and History, my worst subjects, I got the second highest marks in the class and my grades in all my other subjects increased by 48% in just one month! Looking back, I should have done this before! Making a 1% change in different things made a massive difference for me and I'm sure it'll help you too! So why not try it yourself?

Language Notes

1. whether or (سواء أم) / whether or not (أم لا)

* I will buy this shirt whether it's expensive or cheap.

* I will buy this shirt whether it's expensive or not.

2. the first time / the last time:

- (This is) the first time + مضارع تام

* It's the first time I have been into space.

- The last time / الماضي بسيط + last فاعل

* The last time I visited my aunt a month ago.

3. since / ever since / since then:

- ماضي بسيط + since + مدة + It's - ماضي بسيط + since / ever since + مضارع تام / مضارع تام مستمر

- مضارع تام / مضارع تام مستمر + since then + ماضى بسيط

* I haven't heard from Ali since he travelled abroad.

* Ali travelled abroad in 2015. Since then, I haven't heard from him.

* It's a long time since I heard from Ali.

4. seem / appear:

- seem = appear + to + مصدر / Adj. / Noun (يبدو)

* He seems / appears to be a doctor.

- seem like:

* It seems like a year waiting for the results.

- appear in / at + مكان (يظهر)

* The moon appears in the sky.

- appear يوصل

* At last, he appeared.

* I waited for long but he didn't appear.

5. Names of groups:

- staff: هيئة عاملين في مؤسسة

* The teaching staff in our college are all respected.

- crew: طاقم سفينة أو طائرة

* The plane was about to crash but the crew saved the situation.

- company: شركة - صعبة - فرقة (مسرحية)

* I enjoy the company of such interesting people.

* Shakespeare acted in a theatre company (group) called the King's men.

- band: فرقة موسيقية - جماعة (إرهابية)

* Terrorist bands threaten the life of people.

- school: سرب من أسماك

* A school of whales appeared near the shore.

- pack = herd: قطيع حيوانات

* Lions usually hunt in packs (herds).

- group: مجموعة من الناس أو الأشياء

* The teacher divided the class into groups.

- collection: مجموعة متنافسة

* He wrote four collections of short stories.

- force: قوة منظمة (شرطة - جيش)

* The police forces arrested the terrorists.

- team: فريق عمل

* He was part of the team which did the first heart transplant operation.

- crowd: تجمهر من الناس

* There were crowds of shoppers in the streets.

- mob: مجموعة مزعجة أو عنيفة من الناس

* An angry mob of demonstrators approached.

- mass: مجموعة من الناس متكتلين في مكان

* The square was a solid mass of people.

- bunch: مجموعة متشابهة من الناس / باقة زهور

* He bought a bunch of roses.

- gang: عصابة من المجرمين

* He was attacked by a gang of youths.

- rabble: مجموعة من المشاغبين

* He was met by a rabble of noisy angry youths.

- horde: مجموعة من الناس متوجهين إلى مكان

* In summer hordes of tourists flock to the island.

- party: حزب أو مجموعة عمل

* A party of tourists stood at the entrance to the temple.

- flock: قطيع خرفان أو طيور

* The farmer has over 100 sheep in his flock.

- litter: مجموعة من القطط أو الكلاب لأم واحدة

* He was one of a litter of seven puppies.

- bundle: مجموعة أوراق أو ملابس أو عصا

* Bundles of papers and files filled the shelves.

- cluster: مجموعة أو عنقود من نفس الأشياء كالنجوم

* Our road ended at a cluster of cottages.

- series: سلسلة من أحداث

* The film shows a series of important historical events.

- range: تشكيلة من أشياء أو بشر / سلسلة جبال

* The drug is effective against a range of bacteria.

- variety: تشكيلة متنوعة

* I really like the variety the store has to offer.

- set: مجموعة

* We face a new set of problems.

6. clothes / clothing / a cloth:

- clothes (جمع): ملابس

* Her cupboard is full of clothes but she wants to buy some new.

- clothing (مفرد): الملابس

* The soldiers wore protective clothing to keep the spiders out.

- a cloth: قطعة من القماش

* I need a cloth to wipe out this dirt.

7. More Notes:

waist	الخصر / الوسط	waste	يهدر
waste	يهدر (يضيع) - فضلات (لا تعد)	a waste of	مضيعة لـ
waste	يبدد	conserve	يحافظ على
waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	waste of money	مضيعة للمال
asleep	نائم (ليس بعدها اسم)	sleeping	نائم (يأتي بعدها اسم)
asleep	نائم	sleepy	شاعر بالنعاس
alone	بمفرده / فردي (ظرف / صفة)	alone	بمفرده (ظرف فقط)
solo	فردي	duo	ثنائي
solo			

Exercises on Vocabulary and Notes

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What are the pros and of the various modern technologies?
a. coins b. cans c. cons d. canes
- I think I've made the right
a. decide b. decision c. decisive d. decided
- To reduce stress you may have to rethink your in life.
a. rarities b. charities c. verifies d. priorities
- Researchers have the results in detail using specialist software.
a. analysed b. socialized c. prized d. realised
- Employees get together and ideas some of which get developed and some don't.
a. sandstorm b. brainstorm c. dust storm d. windstorm
- How many students are taking in the brainstorming session?
a. place b. part c. away d. off
- Many people still read a newspaper.
a. day b. days c. daily d. days'
- The of the heart is to pump blood through the body.
a. evaluation b. function c. measurement d. refreshment
- We have divided the topics three categories.
a. on b. onto c. into d. at
- Researchers teaching performance by comparing students' exam results.
a. plugged b. copied c. cycled d. evaluated
- A good gardener knows how to keep things healthily
a. grow b. growing c. to grow d. grew
- The technique is not widely practised and requires further
a. evaluation b. negligence c. ignorance d. postponement
- An ear is a small piece of rubber that you put inside your ear to keep out noise or water.
a. tug b. hug c. rug d. plug
- The charity is drawing up a to meet the needs of the homeless.
a. strategy b. fan c. pillow d. curtain
- The government put amounts of money into the health service.
a. little b. massive c. dwarfish d. tiny
- Blood pressure and heart rate should be before treatment.
a. counted b. calculated c. numbered d. measured
- I've never seen this play before.

My new Friend

- reformed b. stormed c. performed d. amounted
- After he left I just tried to carry as normal.
a. on b. out c. for d. at
- There's a/an smell coming from that cupboard. I didn't like it.
a. pleasant b. unpleasant c. delightful d. awesome
- I felt extremely fit, both physically and
a. locally b. globally c. totally d. mentally
- You can't use the same in dealing with children.
a. logic b. garlic c. arctic d. hepatic
- We have to find ways of overcoming these
a. pros b. merits c. drawbacks d. advantages
- Suddenly the sounded and they all had to leave the building.
a. clock b. alarm c. hour d. watch
- The car is too expensive so we're trying to find a cheaper
a. record b. plug c. alternative d. pillow
- A is a person who trains a person or team in sport.
a. dentist b. vet c. cyclist d. coach
- I'm a big of Italian food.
a. fan b. fin c. fun d. fine
- They the designs from those on Greek vases.
a. copied b. disliked c. liked d. hated
- is Europe's second most popular sport.
a. Recycling b. Circle c. Circling d. Cycling
- I tried dividing my study time into twenty-five periods and taking breaks between them.
a. minutes b. minute c. minute's d. minutes'
- The whole exercise is just a of effort.
a. waist b. west c. waste d. western
- She buried her head in the and wept.
a. carpet b. curtain c. sheet d. pillow
- Anti-social behaviour affects a huge number of people daily. "huge" means
a. tiny b. available c. giant d. efficient
- Giving up smoking the risk of heart disease.
a. increases b. raises c. reduces d. promotes
- The moment I saw her, I something was wrong.
a. recognized b. summarized c. paraphrased d. realized
- I decided to always the task that I found the most difficult first and, of course, this was quite hard to do at first.

Unit 6: Let's get it done!

- a. make b. copy c. do d. suppose
36. The server is designed to store huge of data.
a. alarms b. amounts c. experiences d. experiments
37. When she finished painting, she stepped back to admire the effect.
a. overall b. particular c. special d. particulars
38. Follow these to improve your communication skills.
a. tapes b. tops c. tabs d. tips
39. I was surprised by what a big difference the study plan
a. did b. gave c. carried d. made
40. I'm in the of getting up at dawn.
a. custom b. customs c. habit d. tradition
41. Look at your notes and summarize what you have learned.
a. after b. up c. up d. back
42. He has no experience of a football team.
a. management b. manager c. managerial d. managing
43. How did he this startling conclusion?
a. arrive b. divide c. reach d. blog
44. The Kenyan runner a new Olympic Record in the 3,000 metres
a. sit b. set c. sat d. seat
45. One more person wouldn't make any to the arrangements.
a. differ b. different c. difference d. differently
46. Ms White has agreed to evidence at their trial.
a. do b. practice c. make d. give
47. Have you ever tried to get something done, but found that you don't much progress?
a. do b. sell c. make d. buy
48. "Drawback" has the same meaning as
a. advantage b. pros c. merit d. downside
49. I will buy this shirt it's expensive or not.
a. nor b. whether c. not only d. weather
50. The number of cars will decrease 50% if we use public transport.
a. in b. at c. down d. by
51. Another word for "task" is
a. intervention b. mission c. contradiction d. convention
52. An "excuse" is a/an
a. result b. consequence c. effect d. apology
53. "She flew alone from London to Paris." A synonym for "alone" is
a. duo b. in a group c. solo d. collectively
54. "You should be able to evaluate your own work." "Evaluate" means

My new Friend

- a. fabricate b. assess c. assist d. persist
55. Another word for "priority" is
a. urgency b. tendency c. trendy d. occurrence
56. "The function of a thermometer is to measure temperature." A synonym for the word "function" here is
a. purpose b. muscle c. vessel d. crossword
57. "We hope to prevent anything unpleasant from happening." A synonym for "unpleasant" here is
a. march b. marsh c. trash d. harsh
58. An antonym for "slight" is
a. tiny b. massive c. minute d. repetitive
59. A synonym for "huge" is
a. essential b. colossal c. immersive d. impressive
60. "Naturally" means
a. originally b. normally c. creatively d. additionally
61. Something which is "overall" is
a. individual b. special c. general d. particular

Grammar



Exercises on Grammar

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My parents me tidy my room.
a. allow b. permit c. stop d. make
- The teacher sometimes lets us a film.
a. to watch b. watch c. watching d. watched
- The teacher sometimes allows us a film.
a. watching b. to watch c. watched d. watch
- The cold weather stops us outside.
a. to go b. to going c. gone d. from going
- The TV can us from concentrating.
a. allow b. let c. make d. stop
- Does your study plan allow you exercise?
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing
- Do not let people you.
a. interrupted b. to interrupt c. interrupt d. interrupting
- Her study plan makes her more productive.
a. feeling b. feel c. to feel d. feels
- Mazin allows himself distracted easily.
a. get b. getting c. to get d. gets
- Our teacher us to ask a lot of questions.
a. makes b. allows c. lets d. has
- I my hair cut yesterday.
a. haven't b. hadn't c. don't have d. didn't have
- The teacher us do some extra work today.
a. got b. had c. did d. allowed
- How often do you get your teeth at the dentist's clinic?
a. check b. checking c. checked d. to check
- Tarek has his photos after he takes them.
a. printing b. to print c. printed d. print
- Before I left the garage last week, I checked.
a. my car b. had my car c. my car was d. my car had
- I usually once a month.

- have my car checked b. get my car
- have checked my car d. make my car
- Last week, we our roof repaired after the storm.
a. had to leave b. have to leave c. have d. have had
- We our furniture polished since last Saturday. The carpenter is still doing it.
a. had b. have had c. has had d. have been having
- Dalia her dresses cleaned every week.
a. does b. get c. has d. make
- I had my watch yesterday at a watchmaker's.
a. repaired b. repairing c. to repair d. be repaired

Writing Skills (Lesson 4)

Making a change and Evaluating it صناعة التغيير وتقييمه

When you make a change to the way you study or in any other area in your life, you need to evaluate it.

- حينما تقوم بعمل تغيير في طريقة مذاكرتك أو أي شيء آخر في حياتك تحتاج إلى تقييمه.

- Ask yourself the following questions:

- Has this change had positive effects?
 - Has this change had negative effects?
 - Which effects have had a greater impact?
- Evaluate the effects to make decisions about whether to continue with the change or to try something else.

- قم بتقييم التأثيرات كي تتخذ قرارا بشأن هل تستمر في التغيير أو تجرب شيئا آخر.



Exercises on Writing Skills

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Which one is correct?
a. A phrase has a subject and verb, but a clause does not.
b. A phrase is a group of related words, but a clause is not.
c. A clause is a group of related words, but a phrase is not.
d. A clause has a subject and verb, but a phrase does not.
- Which sentence is correct?
a. Has anything bad happened?
b. Has anything bad happened?
c. Has anything bad happened?
d. Has anything bad happened?
- Which sentence is correct?
a. Mona says, "I'm making a cake".
b. Mona says "I'm making a cake".

- c. Mona says: "I'm making a cake". d. Mona says: "I'm making a cake".
4. I looked for Salwa s dictionary everywhere.
a. " b. ' c. , d. ;
5. We should use an apostrophe for
a. contraction b. dependence c. deletion d. reference
6. Which sentence is correct?
a. The film has won favour with all young and old.
b. The film has won favour with each young and old.
c. The film has won favour with both young and old.
d. The film has won favour with young and both old.
7. Which sentence is correct?
a. She was born in October. b. She was born in october.
c. She was born in October, d. She was born in October?
8. Which of the following sentences is correct?
a. Salwa and Samia, who have always got on well, are now like enemies.
b. Salwa and Samia who have always got on well are now like enemies.
c. Salwa and Samia who have always got on well, are now like enemies.
d. Salwa and Samia, who have always got on well are now like enemies.
9. are used to express proportions.
a. Commas b. Hyphens c. Colons d. Semicolons
10. They had seen the man in a parking lot.
a. The man was seen in a parking lot b. The man has been seen in a parking lot
c. The man were seen in a parking lot d. The man had been seen in a parking lot.
11. Which sentence is correct?
a. what is the matter with you. b. What is the matter with you?
c. What is the matter with you. d. What is the matter with you?
12. Choose the sentence with the correct punctuation.
a. I saw a terrible road accident, this morning. b. I saw a terrible road, accident this morning.
c. I saw a terrible, road accident this morning. d. I saw a terrible road accident this morning.
13. Which sentence is correct?
a. The school was built in the late 1970s'. b. The school was built in the late 1970's.
c. The school was built in the late 1970s. d. The school was built in the late 1970s:
14. Which sentence is correct?
a. Please. turn the TV on, b. Please turn the TV on.
c. Please, turn the TV on. d. Please; turn the TV on.
15. Which sentence is correct?
a. Because I got up late I missed the train. b. Because I got up late. I missed the train.
c. Because I got up late, I missed the train. d. Because I got up late; I missed the train.
16. Which sentence is correct?

- a. To be smart, wear this suit. b. To be smart. wear this suit.
c. To be smart. Wear this suit. d. To be smart: wear this suit.
17. Which sentence is correct?
a. The woman, carrying the child is my aunt. b. The woman, carrying the child, is my aunt.
c. The woman carrying the child is my aunt. d. The woman, carrying the child is my aunt.
18. Which sentence is correct?
a. What a fantastic movie!
c. What a fantastic movie.
19. Choose the supporting sentence for this topic sentence: "I should go to the dentist."
a. I have no pain in my teeth. b. My teeth are hurting much.
c. I can't chew well because of a severe toothache. d. Both b and c.
20. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?
a. I knocked on the door for a long time no one answered.
b. I knocked on the door for a long time, no one answered.
c. I knocked on the door for a long time: no one answered.
d. I knocked on the door for a long time; no one answered.

Test on Unit (6)

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It is a good idea to change where you study as it can help your memory. The verb "change" can be replaced by
a. vary b. fix c. estimate d. endorse
2. The first thing to do is to analyse how you remember things best. The verb "analyse" can be replaced by
a. assist b. assess c. delete d. correspond
3. Remember that your concentration tends to reduce after 30 minutes. We can replace the verb "reduce" with the verb
a. cooperate b. deprive c. decline d. prospect
4. If you want to increase awareness of pollution, you should talk to your friends about it. We can replace the verb "increase" with
a. release b. realise c. recognise d. raise
5. You need to make changes if you want to increase
a. productive b. productivity c. producer d. product

6. Using less electricity will improve the energy effectiveness in your house. A synonym for the word "effectiveness" is
 a. efficiency b. propaganda c. circulation d. animation
7. I went to the barber's and
 a. cut my hair b. had my hair cut c. had cut my hair d. have my hair cut
8. If you don't know how to use the computer, get your older brother you.
 a. helped b. to be helped c. to help d. help
9. Ali is going to the stadium this afternoon. Let's get him some tickets for next week's match.
 a. bought b. buy c. to buy d. buying
10. Ali will He knows how to do it by himself.
 a. have his car repaired b. repair his car c. repaired his car d. his car have repaired
11. Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports
 a. to type b. type c. typed d. typing
12. Lamia will have her house some workmen.
 a. decorated by b. to decorate by c. decorated d. decorate by
13. I don't cut my hair myself. I
 a. have cut it b. have it cut c. get it cutting d. do it cut
14. - Do you usually get your room? - No, I clean it myself.
 a. clean b. cleaned c. to clean d. cleaning
15. Can I borrow your bike? I can't use mine because I'm having
 a. had repaired b. repaired it c. it repaired d. it repairs
16. Abdullah had his house by the painter last week.
 a. painting b. paint c. painted d. to paint

B Reading Comprehension

2. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

My home city, London, is always full of traffic and often, in the centre of the city, the traffic is not moving. This makes it very difficult for our parents to drive us to school. London is a very old city and the streets are often small which means it can also be difficult for ambulances, school buses and police cars to get through.

Many people in London don't drive to work because it takes a very long time. Most people choose to travel by train, underground or tram because they are much quicker. If people are travelling from outside of London, they often have to catch a train to one of the big stations and then go by underground to their office. It can be very expensive but with the traffic problems, it's the only and the quickest way.

Our city council has been trying to improve the traffic but there are still too many cars. A few years ago, they stopped lorries going into the centre between 8 am and 6 pm. This helped a little bit, but not enough. They then made every car driver pay to drive in London between 8.30 am and 6 pm. This didn't make the traffic better because unfortunately people paid to drive in London and there was still the same number of cars as before.

How can they change this problem? They want to stop all cars going into the centre except for buses and taxis. Many people think this is a very bad idea and will make travel around London worse. Only time will tell.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why is it difficult for school buses to move in London?
 a. They have to pay during the day. b. They can't get past other cars.
 c. They can't drive through the centre. d. They can get through other cars easily.
- The writer says that it's not easy to get to school in London because
 a. many of the roads have been closed. b. some of the roads aren't very big.
 c. buses aren't allowed in the centre. d. many of roads have been built recently
- The writer says that the fastest way to get to work in London is
 a. by train and taxi. b. by train and bus.
 c. by train and underground. d. by taxi and train
- Why didn't the extra cost to every driver improve the traffic in London?
 a. Nobody wanted to pay. b. Few people used their car during these hours.
 c. Everybody paid. d. People objected to pay money.
- What is the best title for the article?
 a. Too much traffic b. Good jobs in the city c. Expensive taxis d. Cheap traffic
- What does the underlined "it" refers to
 a. driving to work b. going to school c. moving back d. traveling by trains
- What did the city council do to improve traffic ?
 a. they stopped all cars to go to the centre b. they encouraged people to go to the centre
 c. they stopped people to go to work d. they stopped lorries going into the centre
- How many hours did they allow car drivers to pay to go to the centre?
 a. one hour b. two hours
 c. one hour and a half d. two hours and a half
- Why is it difficult to drive in London?
 a. London is new and streets are big b. London is old and the streets are small
 c. London is new and streets are small d. London is old and the streets are big
- Most people choose to travel by trams because
 a. they are much slower b. they are much quicker
 c. they take a lot of time d. they are rare

3. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

A popular teacher

Jane Bridges teaches teenagers in my school in Newcastle, in the north of England. Jane worked for a large international company in an office in London for many years before she changed her career.

Although she earned a lot more money in London, Jane decided she was bored with her job and she was unhappy at work. Jane says that teaching is interesting every day and now she feels that she is doing something useful and important. Jane thinks that her time as a successful businesswoman made her a strong person and this helps her in the classroom. She also remembers how difficult school was at times, when she was a teenager herself, and how tiring it could be to have to study every day.

Jane believes that using computers and the internet is the best way to make her students excited about our lessons. She discusses subjects that we are interested in and makes these things part of her lessons. By doing this, we don't feel that we are doing something difficult or boring but actually we learn a lot more.

All her students even send their homework to Jane by email and every class that she teaches has their own Facebook group. Here students can chat about what we are learning and we can also share ideas. It is not surprising that Jane is one of the most popular teachers in my school.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What did Jane do before she was a teacher?
 - She was a student in London.
 - She worked in an office.
 - She didn't have a job.
 - She worked in a school.
- Why did Jane want to become a teacher?
 - She needed to earn more money.
 - She didn't know what else to do.
 - She thought she would be happier.
 - She wanted to use the internet.
- What does the writer say has helped Jane to be a good teacher?
 - Her experiences in business
 - Other teachers in London
 - Her students in Newcastle
 - She knew a lot when she was a teenager
- How could you describe Jane's lessons?
 - interesting and unusual
 - too difficult at times
 - boring but clever
 - too hard to understand
- What does the writer say the students use the internet for?
 - sharing comments about other teachers
 - making new friends in other cities
 - talking about their own lessons
 - preparing for the next lessons
- The underlined pronoun "she" refers to
 - the internet
 - lesson
 - a student
 - Jane Bridges
- Why did Jane decide to leave her first job?
 - as it was tiring
 - as she didn't earn enough money
 - as it was boring
 - as she was still young

- Why does the writer think that Jane is one of the most popular teachers in school?
 - as she uses new ways in teaching
 - as she hates her students
 - as she is using the internet
 - as she makes learning difficult
- Jane was unhappy at her first work because it was boring. This is a
 - fact and opinion
 - cause and effect
 - conclusion
 - prediction
- The underlined word "subjects" here in the passage means
 - an area of knowledge that you study at a school or university
 - the thing you are talking about or considering in a conversation
 - a country or group of people to be ruled by you, and control them very strictly
 - a person or animal that is used in a test or experiment

C: Writing

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Which of the following is structurally correct?
 - Could you tell me why you didn't do your homework?
 - Could you tell me why didn't you do your homework?
 - Could you to tell me why you didn't do your homework?
 - Could you tell me why you hadn't done your homework?
- Which of the following sentences shows suggestion?
 - You shouldn't spend the weekend with us.
 - You should have spent the weekend with us.
 - Why didn't you spend the weekend with us?
 - Why don't you spend the weekend with us?
- When I write the body paragraphs in an essay, I
 - use only informal vocabulary.
 - make sure the supporting details are in the introduction.
 - include the thesis to remind the reader.
 - include related details with examples.
- Which of the following is not correct?
 - That 500-year-old tree is still alive
 - That 500-year-old tree is still living
 - That living tree is 500 years old
 - That alive tree is 500 years old

D: Translation

5. Choose the best Arabic Translation:

- Egypt's distinguished location and great monuments make it a wonderful tourist destination.

أ. موقع مصر المتميز وأثارها العظيمة يجعلانها مقصد سياحي رائع.
 ب. تميز مصر الموقعي وأثارها العظيمة يجعلانها مقصد سياحي رائع.
 ج. موقع مصر وأثارها المتميزة العظيمة يجعلانها مقصد سياحي رائع.
 د. موقع مصر المتميز وأثارها السياحية يجعلانها مقصد عظيم رائع.

2. Folk music describes historical events and help people celebrate their family occasions.
- أ. تتنصّب الموسيقى الوصفية للأحداث التاريخية وتساعد الناس على الاحتفال بالمناسبات الأسرية.
 ب. تصف الموسيقى الشعبية الأحداث التاريخية وتساعد الناس على الاحتفال بالمناسبات الأسرية.
 ج. تصف الموسيقى التاريخية الأحداث الشعبية وتساعد الناس على الاحتفال بالمناسبات الأسرية.
 د. تصف الموسيقى الشعبية الأحداث التاريخية وتساعد الناس على الاحتفال بالمناسبات الأسرية.

6. Choose the best English Translation:

116. يجب أن يؤمن كل فرد في المجتمع بأن العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد للتقدم والنجاح في الحياة.
- a. Every member of the society should believe in the fact that hard work is the only way to progress and success in life.
 b. Every members of the society should believe in the fact that hard work is the only way to progress and success in life.
 c. All member of the society should believe in the fact that hard work is the only way to progress and success in life.
 d. Every member of the society should believe in the fact that work hard is the only way to progress and success in life.
117. التقدم في العمر عملية طبيعية يمر بها أي إنسان ولا يستطيع أحد أن يمنع حدوثها.
- a. Growing old is a natural process that any human passes through and no one can prevent it's occurrence.
 b. Growing old is a natural process that any human passes through and no one can prevent its occurrence.
 c. Growing old a natural process that any human passes through and no one can prevent its occurrence.
 d. Growing old is a natural process that any human pass through and no one can prevent its occurrence.



Revision (2)

Unit (4) Revision (2)

Unit (5)

Unit (6)

Review (B)

Vocabulary

Reading and Critical Thinking

blame	يلوم / اللوم	ability	قدرة	tough	حاد / صعب
unrealistic	غير واقعي	organized	منظم	actually	فعليا / واقعا
stress	ضغط	involve	يشمل	compared to	بالمقارنة بـ
grandparents	الأجداد	rewards	مكافآت	a bike ride	ركوب الدراجة
tricks	خدع	equally	بشكل متساوي	brilliant at	متألق في
even though	على الرغم	mistake	خطأ	appreciate	يقدر
present self	الذات الحاضرة	vocabulary	مفردات	pandemic	وباء
future self	الذات المستقبلية	article	مقالة	happiness	سعادة
right now	حالا	spoken	منطوق	cultures	ثقافات
benefits	فوائد	prioritizing	ترتيب الأولويات	decision making	صنع القرار
immediately	في الحال	consuming	مستهلك (صفة)	mental effort	جهد عقلي / ذهني
inevitable	حتمي / ضروري	decision fatigue	ضعف القرار	mental energy	طاقة ذهنية
conflict	صراع	for instance	على سبيل المثال	suit	بذلة
tasks	مهام	president	الرئيس	pressure	ضغط
please	يرضي	distraction list	قائمة المشتتات	hold	يتشبث
alternatively	بدلا من ذلك	thought	فكرة	top business	أعلى الأعمال
whereas	بينما	juggle	يتلاعب	strategy	استراتيجية

Prepositions

keep up	بواصل	according to	وفقا لـ	go on	يستمر
catch up with	يوكب / يساير	look after	يعتني بـ	by the way	على فكرة

Important Collocations & Expressions

make much progress	يحقق المزيد من التقدم	set an unrealistic goal	يضع هدف غير واقعي
do ten minutes of work	يقم بعمل لعشر دقائق	come into conflict	تدخل في صراع
with the rest of	مع باقي	please your present self	ترضي نفسك الحالية
long term goals	أهداف بعيدة المدى	check messages	يفحص الرسائل
miss school	يتغيب عن الدراسة	take courses	ياخذ دورات تدريبية

My new friend

find life tough	يجد الحياة شاقة	get better at	يتحسن في
make the solution worse	يجعل الحل أسوأ	go on a bike ride	يذهب لركوب الدراجة
making decisions	صنع القرار	prioritise tasks	يضع أولويات للمهام
identify the problem	يتعرف على المشكلة	digital workbooks	المصنفات الرقمية
efficiency levels	مستويات الكفاءة	paper workbooks	المصنفات الورقية
revisit the list	يعود للقائمة مرة أخرى	in a certain time	في وقت معين
highly effective	مؤثر جدا	business leaders	قادة الأعمال التجارية
highly affected	متأثر جدا	in the first place	في المقام الأول
put yourself under a lot of pressure			تضع نفسك تحت ضغط كبير
give yourself little rewards			امنح نفسك القليل من المكافآت
juggle several priorities every day			توفق بين عدة أولويات كل يوم
involves a continuous process			ينطوي على عملية مستمرة
wear the same colour suits			يرتدي بدلات نفس اللون
save your mental energy for			تحفظ طاقتك العقلية لـ
raise your productivity levels			ترفع مستويات الإنتاجية الخاصة بك
cut out the daily decision			يقطع القرار اليومي
exercise your mind and your body			تمرن عقلك وجسمك

Translation Words and Expressions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	make great contributions to	يقدم إسهامات كبيرة في
on the occasion of	بمناسبة	stand shoulder to shoulder	يتكاتف
on the way to	في الطريق إلى	render a service	يقدم خدمة
all walks (aspects) of life	كل مناحي الحياة	lead to the spread of	يؤدي إلى انتشار
in different ways	بطرق مختلفة	create job opportunities	يخلق فرص العمل
in a bad need of	في أمس الحاجة إلى	it's our duty (responsibility) to	واجبنا (مسئوليتنا) أن
from cradle to grave	من المهد إلى اللحد	which in turn means	وهذا بدوره يعني
the birthplace of civilization	مهد الحضارة	the burdens of life	أعباء المعيشة
do my best	أبذل قصاري جهدي	on a large scale	على نطاق واسع
make great efforts	ببذل جهود عظيمة	on a small scale	على نطاق ضيق

Reading Texts

1. Procrastination

Blame your brain!

Have you ever tried to get something done, but found that you don't make much progress? Perhaps you do ten minutes of work, then start doing something else, like reading text messages.

Starting one task then stopping to do something else or not starting the task in the first place is called procrastination. Everybody does it. Unfortunately, procrastinating often has a negative impact on your mental health. You may put yourself under a lot of pressure to catch up with the other students in your class or you might have set an unrealistic goal to get something done in a certain time. This can cause stress.

What is going on in the brain which makes us avoid doing something, even though we know we should do it? Scientists suggest we imagine that there are two parts of our brain: our present self and our future self. The present self wants to feel good right now and see the benefits of the work you're doing immediately. Whereas the future self is focused on achieving long-term goals. It's inevitable that the two selves come into conflict. If the present self wins, you usually find yourself procrastinating.

How can you deal with these two different selves so you can keep up efficiency levels and improve your time management skills? One suggestion is that you try to please your present self.

For example, give yourself little rewards after working for a short period of time, like checking messages after finishing a task. Alternatively, you could try to focus on the benefits that reaching your long term goals will bring you. Try imagining how good it would feel to achieve them and holding on to that feeling.

2. An email

To: Ahmed@mail.com

From: Ahmed@mail.com

Dear: 11-year-old Ahmed,

I know you're finding life tough at the moment. You're experiencing a lot of stress at school and you're working hard with your sports training. You're finding it harder at your new school because the schoolwork is a lot more difficult than it was at your old school. You have more homework so it is harder to find time to practice

swimming and running. How about telling your teachers about the problems you're having and asking for help?

Try to remember that life is actually quite easy at the moment compared to how it will be later, even though you might not believe me about that. When you're my age, you'll really be good at time management. You'll be able to balance your schoolwork and your sports practice. I know you want to be like Ahmed Elgendy one day. Don't worry, you'll achieve amazing things.

Enjoy the free time that you have now! Don't forget to spend time doing things that improve your well-being, like talking to family. Play football with your friends at the weekend!

You're going to be just fine, but remember to ask for help when you need it and enjoy the free time that you have so you don't end up feeling exhausted and burnt out.

See you in 9 years,

20-year-old Ahmed

Language Notes

1. if / when / as / though / but + P.P. / صفة:

* يُستخدم التصريف الثالث أو الصفة بعد هذه الكلمات لاختصار جملة كانت في الأصل مبنية للمجهول أو تحتوي على صفة.

- * The coronation takes place as planned (as it has been planned).
- * He was sad but relaxed. (He was sad but he was relaxed).
- * If / when boiled, water evaporates (If / when water is boiled, it evaporates).
- * If heated, metals expand. (If metals are heated, they expand.)
- * As said, (As it has been said,) the current approach will be changed soon.

2. Adverb + Sentence: جملة + ظرف:

- * Undoubtedly, they will attend the conference.
- * Unfortunately, he broke his leg before the match.
- * Alternatively, you could try to focus on the benefits that reaching your long term goals will bring you.

3. More Notes:

آخر	other + اسم جمع = others	آخرون
another + اسم مفرد	one another	بعضهم البعض (أكثر من اثنين)
each other	with this method	بهذه الطريقة
in this way	in the way	عقبة
on the way (to)		

calculate	بحسب (يد)	measure	قياس
list	قائمة من عناصر	menu	قائمة أطعمة في مطعم
wander	يتجول	wonder	يتساءل
give (pay) attention to	يوليهم -	get attention from	يتلقى الاهتمام من
give / run / provide a course	يعطي دورة دراسية	take / do a course	يحصل على دورة دراسية
do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل	get better	يتحسن
by himself	بأنفسه	for himself	لأنفسه

Workbook Exercises

Choose the correct option (A, B, C, or D):

- We should not take on those who harm us. We should respect the law.
 - revenge
 - average
 - care
 - advantage
- Have you spending the weekend in the country?
 - considered
 - thought
 - decided
 - agreed
- You could asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed!
 - has
 - having
 - had
 - have
- Be careful, you must making such mistakes.
 - enjoy
 - avoid
 - refuse
 - intend
- When you are worried about things, it is best to concentrate on the things you control.
 - would
 - might
 - can
 - have
- We really need to increase our if we want to meet our objectives.
 - identity
 - facility
 - equality
 - productivity
- I hope the biology exam; I'm so worried.
 - will pass
 - pass
 - to pass
 - passing
- Let's look new ways of working.
 - on
 - into
 - to
 - back
- My parents me finish my homework before they allow me to watch TV.
 - stop
 - get
 - tell
 - make
- Let our project done last night so now we can relax.
 - get
 - got
 - allow
 - make
- your screen so I can see what the problem is, please?
 - are
 - mute
 - install
 - make
- this man in the club a year ago.
 - member
 - to see
 - had seen
 - to seeing
- with my classmates, I need to study a lot this weekend.
 - up
 - into
 - in

- Don't forget off the computer when you've finished with it.
 - switching
 - switch
 - to switch
 - to switching
- The rain us from playing football.
 - let
 - allowed
 - made
 - stopped
- The students found the test difficult and it led to a in their motivation.
 - produce
 - raise
 - progress
 - decline
- Mental exhaustion and loss of energy are symptoms of
 - turnout
 - strikeout
 - cutout
 - burnout
- What do you plan when you go to Sharm El-Sheikh?
 - to do
 - to doing
 - will do
 - do
- is how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.
 - Self-care
 - Stress
 - Well-being
 - Mental health
- I am going to have a new washing machine
 - made
 - installed
 - instilled
 - done
- Turn the camera I want to see you; I've missed you so much, Mum.
 - down
 - off
 - on
 - up
- Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
 - Mona, who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
 - Mona who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
 - Mona; who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
 - Mona: who was the first to offer help was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
- Which of the following sentences is correct to end the following paragraph?

We all agree that money is very important in our lives. It enables us to lead a better life. We can buy most of what we need and pay for all the services we enjoy. Yet, money can be the root of evil in life if it is used badly. In addition we can't buy all things with money; for example, money can't bring happiness.

 - To sum up, money is the best way to achieve your goals as well as having a more comfortable life.
 - Totally, we can say that money is the cause of our happiness.
 - First of all, we need to know why we need money and how to spend it on doing useful things in life.
 - In conclusion, money is important, but it is not everything in our life. It can't be a means to get all that you want.
- Which of these transitions is used to show the result of something:
 - Personally,
 - Whilst
 - Due to
 - Consequently

4. Read the following passage then choose the correct option (A, B, C, or D):

Productivity: Tips from business leaders

The country's top business people have to make big decisions and juggle several priorities every day. We interviewed some of them to discover what tricks they use to increase their productivity.

The number one strategy that was mentioned by all of them was the ability to prioritise tasks according to what is most important. This involves a continuous process of deciding what is and isn't essential and as you add new things to your 'to do' list. The more you practice prioritising tasks, the easier it becomes and the more efficient it will make you.

Another time-consuming thing for business leaders is decisionmaking. Making decisions takes a lot of mental effort and this can lead to 'decision fatigue', which can cause burnout. It increases your productivity if you can save your mental energy for the bigger decisions by reducing the smaller ones.

Many of the most productive people realise how easy it is to get distracted. In order to stay focused, they keep a 'distraction list'. When a new thought or idea comes into their heads, they write it down and continue with what they were doing. When they have finished the task, they revisit the list.

The final trick from our interviewees is simple but highly effective. In order to raise your productivity levels, you should exercise your mind and your body. It has been suggested that physical activity can improve our levels of concentration and creativity. So, if you are trying to find a solution to something, identify the problem and then go for a walk or do some sport. You may discover the solution!

There are lots of strategies to choose from to increase your productivity. Our advice would be to experiment with different ones to find out what works best for you.

25. You should reduce the decisions you make to
- a. juggle several priorities b. avoid bearing responsibilities
c. exercise your mind and body d. keep mental health and avoid burnout
26. According to the passage, there are a lot of strategies to
- a. enjoy free time b. raise productivity
c. decrease consumption d. imitate successful people
27. It is essential to prioritise tasks. The antonym of "essential" is
- a. significant b. urgent c. unimportant d. reliable
28. The main idea of the passage is how to
- a. avoid distraction b. identify a problem c. increase productivity d. prioritise tasks
29. The most popular strategy mentioned in the article is
- a. prioritizing tasks according to their importance b. avoiding distraction
c. having a "to-do" list d. making big decisions

30. According to the article, what is meant by "decision fatigue"?
- a. the state of being unable to make simple decisions.
b. difficulty in making a good decision because of the number of decisions one needs to take.
c. difficulty in making a good decision because of lack of efficiency.
d. the state of being unable to bear responsibility.
31. If you are trying to find a solution to a problem,
- a. prioritise tasks b. identify the problem and refresh yourself
c. postpone dealing with that problem d. go for a walk and do some sport
32. The underlined word "This" in the second paragraph refers to
- a. carrying out tasks b. the ability to prioritise tasks
c. acting upon useful tips d. practicing sport
33. According to the passage, what makes your concentration level better?
- a. physical activity b. having a "not to-do" list
c. deleting minor tasks d. fresh food
34. Top business people juggle several priorities to big tasks.
- a. procrastinate b. carry out c. postpone d. delete
35. According to the passage, a lot of productive people try to
- a. avoid distraction b. concentrate minor tasks
c. have peace of mind d. avoid ordinary tips

3. Read the sentences and choose the correct Translation from a, b, c, or d:

36. A lot of people worked from home during the COVID-2019 pandemic. Many employees say this has increased their efficiency and saved time and effort.
- أ. عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد-19، ويقول العديد من العلماء إن هذا زاد من رفاحتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.
ب. عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد-19، ويقول العديد من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.
ج. عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل بعد جائحة كوفيد-19، ويقول العديد من أصحاب العمل إن هذا زاد من نشاط الموظفين ووفر الوقت والجهد.
د. أقام الكثير من الناس في المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد-19، ويقول القليل من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.
37. Productivity is one of the most necessary qualities useful citizens should have. It enables them to share effectively in development projects as well as in most fields of work.
- أ. تُعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.
ب. تُعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم المؤهلات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفعالية في خطط التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

- ج. تُعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها أي مواطن، فهي تمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات الاستثمار وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.
- د. تُعتبر جودة الإنتاج من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطن المصري، فهي تمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.
38. في رأيي، يجب على المعلمين والوالدين الاهتمام بالصحة العقلية ومهارات إدارة الوقت، وهذه المهارات ضرورية لتعزيز تحصيل الطلاب ومساعدتهم على تحقيق كل طموحاتهم في الحياة.

- a. In general, teachers and parents should draw people's attention to mental health and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them fulfill all their aspirations in life.
- b. In conclusion, teachers and parents should pay attention to healthy food and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them attain all their ambitions in life.
- c. In my opinion, scientists and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them fulfill all their aspirations in life.
- d. In my opinion, scientists and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management scales. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them attain all their ambitions in life.

39. تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتماما عظيما لتحسين معيشة المواطن في كل أنحاء مصر وخاصة الريف والشرائيات، وتعتبر مبادرة حياة كريمة خير دليل على ذلك.

- a. The Egyptian organisations pay great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all cities of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.
- b. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of employees in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the experiment of Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.
- c. The Egyptian government pays great attention to moving the lives of citizens in Upper Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.
- d. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.
40. Your friend is very stressed about exams and is having trouble relaxing. You are worried about their mental health. What advice would you give him/her? Write an email of about 200 words with your suggestions. You could include the following:
- suggestions of self-care.
- advice on time management.

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. is the act of delaying something that you should do.
a. Pollination b. Population c. Procrastination d. Popularization
2. People usually experience when they have very much work to do.
a. stress b. success c. treasure d. importer
3. How much have you made with your project? Do you think you'll finish it this week?
a. congress b. impress c. immersion d. progress
4. They were accused of being in their demands.
a. factual b. actual c. unrealistic d. domestic
5. It's for him to go to the hospital right now. His father is ill there.
a. unnecessary b. inevitable c. decorative d. accessible
6. We could go to the Indian restaurant, or, we could try that new Italian place.
a. willingly b. alternatively c. optimistically d. pessimistically
7. I think it's a mistake to stop young people mobile phones to do their homework.
a. used b. to use c. from using d. in using
8. To concentrate on your schoolwork you have to stop to music.
a. listening b. to listen c. listen d. to listen
9. I've heard that there are some useful apps to learn vocabulary so I'm going to look the different options.
a. into b. onto c. up d. down
10. Our teacher lets us an online article to read for homework.
a. to choose b. choose c. to be chosen d. choosing
11. I think Yasser watch some videos in English because it would help improve his spoken English.
a. has to b. should c. must be d. would need
12. We always try different ways of learning and practising English to make it more interesting.
a. found b. find c. to find d. finding
13. Fareeda had her bad tooth out by the dentist.
a. pulled b. pulling c. to pull d. pull
14. We're eating in a restaurant tonight because my parents are having the kitchen
a. to paint b. paint c. painted d. painting
15. Look, it's raining! I have brought an umbrella.
a. must b. can't c. ought to d. need

16. Ali happy. He has just won a gold medal.

- a. can't be b. mustn't be c. should be d. must be

B: Reading Comprehension

2. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

Colonies in space

Stephen Hawking, one of the world's most important scientists, believes that to survive, humans must move into space: "Once we spread out into space and establish independent colonies, our future should be safe," he says.

Today, the United States, India, China, and Japan are all planning to send astronauts back to Earth's closest neighbor: the moon. Each country wants to create space stations there between 2020 and 2030. These stations will prepare humans to visit and later live on Mars or other Earth-like planets.

Robert Zubrin, a rocket scientist, thinks humans should colonize space. He wants to start with Mars. Why? There are several advantages: for one, sending people to the moon and Mars will allow us to learn a lot - for example, whether living on other planets is possible. Then, we can eventually create new human societies on other planets. In addition, the advances we make for space travel in the fields of science, technology, medicine, and health can also benefit us here on Earth.

But not everyone thinks sending humans into space is a smart idea. Many say it's too expensive to send people, even on a short journey. And most space trips are not short. A one-way trip to Mars, for example, would take about six months. People traveling this kind of distance face a number of health problems. Also, for many early space settlers, life would be extremely difficult. On the moon's surface, for example, the air and sun's rays are very dangerous. People would have to stay indoors most of the time.

Despite these concerns, sending people into space seems certain. In the future, we might see lunar cities and maybe even new human cultures on other planets. First stop: the moon.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is the main purpose of this passage?
 - to give reasons for and against space travel
 - to describe what life is like on the moon
 - to explain the history of space travel
 - to compare Mars and the moon
- Between 2020 and 2030, some countries plan to send astronauts to
 - Mars
 - other Earth-like planets
 - the moon
 - another solar system
- Why are some countries creating space stations on the moon?
 - to learn more about human society on Earth
 - to lower Earth's population
 - to grow food for humans on Earth
 - to prepare humans to live on other planets

- Which statement would Stephen Hawking probably agree with?
 - Beings from other planets might colonize Earth.
 - Humans should stay on Earth, not move into space.
 - Humans should colonize other planets.
 - Human colonies won't be safe in space.
- We can change "In addition to" with
 - So
 - And
 - Or
 - However
- Lunar means "related to the".
 - moon
 - sun
 - Mars
 - Earth
- If a group of people spread out, they
 - come together in one place
 - move away from each other
 - choose someone from a group
 - get information, after trying to discover it
- The underlined word "there" refers to
 - country
 - neighbor
 - space stations
 - the moon
- The moon is the first stop to see on other planets
 - lunar cities
 - human cultures
 - solar cities
 - ancient cultures
- A one-way trip to Mars would take about weeks.
 - six
 - twelve
 - twenty
 - twenty four

3. Read the passage and the answer the questions:

Worldwide, some cities gain a million people a week. This kind of growth brings problems, and today many of the world's largest cities face similar challenges: high housing costs, pollution, and crime (to name a few). What are some urban planners doing to fix these problems and improve people's lives?

Hyderabad, India (population: more than five million)

To improve residents' lives, Hyderabad is planting trees and parks. The city is even creating "greener" buildings that use less water and less electricity for power. Adding green to a city has a number of advantages. For example, trees remove pollution from the air and make it cleaner. In Hyderabad, streets were gray and ugly a few years ago. Today, they are filled with trees and flowers, making the city cleaner and more colorful. Green areas also give people places to relax or exercise and walk. A study in the U.S. showed something else interesting: the greener a neighborhood is, the less crime there is against people and property- especially buildings and cars.

Sao Paulo, Brazil (population: more than eighteen million)

Many people work in the center of Sao Paulo, but they don't live there. They've spread out to neighborhoods outside the city, where housing is cheaper. Every day, these people travel into the city, and traffic is very heavy. Urban planners are using different strategies to address this issue. First, they are building better subways. Another goal is to make it cheaper for people to live in the downtown area. Doing this will shorten the distance people travel for work and reduce traffic and pollution in the city.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is the main purpose of this passage?
 - to show how two cities are improving people's lives
 - to describe the benefits of smaller cities
 - to explain why more people are moving into cities
 - to describe the life of an urban planner
- Which reason for making a city greener is NOT stated in the passage?
 - It makes a city cleaner.
 - It helps people work better.
 - It lowers crime rates.
 - It makes it easier to exercise.
- What does the underlined word "greener" mean?
 - more brightly colored
 - better for the environment
 - taller
 - more full of trees
- According to the passage, what problem does Sao Paulo have?
 - A lot of people don't have jobs.
 - Too many people live in the city center.
 - A lot of people are moving out of the city.
 - Too many people drive into the city every day.
- What does the underlined word "there" refer to?
 - Brazil
 - outside Sao Paulo
 - in a city
 - central Sao Paulo
- has less than ten million residents
 - Hyderabad
 - Sao Paulo
 - India
 - Brazil
- is making buildings that use less energy.
 - Sao Paulo
 - Cairo
 - Tokyo
 - Hyderabad
- If a city experiences growth, its population
 - goes up
 - goes down
 - goes out
 - goes in
- To solve the problem in Sao Paulo,
 - the city is creating "greener" buildings
 - they are making the city cleaner and more colorful
 - they are building better subways
 - they are moving people inside the city
- To keep people's property safe, we should
 - threaten criminals everywhere
 - make people build houses
 - create subways to help them
 - make the neighborhood greener

C: Writing

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A full stop is a dot at the end of a sentence to
 - refer to a previous sentence
 - make the sentence complete
 - lead to the coming sentence
 - explain the next sentence
- Which sentence is correct?
 - My friends and I love water sports.
 - I and my friends love water sports.
 - My friends and I love water sports:
 - I and my friends love water sports:
- You summarise the content of your essay when you
 - develop the main idea.
 - write the elements of your essay in detail.
 - make the end open.
 - write the conclusion of your essay.

- Which of the following sentences shows regret?
 - I shouldn't have wasted my time watching too much TV.
 - I should have wasted my time watching too much TV.
 - I should waste my time watching too much TV.
 - I had to waste my time watching too much TV.

D: Translation

5. Choose the best Arabic Translation:

- Egypt and Sudan have strong ties going back thousands of years.

أ. لمصر والسودان علاقات قوية ترجع إلى آلاف السنين.
 ب. لمصر علاقات مع السودان ترجع بقوة إلى آلاف السنين.
 ج. لمصر والسودان قوة علاقية ترجع إلى آلاف السنين.
 د. ترجع قوة مصر والسودان العلاقية إلى آلاف السنين.

- Distance learning is beneficial in all areas of science nowadays.

أ. التعلم البعيد مفيد في كل فروع العلم هذه الأيام.
 ب. التعلم عن بعد في كل فروع العلم المفيدة هذه الأيام.
 ج. التعلم عن بعد فائدة لكل فروع العلم هذه الأيام.
 د. التعلم عن بعد مفيد في كل فروع العلم هذه الأيام.

6. Choose the best English Translation:

7. العدالة أحد القيم السامية التي أوصت بها كل الديانات ودعا إليها كل الرسل.

- Justice one of the sublime values which all religions recommended and all prophets called for.
- Justice is one of the sublime values which all religions recommended and all prophets called for.
- Justice is one of the sublime values which all religions recommended and all prophets called.
- Justice is one of the sublime values which all religions recommended and all prophets have been called for.

8. علي جميع دول العالم أن تتعاون في سبيل نشر السلام والأمن في كل بقعة علي الأرض.

- All world countries should cooperate spread peace and security in every part of the world.
- All world countries should cooperate to spread peace and security in all part of the world.
- All world countries should cooperate to spread peace security in every part of the world.
- All world countries should cooperate to spread peace and security in every part of the world.

Units

Exercises

Reviews

Exams

توزع مع هذا الكتاب **مجاناً** كتيب:
الإثراء اللغوي - المستوى المتقدم

السعر

70^{LE}

للكتابيين معاً

الطلب من مكتبة دار الفؤاد جروب (مركز النورج الرئيسي) - ١٤ شارع قصر اللؤلؤة - الفجالة - القاهرة

01141616671 - 0227877557 - 01001911248 - 01223561288

للتواصل عبر الـ 71 myfriendseries

made by Mansy

صلى ع النبي وإدعيلى دعوة حلوة

#دفعة المنوفية 2022

#قناة تالتة ثانوى 2022